

INTERNATIONAL ORGANISATION FOR STANDARDISATION
ORGANISATION INTERNATIONALE DE NORMALISATION
ISO/IEC JTC1/SC29/WG11
CODING OF MOVING PICTURES AND AUDIO

ISO/IEC JTC1/SC29/WG11
MPEG02/N4920
July 2002, Klagenfurt, AT

Source:	JVT
Title:	Text of Final Committee Draft of Joint Video Specification (ITU-T Rec. H.264 ISO/IEC 14496-10 AVC)
Status:	Approved
Editor:	Thomas Wiegand

XP-001100641

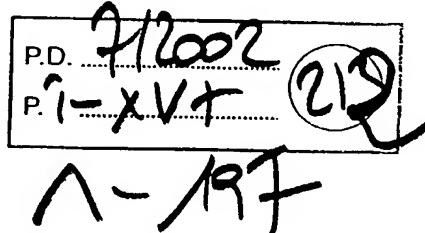


TABLE OF CONTENTS

Foreword.....	xii
0 Introduction	xiii
0.0 Prolog.....	xiii
0.1 Purpose.....	xiii
0.2 Application	xiii
0.3 Profiles and levels	xiii
0.4 Overview of the syntax.....	xiv
0.4.1 Temporal processing	xiv
0.4.2 Coding interlaced video.....	xv
0.4.3 Macroblocks and motion segmentations	xv
0.4.4 Spatial redundancy reduction	xv
1 Scope.....	1
2 Normative references	1
3 Definitions	1
4 Abbreviations.....	5
5 Conventions	6
5.1 Arithmetic operators.....	6
5.2 Logical operators.....	7
5.3 Relational operators.....	7
5.4 Bit-wise operators	7
5.5 Assignment	7
5.6 Functions.....	7
6 Source coder.....	8
6.1 Picture formats	8
6.2 Spatial subdivision of a picture into macroblocks.....	9
6.3 Calculation of the macroblock address	9
6.4 Assignment of symbols within a macroblock.....	11
7 Syntax and semantics	12
7.1 Method of describing the syntax in tabular form.....	12
7.2 Definitions of functions and descriptors.....	14
7.3 Syntax in tabular form.....	15
7.3.1 NAL unit syntax	15
7.3.2 Raw byte sequence payloads and RBSP trailing bits syntax	15
7.3.2.1 Sequence parameter set RBSP syntax	15
7.3.2.2 Picture parameter set RBSP syntax	16
7.3.2.3 Supplemental enhancement information RBSP syntax	17
7.3.2.3.1 Supplemental enhancement information message syntax.....	17
7.3.2.4 Picture delimiter RBSP syntax	17
7.3.2.5 Filler data RBSP syntax	17
7.3.2.6 Slice layer RBSP syntax	18
7.3.2.7 Data partition RBSP syntax.....	18
7.3.2.7.1 Data partition A RBSP syntax	18
7.3.2.7.2 Data partition B RBSP syntax	18
7.3.2.7.3 Data partition C RBSP syntax	18
7.3.2.8 RBSP trailing bits syntax.....	18
7.3.2.9 RBSP slice trailing bits syntax	19
7.3.3 Slice header syntax	20
7.3.3.1 Reference index reordering syntax	21
7.3.3.2 Prediction weight table syntax.....	21
7.3.3.3 Reference picture buffer management syntax	23
7.3.4 Slice data syntax	24
7.3.5 Macroblock layer syntax	26
7.3.5.1 Macroblock prediction syntax	26
7.3.5.2 Sub macroblock prediction syntax.....	27
7.3.5.3 Residual data syntax	28
7.3.5.3.1 Residual 4x4 block CAVLC syntax.....	29
7.3.5.3.2 Residual 4x4 block CABAC syntax	29
7.4 Semantics.....	30

7.4.1	NAL unit semantics.....	30
7.4.2	Raw byte sequence payloads and RBSP trailing bits semantics.....	32
7.4.2.1	Sequence parameter set RBSP semantics.....	32
7.4.2.2	Picture parameter set RBSP semantics.....	33
7.4.2.3	Supplemental enhancement information RBSP semantics.....	35
7.4.2.3.1	Supplemental enhancement information message semantics.....	35
7.4.2.4	Picture delimiter RBSP semantics.....	35
7.4.2.5	Filler data RBSP semantics.....	36
7.4.2.6	Slice layer RBSP semantics.....	36
7.4.2.7	Data partition RBSP semantics.....	36
7.4.2.7.1	Data partition A RBSP semantics.....	36
7.4.2.7.2	Data partition B RBSP semantics.....	36
7.4.2.7.3	Data partition C RBSP semantics.....	36
7.3.2.8	RBSP trailing bits semantics.....	36
7.3.2.9	RBSP slice trailing bits semantics.....	36
7.4.3	Slice header semantics.....	37
7.4.3.1	Reference index reordering semantics.....	39
7.4.3.2	Reference picture buffer management semantics.....	40
7.4.3.3	Prediction weight table semantics.....	41
7.4.4	Slice data semantics.....	42
7.4.5	Macroblock layer semantics.....	43
7.4.5.1	Macroblock prediction semantics.....	46
7.4.5.2	Sub macroblock prediction semantics.....	47
7.4.5.3	Residual data semantics.....	49
7.4.5.3.1	Residual 4x4 block CAVLC semantics.....	49
7.4.5.3.2	Residual 4x4 block CABAC semantics.....	49
8	Decoding process.....	49
8.1	Ordering of decoding process.....	49
8.2	NAL unit decoding.....	49
8.2.1	NAL unit delivery and decoding order.....	49
8.2.2	Parameter set decoding.....	50
8.3	Slice decoding.....	50
8.3.1	Detection of coded picture boundaries.....	50
8.3.2	Picture order count.....	51
8.3.2.1	Picture order count type 0.....	51
8.3.2.2	Picture order count type 1.....	51
8.3.3	Decoder process for redundant slices.....	52
8.3.4	Specification of macroblock allocation map.....	52
8.3.4.1	Allocation order for box-out.....	52
8.3.4.2	Allocation order for raster scan.....	53
8.3.4.3	Allocation order for wipe.....	53
8.3.4.4	Allocation order for macroblock level adaptive frame and field coding.....	53
8.3.5	Data partitioning.....	53
8.3.6	Decoder process for management and use of the reference picture buffer.....	54
8.3.6.2	Picture Numbering.....	54
8.3.6.3	Default index orders.....	54
8.3.6.3.1	General.....	54
8.3.6.3.2	Default index order for P and SP slices in frame-structured pictures.....	54
8.3.6.4	Changing the default index orders.....	57
8.3.6.4.1	General.....	57
8.3.6.5	Overview of decoder process for reference picture buffer management.....	58
8.3.6.6	Sliding window reference picture buffer management.....	58
8.3.6.7	Adaptive Memory Control reference picture buffer management.....	58
8.3.6.7.1	General.....	58
8.3.6.8	Error resilience with reference picture buffer management.....	60
8.3.6.9	Decoding process for macroblock level frame/field adaptive coding.....	60
8.4	Motion compensation.....	61
8.4.1	Prediction of vector components.....	62
8.4.1.1	Median prediction.....	62
8.4.1.2	Directional segmentation prediction.....	63
8.4.1.3	Motion vector for a skip mode macroblock.....	63
8.4.1.4	Chroma vectors.....	63
8.4.2	Fractional sample accuracy.....	64

8.4.2.1	Quarter sample luma interpolation	64
8.4.2.2	One eighth sample luma interpolation	65
8.4.2.3	Chroma interpolation	66
8.5	<i>Intra Prediction</i>	67
8.5.1	Intra Prediction for 4x4 luma block in Intra_4x4 macroblock type	67
8.5.1.1	Mode 0: vertical Prediction	68
8.5.1.2	Mode 1: horizontal prediction	68
8.5.1.3	Mode 2: DC prediction	68
8.5.1.4	Mode 3: diagonal down/left prediction	68
8.5.1.5	Mode 4: diagonal down/right prediction	69
8.5.1.6	Mode 5: vertical-left prediction	69
8.5.1.7	Mode 6: horizontal-down prediction	69
8.5.1.8	Mode 7: vertical-right prediction	69
8.5.1.9	Mode 8: horizontal-up prediction	70
8.5.2	Intra prediction for luma block in Intra_16x16 macroblock type	70
8.5.2.1	Mode 0: vertical prediction	70
8.5.2.2	Mode 1: horizontal prediction	70
8.5.2.3	Mode 2: DC prediction	70
8.5.2.4	Mode 3: plane prediction	71
8.5.3	Prediction in intra coding of chroma blocks	71
8.5.3.1	Mode 0: vertical prediction	71
8.5.3.2	Mode 1: horizontal prediction	72
8.5.3.3	Mode 2: DC prediction	72
8.5.3.4	Mode 3: plane prediction	72
8.6	<i>Transform coefficient decoding and picture construction prior to deblocking</i>	73
8.6.1	Zig-zag scan	73
8.6.2	Scaling and transformation	73
8.6.2.1	Luma DC coefficients in Intra 16x16 macroblock	74
8.6.2.2	Chroma DC coefficients	74
8.6.2.3	Residual 4x4 blocks	75
8.6.3	Adding decoded samples to prediction with clipping	76
8.7	<i>Deblocking Filter</i>	76
8.7.1	Content dependent boundary filtering strength	77
8.7.2	Thresholds for each block boundary	78
8.7.3	Filtering of edges with $B_s < 4$	79
8.7.4	Filtering of edges with $B_s = 4$	80
9	Entropy Coding	81
9.1	<i>Variable Length Coding</i>	81
9.1.1	Exp-Golomb entropy coding	81
9.1.2	Unsigned Exp-Golomb entropy coding	82
9.1.3	Signed Exp-Golomb entropy coding	82
9.1.4	Mapped Exp-Golomb entropy coding	82
9.1.5	Entropy coding for Intra	84
9.1.5.1	Coding of Intra 4x4 and SIIntra 4x4 prediction modes	84
9.1.5.2	Coding of mode information for Intra-16x16 mode	85
9.1.6	Context-based adaptive variable length coding (CAVLC) of transform coefficients	85
9.1.6.1	Entropy decoding of the number of coefficients and trailing ones: <i>coeff_token</i>	85
9.1.6.2	Table selection	87
9.1.6.3	Decoding of level information: <i>coeff_level</i>	88
9.1.6.3	Table selection	91
9.1.6.4	Decoding of run information	91
9.1.6.4.1	Entropy Decoding of the total number of zeros: <i>total_zeros</i>	91
9.1.6.4.2	Run before each coefficient	92
9.2	<i>Context-based adaptive binary arithmetic coding (CABAC)</i>	93
9.2.1	Decoding flow and binarization	93
9.2.1.1	Unary binarization	93
9.2.1.2	Truncated unary (TU) binarization	94
9.2.1.3	Concatenated unary/ k^{th} -order Exp-Golomb (UEGk) binarization	94
9.2.1.4	Fixed-length (FL) binarization	94
9.2.1.5	Binarization schemes for macroblock type and sub macroblock type	94
9.2.1.6	Decoding flow and assignment of binarization schemes	97
9.2.1.7	Decoding flow and binarization of transform coefficients	97
9.2.1.8	Decoding of sign information related to motion vector data and transform coefficients	98

9.2.1.9	Decoding of macroblock skip flag and end-of-slice flag	98
9.2.2	Context definition and assignment	98
9.2.2.1	Overview of assignment of context labels	99
9.2.2.2	Context templates using two neighbouring symbols	100
9.2.2.3	Context templates using preceding bin values	102
9.2.2.4	Additional context definitions for information related to transform coefficients	102
9.2.3	Initialisation of context models	103
9.2.3.1	Initialisation procedure	103
9.2.3.2	Initialisation procedure	103
9.2.4	Table-based arithmetic coding	107
9.2.4.2	Probability estimation	107
9.2.4.3	Description of the arithmetic decoding engine	109
9.2.4.3.1	Initialisation of the decoding engine	110
9.2.4.3.2	Decoding a decision	111
9.2.4.3.3	Renormalization in the decoding engine (RenormD)	112
9.2.4.3.4	Input of compressed bytes (GetByte)	113
9.2.4.3.5	Decoder bypass for decisions with uniform pdf (Decode_eq_prob)	113
10	Decoding process for B slices	114
10.1	Introduction	114
10.2	Decoding process for macroblock types and sub macroblock types	115
10.3	Decoding process for motion vectors	115
10.3.1	Differential motion vectors	115
10.3.2	Motion vector decoding with scaled MV	116
10.3.3	Motion vectors in direct mode	117
10.3.3.1	Spatial technique of obtaining the direct mode motion parameters	117
10.3.3.2	Temporal technique of obtaining the direct mode motion parameters	117
10.4	Weighted prediction signal generation procedure	122
10.4.1	Weighted prediction in P and SP slices	122
10.4.2	Explicit weighted bi-prediction in B slices	122
10.4.3	Implicit bi-predictive weighting	124
11	Decoding process for SP and SI slices	124
11.1	General	124
11.2	SP decoding process for non-switching pictures	125
11.2.1	Luma transform coefficient decoding	125
11.2.2	Chroma transform coefficient decoding	126
11.3	SP and SI slice decoding process for switching pictures	127
11.3.1	Luma transform coefficient decoding	127
11.3.1.2	Chroma transform coefficient decoding	127
12	Adaptive block size transforms	128
12.1	Introduction	128
12.2	ABT Syntax	129
12.2.1	Macroblock layer syntax	129
12.2.1.1	Macroblock prediction syntax	130
12.2.1.2	Sub macroblock prediction syntax	131
12.2.1.3	Residual data syntax	132
12.2.1.3.1	Residual sub block CAVLC syntax	133
12.2.1.3.2	Residual sub block CABAC syntax	134
12.3	ABT Semantics	134
12.3.1	Macroblock layer semantics	134
12.3.1.1	Macroblock prediction semantics	135
12.3.1.2	Sub macroblock prediction semantics	135
12.3.1.3	Residual data semantics	135
12.3.1.3.1	Residual sub block CAVLC semantics	136
12.3.1.3.2	Residual sub block CABAC semantics	136
12.4	ABT decoding process	136
12.4.1	Intra Prediction for 4x8, 8x4, and 8x8 luma blocks	136
12.4.1.1	Mode 0: vertical prediction	137
12.4.1.2	Mode 1: horizontal prediction	137
12.4.1.3	Mode 2: DC prediction	138
12.4.1.4	Mode 3: diagonal down/left prediction	138
12.4.1.5	Mode 4: diagonal down/right prediction	139
12.4.1.6	Mode 5: vertical-left prediction	139

12.4.1.7	Mode 6: horizontal-down prediction	140
12.4.1.8	Mode 7: vertical-right prediction	141
12.4.1.9	Mode 8: horizontal-up prediction	141
12.4.2	Scanning method for ABT blocks	142
12.4.2.1	Zig-zag scan	142
12.4.2.2	Field scan	143
12.4.3	Scaling and inverse transform for ABT blocks	144
12.4.4	Modifications for the deblocking filter	146
12.5	ABT entropy coding	147
12.5.1	ABT variable length coding	147
12.5.1.1	Mapped Exp-Golomb entropy coding	147
12.5.1.2	VLC entropy coding of ABT coefficients	147
12.5.1.2.1	Decoding num_coeff_abt	147
12.5.1.2.2	2D (level,run) symbols	147
12.5.1.2.3	Assignment of level and run to code numbers	148
12.5.1.2.4	escape_level and escape_run	148
12.5.2	ABT CABAC	149
12.5.2.1	Fixed-length (FL) binarization for mb_type	149
12.5.2.2	Context definition and assignment	149
12.5.2.2.1	Assignment of context labels	150
12.5.2.2.2	Context definitions using preceding bin values	150
12.5.2.2.3	Additional context definitions for information related to transform coefficients	151
12.5.2.3	Initialisation of context models	153
Annex A	Profile and level definitions	156
A.1	Introduction	156
A.2	Requirements on video decoder capability	156
A.3	Baseline profile	156
A.3.1	Features	156
A.3.2	Limits	157
A.4	X profile	157
A.4.1	Features	157
A.4.2	Limits	157
A.5	Main profile	157
A.5.1	Features	157
A.5.2	Limits	157
A.6	Level definitions	158
A.6.1	General	158
A.6.2	Level limits	158
A.6.3	Reference memory constraints on modes	159
A.7	Effect of level limits on frame rate (informative)	159
Annex B	Byte stream format	160
B.1	Introduction	160
B.2	Byte stream NAL unit syntax	160
B.3	Byte stream NAL unit semantics	160
B.4	Decoder byte-alignment recovery (informative)	161
Annex C	Hypothetical Reference Decoder	162
C.1	Hypothetical reference decoder and buffering verifiers	162
C.1.1	Operation of VCL video buffering verifier (VBV) pre-decoder buffer	163
C.1.1.1	Timing of bitstream or packet stream arrival	163
C.1.1.2	Timing of coded picture removal	164
C.1.1.3	Conformance constraints on coded bitstreams or packet streams	164
C.1.2	Operation of the post-decoder buffer verifier	165
C.1.2.1	Arrival timing	165
C.1.2.2	Removal timing	165
C.1.2.3	Conformance constraints	165
C.2	Informative description of the HRD	165
C.2.1	Constrained arrival time leaky bucket (CAT-LB) model	166
C.2.1.1	Operation of the CAT-LB HRD	166
C.2.1.2	Low-delay operation	169
C.2.1.3	Bitstream / packet stream constraints	170
C.2.1.3.1	Underflow	170
C.2.1.3.2	Overflow	170

C.2.1.3.3	Constant bitrate (CBR) operation.....	171
C.2.1.4	Rate control considerations.....	171
C.2.2	Multiple leaky bucket description.....	171
C.2.2.1	Schedule of a bitstream.....	171
C.2.2.2	Containment in a leaky bucket.....	171
C.2.2.3	Minimum buffer size and minimum peak rate.....	172
C.2.2.4	Encoder considerations.....	173
Annex D	Supplemental enhancement information.....	174
D.1	Introduction.....	174
D.2	SEI payload syntax.....	175
D.2.1	Temporal reference SEI message syntax.....	176
D.2.2	Clock timestamp SEI message syntax.....	177
D.2.3	Pan-scan rectangle SEI message syntax.....	178
D.2.4	Buffering period SEI message syntax.....	178
D.2.5	HRD picture SEI message syntax.....	178
D.2.6	Filler payload SEI message syntax.....	178
D.2.7	User data registered by ITU-T Recommendation T.35 SEI message syntax.....	179
D.2.8	User data unregistered SEI message syntax.....	179
D.2.9	Random access point SEI message syntax.....	179
D.2.10	Reference picture buffer management Repetition SEI message syntax.....	179
D.2.11	Spare picture SEI message syntax.....	180
D.2.12	Scene information SEI message syntax.....	180
D.2.13	Sub-sequence information SEI message syntax.....	181
D.2.14	Sub-sequence layer characteristics SEI message syntax.....	181
D.2.15	Sub-sequence characteristics SEI message syntax.....	181
D.2.16	Reserved SEI message syntax.....	181
D.3	SEI payload semantics.....	181
D.3.1	Temporal reference SEI message semantics.....	181
D.3.2	Clock timestamp SEI message semantics.....	182
D.3.3	Pan-scan rectangle SEI message semantics.....	183
D.3.4	Buffering period SEI message semantics.....	183
D.3.5	HRD picture SEI message semantics.....	184
D.3.6	Filler payload SEI message semantics.....	184
D.3.7	User data registered by ITU-T Recommendation T.35 SEI message semantics.....	184
D.3.8	User data arbitrary SEI message semantics.....	184
D.3.9	Random access point SEI message semantics.....	184
D.3.10	Reference picture buffer management Repetition SEI message semantics.....	185
D.3.11	Spare picture SEI message semantics.....	185
D.3.12	Scene information SEI message semantics.....	186
D.3.13	Sub-sequence information SEI message semantics.....	186
D.3.14	Sub-sequence layer characteristics SEI message semantics.....	186
D.3.15	Sub-sequence characteristics SEI message semantics.....	187
D.3.16	Reserved SEI message semantics.....	187
Annex E	Video usability information.....	188
E.1	Introduction.....	188
E.2	VUI syntax.....	189
E.2.1	VUI sequence parameters syntax.....	189
E.2.2	HRD parameters syntax.....	190
E.2.3	VUI picture parameters syntax.....	190
E.3	VUI semantics.....	190
E.3.1	VUI sequence parameters semantics.....	190
E.3.2	HRD parameters semantics.....	196
E.3.3	VUI picture parameters semantics.....	197

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 6-1 – Nominal vertical and horizontal locations of 4:2:0 luma and chroma samples in a frame.....	8
Figure 6-2 – Nominal vertical and temporal sampling locations of samples in 4:2:0 interlaced frames.....	9
Figure 6-3 – A picture with 11 by 9 macroblocks (QCIF picture).....	9

Figure 6-4 – Partitioning of the decoded frame into macroblock pairs. An MB pair can be coded as two frame MBs, or one top-field MB and one bottom-field MB. The numbers indicate the scanning order of coded MBs.....	11
Figure 6-5 – Numbering of the vectors for the different blocks in raster scan order depending on the inter mode. For each block the horizontal component comes first followed by the vertical component.	11
Figure 6-6 – Ordering of blocks for coded_block_patternY, 4x4 intra prediction, and 4x4 residual coding.....	12
Figure 8-1 – Default reference field number assignment when the current picture is the first field coded in a frame.....	56
Figure 8-2 – Default reference field number assignment when the current picture is the second field coded in a frame ..	56
Figure 8-4 – Median prediction of motion vectors.....	62
Figure 8-5 – Directional segmentation prediction.....	63
Figure 8-6 – Integer samples (shaded blocks with upper-case letters) and fractional sample positions (un-shaded blocks with lower-case letters) for quarter sample luma interpolation.	64
Figure 8-7 – Integer samples ('A') and fractional sample locations for one eighth sample luma interpolation.....	65
Figure 8-8 – Diagonal interpolation for one eighth sample luma interpolation	66
Figure 8-9 – Fractional sample position dependent variables in chroma interpolation and surrounding integer position samples A, B, C, and D.	67
Figure 8-10 – Identification of samples used for intra spatial prediction.....	67
Figure 8-11 – Intra prediction directions.....	68
Figure 8-12 – Zig-zag scan.....	73
Figure 8-13 – Boundaries in a macroblock to be filtered (luma boundaries shown with solid lines and chroma boundaries shown with dotted lines).....	77
Figure 8-14 – Flow chart for determining the boundary strength (Bs), for the block boundary between two neighbouring blocks p and q, where $V_1(p,x)$, $V_1(p,y)$ and $V_2(p, x)$, $V_2(p, y)$ are the horizontal and vertical components of the motion vectors of block p for the first and second reference frames or fields.....	78
Figure 8-15 – Convention for describing samples across a 4x4 block horizontal or vertical boundary.....	78
Figure 9-1 – a) Prediction mode of block C to be established, where A and B are adjacent blocks. b) order of intra prediction information in the bitstream	85
Figure 9-2 – Illustration of the generic context template using two neighbouring symbols A and B for conditional coding of a current symbol C	100
Figure 9-3 - Overview of the Decoding Process	110
Figure 9-4 – Flowchart of initialisation of the decoding engine.....	111
Figure 9-5 – Flowchart for decoding a decision.....	112
Figure 9-6 – Flowchart of renormalization.....	113
Figure 9-7 – Flowchart for Input of Compressed Bytes.....	113
Figure 9-8 – Flowchart of decoding bypass	114
Figure 10-1 – Illustration of B picture concept	115
Figure 10-2 – Differential motion vector decoding with scaled motion vector.....	117
Figure 10-3 – Both the current block and its co-located block in the list 1 reference picture are in frame mode (f0 and f1 indicate the corresponding fields)	118
Figure 10-4 – Both the current macroblock and its co-located macroblock in the temporally subsequent picture are in field mode.....	119
Figure 10-5 – The list 0 motion vector of the co-located block in field 1 of the list 1 reference frame may point to field 0 of the same frame.	120
Figure 10-6 – The current macroblock is in field mode and its co-located macroblock in the list 1 reference picture is in frame mode.....	120

Figure 10-7 – The current macroblock is in frame mode while its co-located macroblock in the list 1 reference picture is in field mode.....	121
Figure 11-1 – A block diagram of a conceptual decoder for non-intra coded macroblocks in SP slices in which <code>sp_for_switch_flag == 0</code>	125
Figure 11-2 – A block diagram of a conceptual decoder for non-intra macroblocks in SI slices; and for non-intra coded macroblocks in SP slices in which <code>sp_for_switch_flag == 1</code>	127
Figure 12-1 – Ordering of blocks for CBPY and luma residual coding of ABT blocks	128
Figure 12-2 – Identification of samples used for ABT intra spatial prediction for 4x8, 8x4, and 8x8 luma blocks.....	137
Figure 12-3 – 4x4 zig-zag scan	142
Figure 12-4 – 4x8 zig-zag scan	143
Figure 12-5 – 8x4 zig-zag scan	143
Figure 12-6 – 8x8 zig-zag scan	143
Figure 12-7 – 4x4 field scan.....	143
Figure 12-8 – 4x8 field scan.....	144
Figure 12-9 – 8x4 field scan.....	144
Figure 12-10 – 8x8 field scan.....	144
Figure C-1 – Structure of Byte streams and NAL unit streams and HRD Conformance Points	162
Figure C-2 – HRD Buffer Verifiers.....	163
Figure C-3 – A Hypothetical Reference Decoder	166
Figure C-4 – Buffer fullness plot for example HRD in Table C-2 with picture sizes given in Table C-3	169
Figure C-5 – Illustration of the leaky bucket concept	172
Figure C-6 – Further illustration of the leaky bucket concept.....	173
Figure E-1 – Luma and chroma sample types	195
Figure E-2 – Luma and chroma association	195

LIST OF TABLES

Table 7-1 – NAL Unit Type Codes	31
Table 7-2– Refined macroblock allocation map type	34
Table 7-3– Meaning of <code>pic_type</code>	35
Table 7-4 – Meaning of <code>pic_structure</code>	37
Table 7-5 – Meaning of <code>slice_type_idc</code>	37
Table 7-6 – Allowed macroblock prediction types for <code>slice_type_idc</code>	38
Table 7-7 – <code>remapping_of_pic_nums_idc</code> operations for re-mapping of reference pictures	39
Table 7-8 – Interpretation of <code>ref_pic_buffering_mode</code>	40
Table 7-9 – Memory management control operation (<code>memory_management_control_operation</code>) values	40
Table 7-10 – Macroblock types for I slices	43
Table 7-11 – Macroblock type with value 0 for SI slices	44
Table 7-12 – Macroblock type values 0 to 4 for P and SP slices	44
Table 7-13 – Macroblock type values 0 to 22 for B slices	45
Table 7-14 – Specification of <code>nc</code> values	46
Table 7-15 – Relationship between <code>intra_chroma_pred_mode</code> and spatial prediction modes	47

Table 7-16 – Sub macroblock types in P macroblocks	48
Table 7-17 – Sub macroblock types in B macroblocks	48
Table 8-1 – Allocation order for the box-out macroblock map allocation type	52
Table 8-2 – Specification of QP_C as a function of QP_Y	73
Table 8-3 – QP_{Av} and offset dependent threshold parameters α and β	79
Table 8-3 (concluded)	79
Table 8-4 – Value of filter clipping parameter $C0$ as a function of $Index_A$ and Bs	80
Table 8-4 (concluded)	80
Table 9-1 – Code number and Exp-Golomb codewords in explicit form and used as $uc(v)$	81
Table 9-2 – Assignment of symbol values and code_nums for signed Exp-Golomb entropy coding $sc(v)$	82
Table 9-3 – Assignment of codeword number and parameter values for mapped Exp-Golomb-coded symbols	82
Table 9-4 – $coeff_token: total_coeff() / trailing_ones()$: Num-VLC0	85
Table 9-5 – $coeff_token: total_coeff() / trailing_ones()$: Num-VLC1	86
Table 9-6 – $coeff_token: total_coeff() / trailing_ones()$: Num-VLC2	87
Table 9-7 – $coeff_token: total_coeff() / trailing_ones()$: Num-VLC_Chroma_DC	87
Table 9-8 – Calculation of N for Num-VLCN	88
Table 9-9 – Level tables	88
Table 9-10 – Level VLC1	89
Table 9-11 – Level VLC2	89
Table 9-12 – Level VLC3	89
Table 9-13 – Level VLC4	90
Table 9-14 – Level VLC5	90
Table 9-15 – Level VLC6	90
Table 9-16 – $total_zeros$ tables for all 4x4 blocks	91
Table 9-17 – TotalZeros table for chroma DC 2x2 blocks	92
Table 9-18 – Tables for run_before	93
Table 9-19 – Binarization by means of the unary code tree	93
Table 9-20 – Binarization for macroblock types for I slices	95
Table 9-21 – Binarization for macroblock types for P, SP, and B slices	95
Table 9-22 – Binarization for sub macroblock types in P and B slices	96
Table 9-23 – Syntax elements and associated context identifiers	98
Table 9-24 – Overview of context identifiers and associated context labels	99
Table 9-25 – Overview of context identifiers and associated context labels (continued)	100
Table 9-26 – Specification of context variables using context templates according to Equations (9-2) – (9-4)	101
Table 9-27 – Definition of context variables using the context template according to Equation (9-6)	102
Table 9-28 – Context categories for the different block types	102
Table 9-29 – Initialisation parameters for context identifiers $ctx_mb_type_I$, $ctx_mb_type_SI_pref$, $ctx_mb_type_SI_suf$, ctx_mb_skip , $ctx_mb_type_P$, $ctx_mb_type_B$	103
Table 9-30 – Initialisation parameters for context identifiers $ctx_b8_mode_P$, $ctx_b8_mode_B$, $ctx_mb_type_P_suf$, $ctx_mb_type_B_suf$	104
Table 9-31 – Initialisation parameters for context identifiers $ctx_abs_mvd_h$, $ctx_abs_mvd_v$, ctx_ref_idx	104

Table 9-32 – Initialisation parameters for context identifiers <i>ctx_delta_qp</i> , <i>ctx_ipred_chroma</i> , <i>ctx_ipred_luma</i>	104
Table 9-33 – Initialisation parameters for context identifiers <i>ctx_cbp_luma</i> , <i>ctx_cbp_chroma</i>	105
Table 9-34 – Initialisation parameters for context identifiers <i>ctx_cbp4</i> , <i>ctx_sig</i> , <i>ctx_last</i> , <i>ctx_abs_level</i> for context category 0 – 4	105
Table 9-35 – Probability transition	107
Table 9-36 – RTAB[State][Q] table for interval subdivision	108
Table 12-1 – Modified macroblock types for I slices	134
Table 12-2 – ABT intra partitions	135
Table 12-3 – ABT Intra Block Types	135
Table 12-4 – I_{QP} values	146
Table 12-5 – Assignment of Exp-Golomb codeword numbers for ABT syntax elements	147
Table 12-6 – Code structure for ABT <i>num_coeff_abt</i> and <i>escape_run</i>	147
Table 12-7 – Code structure for ABT (level, run) symbols	147
Table 12-8 – Code structure for <i>escape_level</i>	148
Table 12-9 – Assignment of Inter and Intra level and run to code numbers.	149
Table 12-10 – Binarization for macroblock type	149
Table 12-11 – Macroblock type and associated context identifier	150
Table 12-12 – Context identifiers and associated context labels	150
Table 12-13 – Context identifiers and associated context labels (continued)	150
Table 12-14 – Additional context categories for the different block types	151
Table 12-15 – <i>Map_sig</i> and <i>Map_last</i> for zig-zag scanning order used for the additional ABT block sizes 8x8, 8x4 and 4x8	151
Table 12-16 – <i>Map_sig</i> and <i>Map_last</i> for field-based scanning order used for the additional ABT block sizes 8x8, 8x4 and 4x8	152
Table 12-17 – Initialisation parameters for context identifier <i>ctx_mb_type_I_ABT</i>	153
Table 12-18 – Initialisation parameters for context identifiers <i>ctx_cbp4</i> , <i>ctx_sig</i> , <i>ctx_last</i> , <i>ctx_abs_level</i> for context category 5 – 7	154
Table A-1 – Level Limits	158
Table C-1 - Attributes of an example CAT-LB HRD	167
Table C-2 - Picture sizes, and encoding, arrival and removal times for the example CAT-LB HRD	167
Table D-1 – Definition of <i>counting_type</i> values	182
Table D-2 – Scene transition types.	186
Table E-1 – Meaning of sample aspect ratio	190
Table E-2 – Meaning of <i>video_format</i>	191
Table E-3 – Colour Primaries	192
Table E-4 – Transfer Characteristics	193
Table E-5 – Matrix Coefficients	194
Table E-6 – Chroma Sampling Structure Frame	194
Table E-7 – Chroma Sampling Structure Frame	195

Foreword

The International Telecommunication Union (ITU) is the United Nations specialized agency in the field of telecommunications. The ITU Telecommunication Standardization Sector (ITU-T) is a permanent organ of ITU. ITU-T is responsible for studying technical, operating and tariff questions and issuing Recommendations on them with a view to standardizing telecommunications on a worldwide basis. The World Telecommunication Standardization Assembly (WTSA), which meets every four years, establishes the topics for study by the ITU-T study groups which, in turn, produce Recommendations on these topics. The approval of ITU-T Recommendations is covered by the procedure laid down in WTSA Resolution 1. In some areas of information technology which fall within ITU-T's purview, the necessary standards are prepared on a collaborative basis with ISO and IEC.

ISO (the International Organisation for Standardisation) and IEC (the International Electrotechnical Commission) form the specialised system for world-wide standardisation. National Bodies that are members of ISO and IEC participate in the development of International Standards through technical committees established by the respective organisation to deal with particular fields of technical activity. ISO and IEC technical committees collaborate in fields of mutual interest. Other international organisations, governmental and non-governmental, in liaison with ISO and IEC, also take part in the work. In the field of information technology, ISO and IEC have established a joint technical committee, ISO/IEC JTC1. Draft International Standards adopted by the joint technical committee are circulated to national bodies for voting. Publication as an International Standard requires approval by at least 75% of the national bodies casting a vote.

This Recommendation | International Standard is being submitted for approval to the ITU-T and ISO/IEC JTC1/SC29. It was prepared jointly by ITU-T SG16 Q.6 also known as VCEG (Video Coding Experts Group) and by ISO/IEC JTC1/SC29/WG11, also known as MPEG (Moving Picture Experts Group). VCEG was formed in 1997 to maintain prior ITU-T video coding standards and develop new video coding standard(s) appropriate for a wide range of conversational and non-conversational services. MPEG was formed in 1988 to establish standards for coding of moving pictures and associated audio for various applications such as digital storage media, distribution and communication.

In this Recommendation | International Standard Annexes A through E contain normative requirements and are an integral part of this Recommendation | International Standard.

0 Introduction

0.0 Prolog

As processing power and memory costs have reduced, network support for coded video data has diversified, and advances in video coding technology have progressed, the need has arisen for an industry standard for compressed video representation with substantially increased coding efficiency and enhanced robustness to network environments. Toward these ends the ITU-T video coding experts group (VCEG) and the ISO/IEC moving picture experts group (MPEG) formed a joint video team (JVT) in 2001 for development of a new ITU-T Recommendation | International Standard.

0.1 Purpose

This Recommendation | International Standard was developed in response to the growing need for higher compression of moving pictures for various applications such as video conferencing, digital storage media, television broadcasting, internet streaming and communication. It is also designed to enable the use of the coded video representation in a flexible manner for a wide variety of network environments. The use of this Recommendation | International Standard allows motion video to be manipulated as a form of computer data and to be stored on various storage media, transmitted and received over existing and future networks and distributed on existing and future broadcasting channels.

0.2 Application

This Recommendation | International Standard is designed to cover a broad range of applications for video content including but not limited to the following:

CATV	Cable TV on optical networks, copper, etc.
DBS	Direct broadcast satellite video services
DSL	Digital subscriber line video services
DTTB	Digital terrestrial television broadcasting
ISM	Interactive storage media (optical disks, etc.)
MMM	Multimedia mailing
MSPN	Multimedia services over packet networks
RTC	Real-time conversational services (videoconferencing, videophone, etc.)
RVS	Remote video surveillance
SSM	Serial storage media (digital VTR, etc.)

0.3 Profiles and levels

This Recommendation | International Standard is designed to be generic in the sense that it serves a wide range of applications, bit rates, resolutions, qualities and services. Applications should cover, among other things, digital storage media, television broadcasting and real-time communications. In the course of creating this Specification, various requirements from typical applications have been considered, necessary algorithmic elements have been developed, and they have been integrated into a single syntax. Hence, this Specification will facilitate video data interchange among different applications.

Considering the practicality of implementing the full syntax of this Specification, however, a limited number of subsets of the syntax are also stipulated by means of "profile" and "level". These and other related terms are formally defined in clause 4.

A "profile" is a subset of the entire bitstream syntax that is defined by this Recommendation | International Standard. Within the bounds imposed by the syntax of a given profile it is still possible to require a very large variation in the performance of encoders and decoders depending upon the values taken by parameters in the bitstream such as the specified size of the decoded pictures. It is currently neither practical nor economic to implement a decoder capable of dealing with all hypothetical uses of the syntax within a particular profile.

In order to deal with this problem, "levels" are defined within each profile. A level is a defined set of constraints imposed on parameters in the bitstream. These constraints may be simple limits on numbers. Alternatively, they may take the form of constraints on arithmetic combinations of the parameters (e.g. frame width multiplied by frame height multiplied by frame rate).

Coded video content conforming to this Specification uses a common syntax. In order to achieve a subset of the complete syntax, flags and parameters are included in the bitstream that signal the presence or otherwise of syntactic elements that occur later in the bitstream. In order to specify constraints on the syntax (and hence define a profile), it is thus only necessary to constrain the values of these flags and parameters that specify the presence of later syntactic elements.

0.4 Overview of the syntax

The coded representation defined in the syntax achieves a high compression capability while preserving image quality. The algorithm is not lossless as the exact sample values are not preserved through the encoding and decoding processes. Obtaining good image quality at the bit rates of interest demands very high compression, which is not achievable with intra picture coding alone. The need for random access, however, is best satisfied with pure intra picture coding. The choice of the techniques is based on the need to balance a high image quality and compression capability with the requirement to allow random access into the coded video data stream.

A number of techniques may be used to achieve high compression. The expected encoding algorithm (not specified in this Recommendation | International Standard) first uses block-based motion compensation to reduce temporal redundancy. Motion compensation is used both for causal prediction of a current picture from one or more previous pictures, and for non-causal prediction from future pictures in decoder output order. Motion vectors may be defined for a variety of region sizes in the picture. The prediction error is then further compressed using a transform to remove spatial correlation before it is quantised, producing an irreversible process that discards less important information while forming a close approximation to the source pictures. Finally, the motion vectors are combined with the quantised transform coefficient information and encoded using either variable length codes or arithmetic coding.

0.4.1 Temporal processing

Because of the conflicting requirements of random access and highly efficient compression, three main picture types are defined. Intra coded pictures (I-pictures) are coded without reference to other pictures. They provide access points to the coded sequence where decoding can begin, but are coded with only moderate compression. Inter-coded pictures (P-pictures) are coded more efficiently using motion compensated prediction of each block of sample values from some previously decoded picture selected by the encoder. Bi-predictive pictures (B-pictures) provide the highest degree of compression but require a higher degree of memory access capability in the decoding process, as each block of sample values in a B picture may be predicted using a weighted average of two blocks of motion-compensated sample values.

The organisation of the three picture types in a sequence is flexible, and the order of the decoding process is generally not the same as the order of the source picture capture process in the encoder or the output order from the decoder for display. The choice is left to the encoder and will depend on the requirements of the application. Figure Intro-1 illustrates one limited and example of the relationship among the three different picture types. Significantly different inter-picture dependency relationships are also allowed at the discretion of the encoder within limits specified by the profile and level. The decoding order is specified such that the decoding of pictures that use inter-picture prediction follows later in decoding order than other pictures that are referenced in the decoding process.

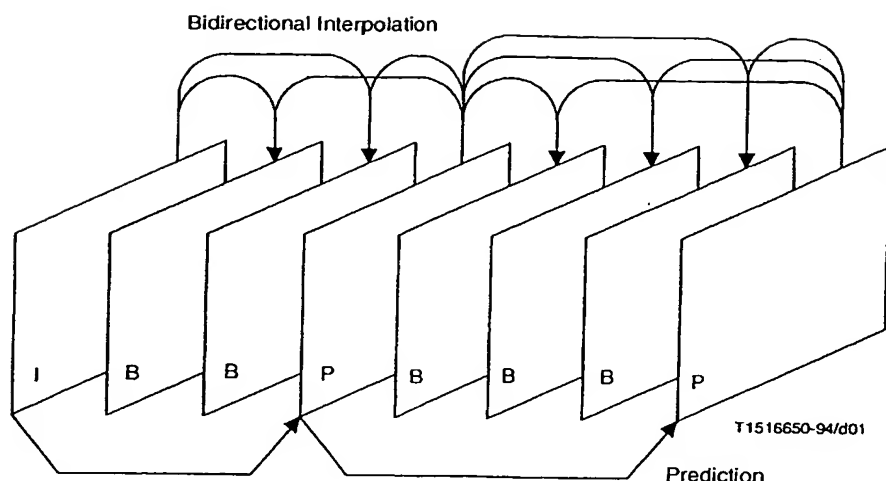


Figure Intro. 1 – Example of temporal picture structure

0.4.2 Coding interlaced video

Each frame of interlaced video consists of two fields which are separated in capture time. This Recommendation | International Standard allows either the representation of complete frames or the representation of individual fields. Frame encoding or field encoding can be adaptively selected on a picture-by-picture basis and also on a more localized basis within a coded frame. Frame encoding is typically preferred when the video scene contains significant detail with limited motion. Field encoding, in which the second field can be predicted from the first, works better when there is fast movement.

0.4.3 Macroblocks and motion segmentations

As in previous video coding Recommendations and International Standard, a macroblock consisting of a 16x16 block of luma samples and a two corresponding blocks of chroma samples is used as the basic processing unit of the video decoding process.

The selection of a motion compensation unit is a result of a trade-off between the coding gain provided by using motion information and the quantity of data needed to represent it. In this Recommendation | International Standard the motion compensation process can form segmentations for motion representation as small as 4x4 in size, using motion vector accuracy of one quarter or one-eighth of a sample grid spacing displacement. The inter prediction process for motion compensated prediction of a sample block can also involve the selection of the picture to be used as the reference picture from a number of stored previously-decoded pictures.

In frame encoding, the prediction from the previous reference frame can itself be either frame-based or field-based, depending on the type of the motion vector information and other information that is encoded within the compressed picture representation. Motion vectors are encoded differentially with respect to predicted values formed from nearby encoded motion vectors.

It is the responsibility of the encoder to calculate appropriate motion vectors or other data elements represented in the video data stream. This motion estimation process in the encoder and the selection of whether to use inter-picture prediction for the representation of each region of the video content is not specified in this Recommendation | International Standard.

0.4.4 Spatial redundancy reduction

Both source pictures and prediction errors have high spatial redundancy. This Recommendation | International standard is based on the use of a block-based transform method for spatial redundancy removal. After motion compensated prediction or spatial-based prediction from previously-decoded samples within the current picture, the resulting prediction error is split into 4x4 blocks. These are converted into the transform domain where they are quantised. After quantisation many of the transform coefficients are zero or have low amplitude and can thus be represented with a small amount of encoded data. The processes of transformation and quantization in the encoder are not specified in this Recommendation | International Standard.

This Page Blank (uspto)

Information technology -- Coding of audio-visual objects --

Part 10:

Advanced video coding

1 Scope

This document specifies ITU-T Recommendation H.264 | ISO/IEC International Standard ISO/IEC 14496-10 video coding.

2 Normative references

The following Recommendations and International Standards contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of this Recommendation | International Standard. At the time of publication, the editions indicated were valid. All Recommendations and Standards are subject to revision, and parties to agreements based on this Recommendation | International Standard are encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent edition of the Recommendations and Standards listed below. Members of IEC and ISO maintain registers of currently valid International Standards. The Telecommunication Standardization Bureau of the ITU maintains a list of currently valid ITU-T Recommendations.

- ITU-T Recommendation T.35 (2000), *Procedure for the allocation of ITU-T defined codes for non-standard facilities*

3 Definitions

For the purposes of this Recommendation | International Standard, the following definitions apply.

- 3.1 **AC coefficient:** Any *transform coefficient* for which the frequency index in one or both dimensions is non-zero.
- 3.2 **B slice:** A bi-predictive *slice*; A *slice* that is coded in a manner in which a weighted average of two *inter prediction blocks* may be used for *inter prediction*.
- 3.3 **bitstream:** A sequence of bits that forms the representation of data and coded *fields* and *frames*.
- 3.4 **block:** An N-column by M-row array of samples, or NxM array of *transform coefficients*.
- 3.5 **bottom field:** One of two *fields* that comprise a *frame*. Each row of a *bottom field* is spatially located immediately below a corresponding row of a *top field*.
- 3.6 **byte:** A sequence of 8 bits, ordered from the first and most significant bit on the left to the last and least significant bit on the right.
- 3.7 **byte aligned:** A bit in a bitstream is *byte-aligned* if its position is a multiple of 8 bits from the first bit in the *bitstream*.
- 3.8 **byte stream format:** A *NAL unit stream* containing *start code prefixes* and *NAL units* as per Annex B.
- 3.9 **category:** For *slice layer* and lower layer *syntax elements*, specifies the allocation of syntax elements to data structures for *data partitioning*. It may also be used by the systems *layer* to refer to classes of syntax elements in a manner not specified in this Recommendation | International Standard.
- 3.10 **chroma:** An adjective specifying that a sample array or single sample is representing one of the two colour difference signals related to the primary colours. The symbols used for the chroma array or sample are Cr and Cb.
- 3.11 **coded field:** A coded representation of a *field*.
- 3.12 **coded frame:** A coded representation of a *frame*.
- 3.13 **coded pictures input buffer:** A first-in first-out (FIFO) buffer containing coded pictures in *decoding order* specified in the *video buffering verifier* in Annex C.
- 3.14 **coded representation:** A data element as represented in its coded form.

- 3.15 common intermediate format (CIF):** A video frame that is 22 macroblocks wide and 18 macroblocks high.
- 3.16 component:** An array or single sample from one of the three arrays (*luma* and two *chroma*) that make up a *field* or *frame*.
- 3.17 context:** The numerical value of the *context variable* when decoding a *symbol*.
- 3.18 context modelling:** The choice and specification of prior *decoded symbols* that are to be used in the *decoding* of a *symbol*.
- 3.19 context variable:** Specified for each *symbol* by an equation containing the recently *decoded symbols* as defined by *context modelling*.
- 3.20 dangling field:** A *field* for which there is no adjacent *field* carrying the same *frame number*.
- 3.21 decoding order:** The order in which the *coded pictures* are to be *decoded*.
- 3.22 data partitioning:** A method of *partitioning* selected *syntax elements* into syntactical structures based on a categorization of the *syntax elements*.
- 3.23 DC coefficient:** The *transform coefficient* for which the frequency index is zero in both dimensions.
- 3.24 decoded picture:** A *decoded picture* is obtained by decoding a *coded picture*. A *decoded picture* is either a *decoded frame*, or a *decoded field*. A *decoded field* is a *decoded top field* or a *decoded bottom field*.
- 3.25 decoded pictures buffer:** A buffer specified in the *video buffering verifier* in subclause C.1. The decoded picture buffer comprises the *reference picture buffer* and the *picture reordering buffer*.
- 3.26 decoder:** An embodiment of a *decoding process*.
- 3.27 decoding process:** The process specified in this Recommendation | International Standard that reads a *NAL unit stream* and produces *decoded fields* or *frames*.
- 3.28 direct prediction:** An *inter prediction* for a *block* for which no *motion vector* is decoded.
- 3.29 encoder:** An embodiment of an *encoding process*.
- 3.30 emulation prevention byte:** A byte having a fixed value present within a *NAL unit*. The presence of emulation prevention bytes ensures that no sequence of consecutive byte-aligned bytes in the *NAL unit* contains a *start code prefix*.
- 3.31 encoding process:** A process, not specified in this Recommendation | International Standard, that reads a sequence of *fields* and *frames* and produces a conforming *NAL unit stream* as specified in this Recommendation | International Standard.
- 3.32 field:** An assembly of alternate rows of a *frame*. A *frame* is composed of two *fields*, a *top field* and a *bottom field*.
- 3.33 flag:** A variable which can take one of only two possible values.
- 3.34 frame:** A *frame* contains sampled and quantized *luma* and *chroma* data of all rows of a of a video signal *frame*. A *frame* consists of two *fields*, a *top field* and a *bottom field*. For interlaced video signal, one of these *fields* is sampled temporally later than the other.
- 3.35 intra prediction:** A *prediction* derived from the decoded samples of the same *decoded picture*.
- 3.36 instantaneous decoder refresh (IDR) picture:** A special *I picture* that causes the *decoder* to mark all *reference pictures* in the *decoded pictures buffer* as un-used immediately before *decoding* the *IDR picture*, and to indicate that later *coded pictures* can be *decoded* without *inter prediction* from any *picture* decoded prior to the *IDR picture*.
- 3.37 inter coding:** Coding of a *block*, *macroblock*, *slice*, or *picture* that uses information from both, within the picture and from other pictures.
- 3.38 inter prediction:** A *prediction* derived from decoded samples of *pictures* other than the current *decoded picture*. Inter prediction is a collective term for the prediction process in P, SP, and B macroblocks.
- 3.39 intra coding:** Coding of a *block*, *macroblock*, *slice* or *picture* that uses *intra prediction*.
- 3.40 I picture:** An *intra picture*; A *picture* that is coded using prediction only from decoded samples within the same *picture*.
- 3.41 inverse transform:** A part of the *decoding process* by which a *block* of *scaled transform coefficient levels* is converted into a *block* of spatial-domain samples.

- 3.42 layer:** One of a set of syntactical structures in a non-branching hierarchical relationship. Higher layers contain lower layers. The coding layers are the picture, slice, reference picture selection, macroblock, 8x8 block and 4x4 block layers.
- 3.43 level:** A defined set of constraints on the values which may be taken by the parameters of this Recommendation | International Standard. The same set of level definitions are used with all profiles, but individual implementations may support a different level for each supported profile. In a different context, *level* is the value of a *transform coefficient* prior to *scaling*.
- 3.44 long SCP:** A *start code prefix* which is used in the construction of the *byte stream format* for *NAL unit streams*. It is mandatory at the start of a *coded picture* in *byte stream format*. Optionally it can be used instead of a *short SCP* at the start of a *coded slice* or lower coding layers.
- 3.45 luma:** An adjective specifying that a sample array or single sample is representing the monochrome signal related to the primary colours. The symbol used for luma is *Y*.
- 3.46 macroblock:** The 16x16 *luma* samples and the two corresponding blocks of *chroma* samples.
- 3.47 macroblock address:** The *raster scan order* number of a *macroblock* starting with zero for the top left *macroblock* in a *picture*.
- 3.48 macroblock allocation map:** A means of *partitioning* the *macroblocks* of a *picture* into *slice groups*. The *macroblock allocation map* an array of numbers one for each *coded macroblock* indicating the *slice group* to which the *coded macroblock* belongs.
- 3.49 macroblock location:** The two dimensional coordinates of a *macroblock* in a *picture* designated by (x,y). For the top left *macroblock* of the *picture* (x,y)=(0,0). x is incremented by 1 for each *macroblock* column from left to right. y is incremented by 1 for each *macroblock* row from top to bottom.
- 3.50 macroblock pair:** A pair of vertically-contiguous *macroblocks* in a *picture* that is coupled for use in *macroblock-adaptive frame/field decoder processing*.
- 3.51 Mbit:** 1 000 000 bits.
- motion compensation:** Part of the *inter prediction* process for sample values, using previously decoded samples that are spatially displaced as signalled by means of *motion vectors*.
- 3.53 motion vector:** A two-dimensional vector used for *motion compensation* that provides an offset from the coordinate position in the *decoded picture* to the coordinates in a *reference picture*.
- 3.54 NAL unit:** A syntax structure containing an indication of the type of data to follow and bytes containing that data interspersed as necessary with *emulation prevention bytes*.
- 3.55 NAL unit stream:** A sequence of *NAL units* containing the syntax structures associated with the coded video content.
- 3.56 network abstraction layer (NAL):** A definition of syntax structures and additional information including framing and timing that are supported by a system
- 3.57 non-reference picture:** a *decoded picture* that is marked as not used for *inter prediction*.
- 3.58 opposite parity:** The *opposite parity* of *top* is *bottom*, and vice versa.
- 3.59 output order:** The order in which the *decoded pictures* are intended for output.
- 3.60 output reordering delay:** A delay between decoding a *coded picture* and its output that is caused when the order of pictures specified for output is different from the order specified for decoding.
- 3.61 parity:** The *parity* of a *field* can be *top* or *bottom*.
- 3.62 partitioning:** The division of a set into sub-sets such that each element of the set is in exactly one of the sub-sets.
- 3.63 P slice:** A *predictive slice*; A *slice* that is coded using *inter prediction* from previously-decoded *reference pictures*, using at most one *motion vector* and *reference picture index* to *predict* the sample values of each *block*.
- 3.64 picture:** A collective term for a *field* or a *frame*.
- 3.65 picture order count:** Picture position in output order relative to the latest IDR picture in *decoding order*.
- 3.66 picture reordering:** The process of re-ordering the *decoded pictures* when the *decoding order* is different from the *output order*.

- 3.67 prediction:** An embodiment of the *prediction process*.
- 3.68 prediction process:** The use of a *predictor* to provide an estimate of the sample value or data element currently being decoded.
- 3.69 prediction residual:** The difference between the value of a source sample or data element and its *predictor*.
- 3.70 predictor:** A combination of previously decoded sample values or data elements used in the *decoding process* of subsequent sample values or data elements.
- 3.71 probability model:** The set of probability distributions used by the arithmetic decoding process when decoding a symbol. The *context* determines which probability distribution is to be used when decoding a particular symbol at a particular point, block, macroblock, etc. in the picture. For each symbol, the number of probability distributions in the set is equal to the number of possible values for the *context variable*, i.e., the number of *contexts*.
- 3.72 profile:** A specified subset of the syntax of this Recommendation | International Standard.
- 3.73 quantisation parameter:** A parameter used by the *decoding process* for *scaling of transform coefficient levels*.
- 3.74 quarter common intermediate format (QCIF):** A video frame that is 11 macroblocks wide and 9 macroblocks high.
- 3.75 random access:** The ability to start the decoding of a coded NAL unit stream at a point other than the beginning of the stream and recover an exact or approximate representation of the decoded pictures represented by that NAL unit stream.
- 3.76 raster scan:** A mapping of a rectangular two-dimensional pattern to a one-dimensional pattern such that the first entries in the one-dimensional pattern are from the first row of the two-dimensional pattern scanned from left to right, followed similarly by the second, third, etc. rows of the pattern each scanned from left to right.
- 3.77 reference field:** A *reference field* is used for *inter prediction* when *P macroblocks*, *SP macroblocks*, and *B macroblocks* of a *coded field* or a *coded frame* are decoded.
- 3.78 reference frame:** A *reference frame* is used for *inter prediction* when *P macroblocks*, *SP macroblocks*, and *B macroblocks* of a *coded frame* are decoded.
- 3.79 reference index list:** A list of indices that is assigned to the *reference pictures* in the *reference picture buffer*.
- 3.80 reference index list 0:** The list of *reference indices* for use in *reference list 0 prediction* for a *P*, *B*, or *SP slice*. All *inter prediction* used for *P* and *SP slices* is considered *reference list 0 prediction*. The *reference index list 0* is one of two *reference index lists* used for a *B slice*, with the other being the *reference index list 1*.
- 3.81 reference list 0 motion vector:** A *motion vector* associated with a *reference index* pointing into the *reference index list 0*.
- 3.82 reference list 0 prediction:** *Inter prediction* of the content of a *slice* using a *reference index* into the *reference index list 0*.
- 3.83 reference index list 1:** A list of *reference indices* defined for use in *inter prediction* for a *B slice*. The *reference index list 1* is one of two lists of *reference indices* used by a *B slice*, with the other being the *reference index list 0*.
- 3.84 reference list 1 motion vector:** A *motion vector* associated with a *reference index* pointing into the *reference index list 1*.
- 3.85 reference list 1 prediction:** *Inter prediction* of the content of a *B slice* using a *reference index* into the *reference index list 1*.
- 3.86 reference picture:** A *picture* containing samples that are used for *inter prediction*.
- 3.87 reference picture buffer:** A (part of the decoded pictures ?) buffer containing the *reference pictures*.
- 3.88 reference picture buffer management:** specifies in the coded data, how the *decoding process* applies to the *decoded pictures buffer* and in particular to the *reference picture buffer*.
- 3.89 reserved:** The term “reserved”, when used in the clauses defining some values of a particular syntax element means that these values may be used in extensions of this Recommendation | International Standard by ITU-T | ISO/IEC, and that these values shall not be used unless so specified.
- 3.90 residual:** The decoded difference between a *prediction* of a sample or data element and its decoded value.

- 3.91 run:** A number of consecutive data elements represented in the decoding process. In one context, the number of zero-valued *transform coefficients* preceding a non-zero *transform coefficient*, in the *block scan* order. In another context, the number of *skipped macroblocks*.
- 3.92 sample aspect ratio (SAR):** Specifies the distance between *luma* samples. It is defined as the vertical displacement of the rows of *luma* samples in a *frame* divided by the horizontal displacement of the *luma* samples. Thus its units are (metres per row) ÷ (metres per sample).
- 3.93 scaling:** The process of *scaling* the *transform coefficient levels* resulting in *transform coefficients*.
- 3.94 short SCP:** A *start code prefix* which is used in the construction of a *byte stream format* of coded data. It can be used instead of a *long SCP* at the start of a *coded slice* or lower *coding layers*.
- 3.95 skipped macroblock:** A *macroblock* for which no data is coded other than an indication that the *macroblock* is to be decoded as "skipped". This indication may be common to several *macroblocks*.
- 3.96 slice:** An integer number of *macroblocks* ordered contiguously in *raster scan order* within a particular *slice group*. Although a slice contains macroblocks that are contiguous in raster scan order within a slice group, these macroblocks are not necessarily contiguous within the picture. The addresses of the *macroblocks* are derived from the address of the first macroblock and the *slice group* parameters.
- 3.97 slice group:** A sub-set of the *macroblocks* of a *picture*. The division of the *picture* into slice groups is a *partitioning* of the *picture*. The partition is specified by the *slice group* parameters.
- 3.98 slice header:** A part of a *coded slice* containing the *coded representation* of data elements pertaining to the *slice data* that follow the *slice header*.
- 3.99 SI picture:** A *switching I picture*; A *picture* that is coded using prediction only from decoded samples within the same *picture*, encoded such that it can be reconstructed identically to another *SP slice* or *SI slice*, as specified in clause 11.
- 3.100 SI slice:** A *switching I slice*; A *slice* that is coded using prediction only from decoded samples within the same *slice*, encoded such that it can be reconstructed identically to another *SP slice* or *SI slice*, as specified in subclause 11.
- 3.101 source (input):** Term used to describe the video material or some of its attributes before encoding.
- 3.102 SP slice:** A *switching P slice*; A *slice* that is coded using *inter prediction* from previously-decoded *reference pictures*, using at most one *motion vector* and *reference picture index* to *predict* the sample values of each *block*, encoded such that it can be reconstructed identically to another *SP slice* or *SI slice*, as specified in subclause 11.
- 3.103 start code prefix (SCP):** One of a set of unique codes embedded in the *byte-stream format* that are used for identifying the beginning of a coding layer. Emulation of *start code prefixes* is prohibited within NAL units.
- 3.104 string of data bits (SODB):** An ordered sequence of some finite number of bits, in which the left-most bit is considered to be the first and most significant bit (MSB) and the right-most bit is considered to be the last and least significant bit (LSB).
- 3.105 symbol:** A *syntax element*, or part thereof, to be decoded.
- 3.106 top field:** One of two *fields* that comprise a *frame*. Each row of a *top field* is spatially located immediately above the corresponding row of the *bottom field*.
- 3.107 transform coefficient:** A scalar considered to be in a frequency domain that is associated with a particular two-dimensional frequency index in the *inverse transform* of the decoding process.
- 3.108 variable length coding (VLC):** A reversible procedure for entropy coding that assigns shorter code-words to frequent *symbols* and longer code-words to less frequent *symbols*.
- 3.109 video buffering verifier (VBV):** A hypothetical *decoder* that is connected to the *output* of the *encoder*. Its purpose is to provide a constraint on the variability of the NAL unit stream that an encoder or editing process may produce.
- 3.110 XYZ profile decoder:** A decoder able to decode coded data conforming to the specifications of the XYZ profile (with XYZ being any of the defined Profile names).
- 3.111 zig-zag scan:** A specific sequential ordering of *transform coefficients* from (approximately) the lowest spatial frequency to the highest.

4 Abbreviations

- 4.1 ABT:** Adaptive Block size Transform

- 4.2 **CABAC**: Context-based Adaptive Binary Arithmetic Coding
- 4.3 **CAVLC**: Context-based Adaptive Variable Length Coding
- 4.4 **CIF**: Common Intermediate Format
- 4.5 **DPA**: Data Partition type A
- 4.6 **DPB**: Data Partition type B
- 4.7 **DPC**: Data Partition type C
- 4.8 **FCC**: Federal Communications Commission
- 4.9 **FIFO**: First-In, First-Out
- 4.10 **IDR**: Instantaneous Decoder Refresh
- 4.11 **LPS**: Least Probable Symbol
- 4.12 **LSB**: Least Significant Bit
- 4.13 **MB**: Macroblock
- 4.14 **MPS**: Most Probable Symbol
- 4.15 **MSB**: Most Significant Bit
- 4.16 **NAL**: Network Abstraction Layer
- 4.17 **QCIF**: Quarter Common Intermediate Format
- 4.18 **RBSP**: Raw Byte Sequence Payload
- 4.19 **SAR**: Sample Aspect Ratio
- 4.20 **SCP**: Start Code Prefix
- 4.21 **SEI**: Supplemental Enhancement Information
- 4.22 **SMPTE**: Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers
- 4.23 **SODB**: String Of Data Bits
- 4.24 **VCL**: Video Coding Layer
- 4.25 **VBV**: Video Buffering Verifier
- 4.26 **VLC**: Variable Length Coding

5 Conventions

The mathematical operators used to describe this Specification are similar to those used in the C programming language. However, integer divisions with truncation and rounding are specifically defined. Numbering and counting loops generally begin from zero.

5.1 Arithmetic operators

The following mathematical and logical operators are defined as follows

- +** Addition
- Subtraction (as a binary operator) or negation (as a unary operator)
- ++** Increment, i.e. $x++$ is equivalent to $x = x + 1$
- Decrement, i.e. $x--$ is equivalent to $x = x - 1$
- \times**
***** } Multiplication
- ^** Power
- /** Integer division with truncation of the result toward zero. For example, $7/4$ and $-7/-4$ are truncated to 1 and $-7/4$ and $7/-4$ are truncated to -1.

DIV Integer division with truncation of the result toward minus infinity. For example 3 DIV 2 is rounded to 1, and -3 DIV 2 is rounded to -2.

\div Used to denote division in mathematical equations where no truncation or rounding is intended.

$\sum_{i=a}^b f(i)$ The summation of the $f(i)$ with i taking all integer values from a up to and including b .

$a \% b$ Modulus operator. Remainder of a divided by b , defined only for a and b both positive integers

5.2 Logical operators

$a \&\& b$ Boolean logical "and" of a and b

$a || b$ Boolean logical "or" of a and b

! Logical NOT

5.3 Relational operators

> Greater than

>= Greater than or equal to

< Less than

<= Less than or equal to

== Equal to

!= Not equal to

5.4 Bit-wise operators

& AND

| OR

$a >> b$ Arithmetic right shift of a two's complement integer representation of a by b binary digits. This function is defined only for positive values of b . Bits shifted into the MSBs as a result of the right shift shall have a value equal to the MSB of a prior to the shift operation.

$a << b$ Arithmetic left shift of a two's complement integer representation of a by b binary digits. This function is defined only for positive values of b .

5.5 Assignment

= Assignment operator

5.6 Functions

$$\text{Sign}(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & ; x \geq 0 \\ -1 & ; x < 0 \end{cases} \quad (5-1)$$

$$\text{Abs}(x) = \begin{cases} x & ; x \geq 0 \\ -x & ; x < 0 \end{cases} \quad (5-2)$$

$$\text{Clip3}(a, b, c) = \begin{cases} a & ; c < a \\ b & ; c > b \\ c & ; \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (5-3)$$

$$\text{Clip1}(x) = \text{Clip3}(0, 255, x) \quad (5-4)$$

$\text{Ceil}(x)$ rounds x up to the nearest integer. Defined only for non-negative values of x . (5-5)

$\text{Log}_2(x)$ returns the base-2 logarithm of x . (5-6)

6 Source coder

6.1 Picture formats

The image width and height of the decoded luma memory arrays are multiples of 16 samples. Decoder output picture sizes that are not a multiple of 16 in width or height can be specified using a cropping rectangle. This Recommendation | International Standard represents colour sequences using 4:2:0 chroma sampling.

The nominal vertical and horizontal locations of luma and chroma samples in frames are shown in Figure 6-1. Alternative chroma sample locations may be indicated in video usability information syntax (see Annex E).

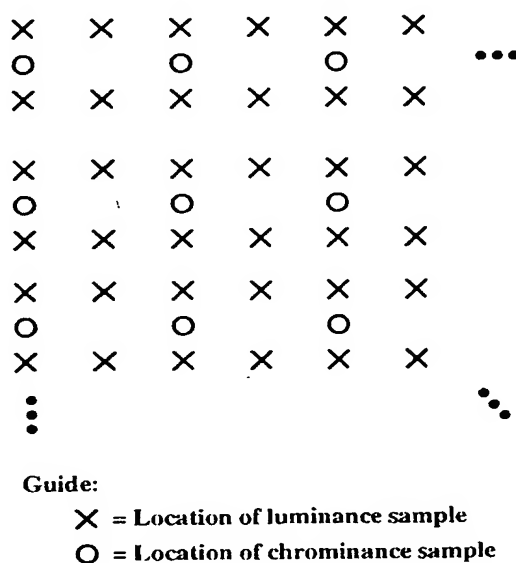


Figure 6-1 – Nominal vertical and horizontal locations of 4:2:0 luma and chroma samples in a frame

This Recommendation | International Standard describes decoding of video that contains either progressive-scan or interlaced-scan frames, which may be mixed together in the same sequence.

A decoded frame of video contains two fields, the top field and the bottom field, which are interleaved. The first (i.e., top), third, fifth, etc. rows of a decoded frame are the top field rows. The second, fourth, sixth, etc. rows of a decoded frame are the bottom field rows. A top field picture consists of only the top field rows of a decoded frame. A bottom field picture consists of only the bottom field rows of a decoded frame.

The two decoded fields of an interlaced frame are separated in time. They may be decoded separately as two fields or together as a frame.

NOTE - A progressive frame should always be coded as a single frame picture. However, a progressive frame is still considered to consist of two fields (at the same instant in time).

The nominal vertical and horizontal locations of luma and chroma samples in interlaced frames are shown in Figure 6-2. The vertical sampling locations of the chroma samples in a top field of an interlaced frame are specified as shifted up by 1/4 luma sample height relative to the field-sampling grid in order for these samples to align vertically to the usual location relative to the full-frame sampling grid. The vertical sampling locations of the chroma samples in a bottom field of an interlaced frame are specified as shifted down by 1/4 luma sample height relative to the field-sampling grid in order

for these samples to align vertically to the usual location relative to the full-frame sampling grid. The horizontal sampling locations of the chroma samples are specified as unaffected by the application of interlaced field coding.

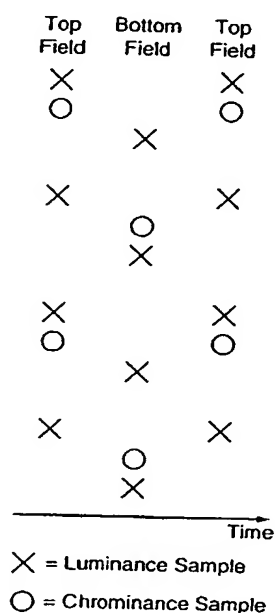


Figure 6-2 – Nominal vertical and temporal sampling locations of samples in 4:2:0 interlaced frames

6.2 Spatial subdivision of a picture into macroblocks

Pictures are divided into macroblocks. For instance, a QCIF picture is divided into 99 macroblocks as indicated in Figure 6-3.

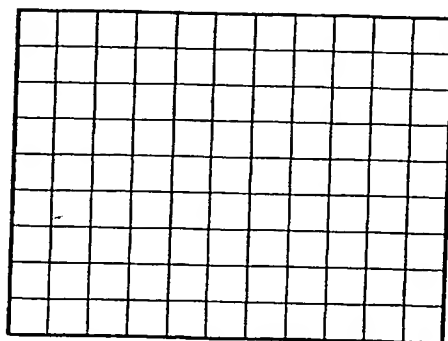


Figure 6-3 – A picture with 11 by 9 macroblocks (QCIF picture)

6.3 Calculation of the macroblock address

When `mb_adaptive_frame_field_flag` in the picture parameter set is 0, the macroblock address calculation is recursively specified as follows:

1. A coded slice contains in its slice header the macroblock address of the first macroblock in the coded slice. The macroblock allocation map conveys the slice group identifier of the first macroblock in a slice.

2. Let g be the slice group identifier of the most recently decoded macroblock of a given coded slice. The next macroblock address is found by searching the macroblock allocation map in scan order for the next macroblock that has the same slice group identifier g .

When `mb_adaptive_frame_field_flag` in the picture parameter set is 1, the macroblock pair address calculation is recursively specified as follows (see Figure 6-4):

1. A coded slice contains in its slice header the macroblock pair address of the first macroblock pair in the coded slice. The slice group index of the first macroblock pair in a coded slice may be found by referencing the macroblock allocation map.

2. Let g be the slice group identifier of the most recently decoded macroblock pair of a given coded slice. The next macroblock pair address is found by searching the macroblock allocation map in scan order for the next macroblock pair that has the same slice group identifier g .

NOTE - This note describes one of many possible implementations of the macroblock address calculation (the macroblock pair address could be calculated with a similar algorithm).

Assume the availability of a one-dimensional array m with as many entries as there are macroblocks or macroblock pairs in the picture, and that is initialized with a one-dimensional representation of the macroblock allocation map of the picture parameter set (in one of the several explicit or implicit forms defined there). Let n be the macroblock address of the last decoded macroblock of a given slice. The next macroblock address is calculated by the following three steps:

1. Identify the slice group of the macroblock n by using n as an index into m .
2. Search in m in ascending order, starting with n , for the next entry that has the same slice group identifier.
3. This is the macroblock address for the next macroblock or macroblock pair of the coded slice.

NOTE - a coded slice may consist of one slice NAL unit or, when data partitioning is used, of three NAL units DPA, DPB, and DPC.

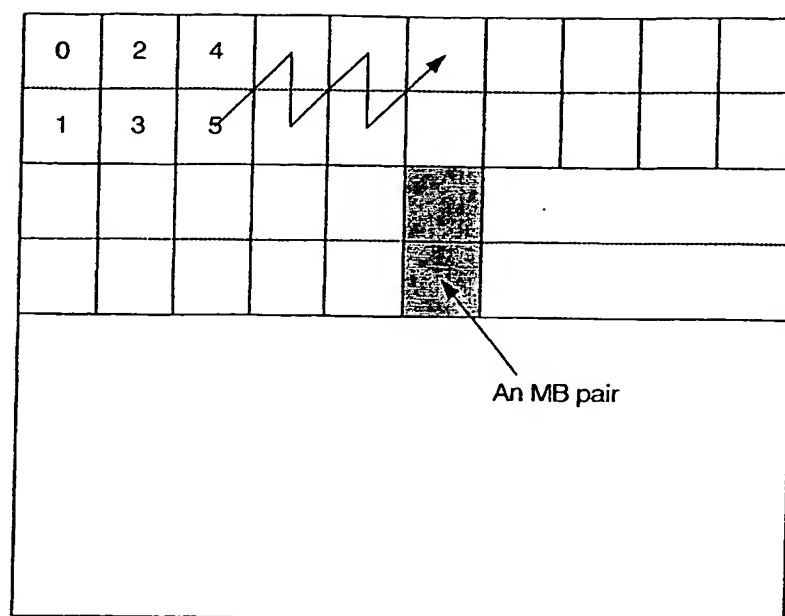


Figure 6-4 – Partitioning of the decoded frame into macroblock pairs. An MB pair can be coded as two frame MBs, or one top-field MB and one bottom-field MB. The numbers indicate the scanning order of coded MBs.

6.4 Assignment of symbols within a macroblock

Figures 6-5 indicates how a macroblock or sub macroblock is partitioned with each luma block and associated chroma blocks being motion-compensated using a separate motion vector and (for luma blocks larger or equal to 8x8 samples and associated chroma blocks) using a separate reference picture index. If the ABT feature is used, the transform for residual coding is adapted to the partitioning pattern as well.

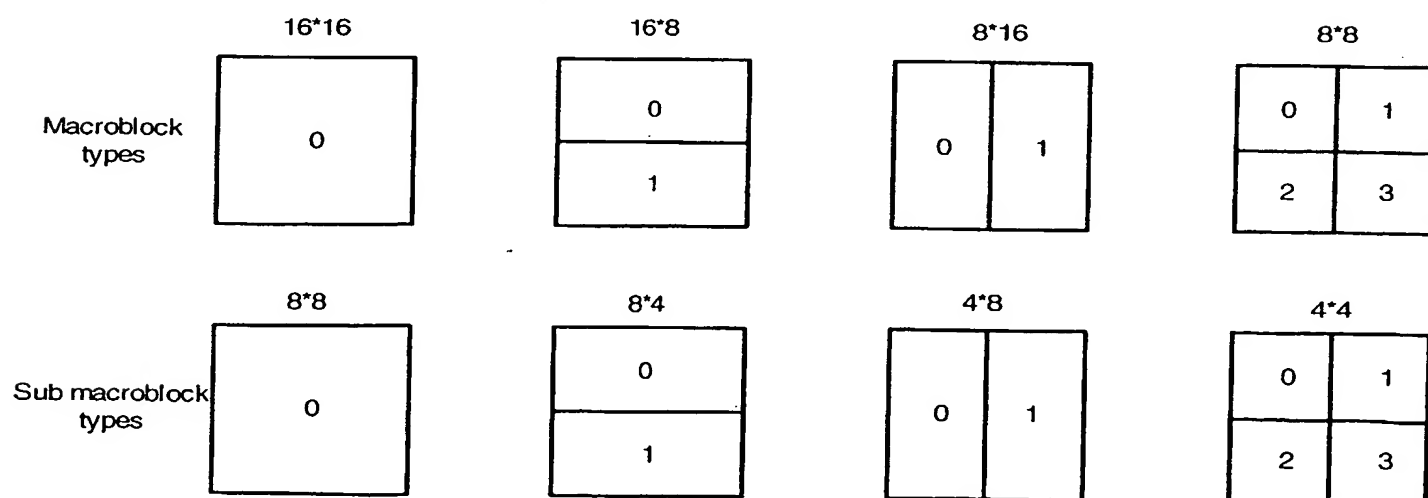


Figure 6-5 – Numbering of the vectors for the different blocks in raster scan order depending on the inter mode. For each block the horizontal component comes first followed by the vertical component.

Figure 6-6 shows the order of the assignments of syntax elements resulting from coding a macroblock to sub-blocks of the macroblock if the ABT feature is not used. The assignment order if the ABT feature is used is specified in Figure 12-1.

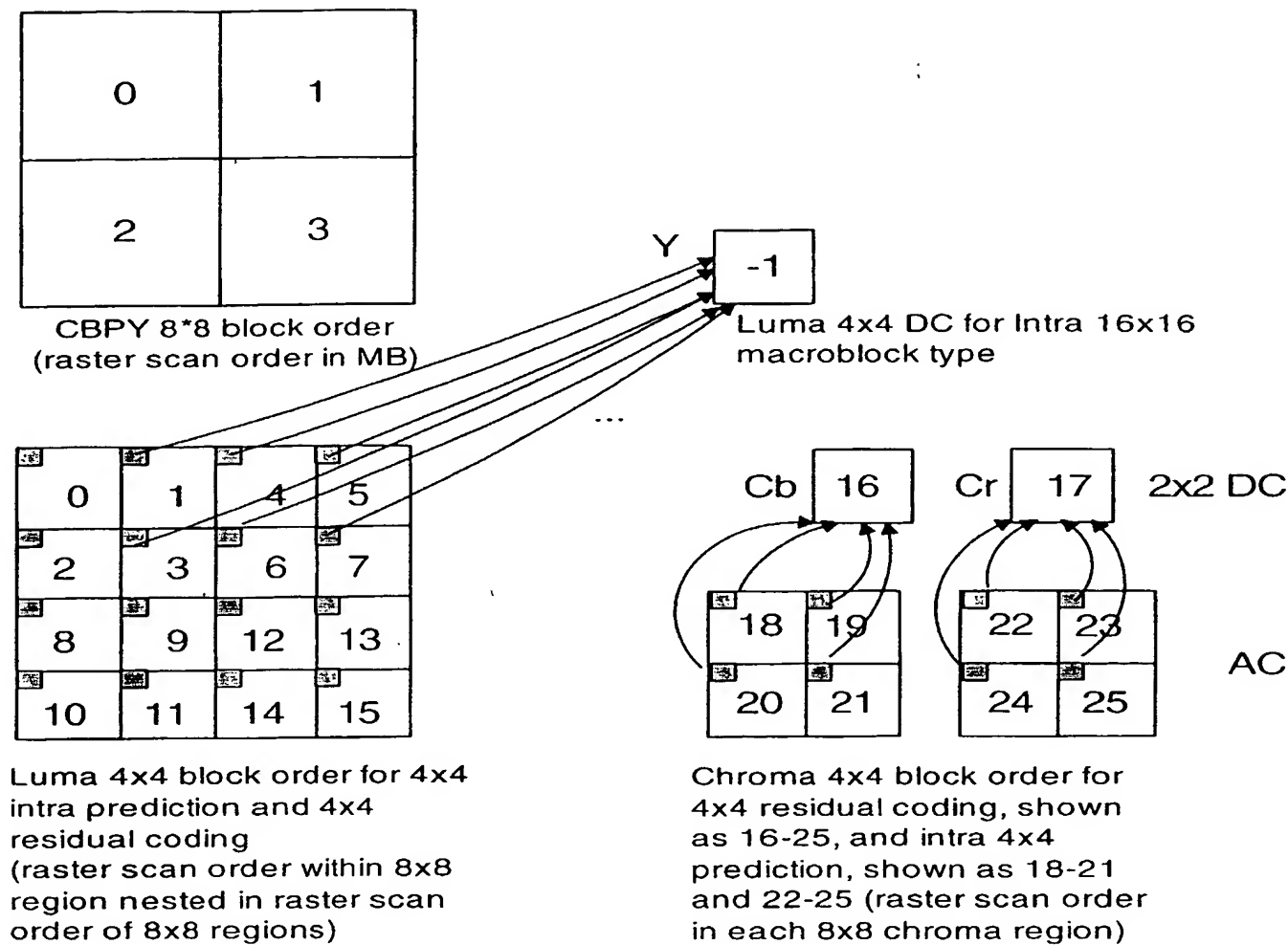


Figure 6-6 – Ordering of blocks for coded_block_patternY, 4x4 intra prediction, and 4x4 residual coding

7 Syntax and semantics

7.1 Method of describing the syntax in tabular form

The syntax is described in a manner that closely follows the C-language syntactic constructs. Syntax elements in the bitstream are represented in **bold type**. Each syntax element is described by its name, its syntax category and descriptor for its method of coded representation. A decoder behaves according to the value of the syntax element and on the values of previously decoded syntax elements.

The syntax tables describe a superset of the syntax of all correct and error-free input bitstreams. Additional constraints on the syntax form may be specified in other clauses. An actual decoder must implement correct means for identifying entry points into the bitstream for proper decoding and to identify and handle errors in the bitstream. The methods for identifying and handling errors and other such situations are not described here.

Following C-language conventions, a value of '0' represents a FALSE condition in a test statement. The value TRUE is represented by '1', but any other value different than zero is also understood as TRUE.

The following table lists examples of pseudo code used to describe the syntax. When `syntax_element` appears, it indicates that a data element is read (extracted) from the bitstream and the bitstream pointer advances to the bit following the last bit of the data element extracted.

	Category	Descriptor
/* A statement can be a syntax element with an associated syntax category and descriptor or can be an expression used to specify conditions for the existence, type, and quantity of syntax elements, as in the following two examples */		
<code>syntax_element</code>	3	e(v)
conditioning statement		
/* A group of statements enclosed in curly brackets is a compound statement and is treated functionally as a single statement. */		
{		
statement		
statement		
...		
}		
/* A "while" structure indicates a test of whether a condition is true, and if true, indicates evaluation of a statement (or compound statement) repeatedly until the condition is no longer true */		
while(condition)		
statement		
/* A "do ... while" structure indicates evaluation of a statement once, followed by a test of whether a condition is true, and if true, indicates repeated evaluation of the statement until the condition is no longer true */		
do		
statement		
while(condition)		
/* An "if ... else" structure indicates a test of whether a condition is true, and if the condition is true, indicates evaluation of a primary statement, otherwise indicates evaluation of an alternative statement. The "else" part of the structure and the associated alternative statement is omitted if no alternative statement evaluation is needed */		
if(condition)		
primary statement		
else		
alternative statement		
/* A "for" structure indicates evaluation of an initial statement, followed by a test of a condition, and if the condition is true, indicates repeated evaluation of a primary statement followed by a subsequent statement until the condition is no longer true. */		
for(initial statement; condition; subsequent statement)		
primary statement		

7.2 Definitions of functions and descriptors

The functions presented here are used in the syntactical description. These functions assume the existence of a bitstream pointer with an indication of the position of the next bit to be read by the decoder from the bitstream.

byte_aligned()

- Returns TRUE if the current position in the bitstream is on a byte boundary, i.e., the next bit in the bitstream is the first bit in a byte. Otherwise it returns FALSE

first_non_skip_mb_in_pair()

- Returns TRUE if the current macroblock is the first macroblock in a macroblock pair or if the previous macroblock in the macroblock pair was skipped. Used only in macroblock-adaptive frame/field coding.

next_bits(*n*)

- Provides the next bits in the bitstream for comparison purposes, without advancing the bitstream pointer. Provides a look at the next *n* bits in the bitstream with *n* being its argument. If used within an RBSP syntax structure or in a structure within an RBSP syntax structure, returns a non-matching value if fewer than *n* bits remain within the RBSP prior to the `rbsp_trailing_bits()`. If used within the byte stream format syntax specified in Annex B, returns a non-matching value if fewer than *n* bits remain within the byte stream.

more_rbsp_data()

- Returns TRUE if there is more data in an RBSP before `rbsp_trailing_bits()`. Otherwise it returns FALSE. The method for enabling determination of whether there is more data in the slices is specified by the system (or in Annex B for systems that use the byte stream format).

total_coeff()

- Returns the number of coefficients from `coeff_token`. See subclause 7.3.5.3.1.

trailing_ones()

- Returns the trailing ones from `coeff_token`. See subclause 7.3.5.3.1.

slice_type()

- Returns the coding type of slice.

The following descriptors are used to describe the type of each syntax element.

- **b(8)**: byte having any value (8 bits).
- **ue(v)**: unsigned integer Exp-Golomb-coded syntax element with the left bit first.
- **se(v)**: signed integer Exp-Golomb-coded syntax element with the left bit first.
- **me(v)**: mapped Exp-Golomb-coded syntax element with the left bit first.
- **cc(v)**: context-adaptive variable-length entropy-coded syntax element with the left bit first.
- **f(n)**: fixed-value bit string using *n* bits written (from left to right) with the left bit first.
- **i(n)**: signed integer using *n* bits for a two's complement representation with most significant bit written first. If *n* is "v", the number of bits varies in a manner dependent on the value of other decoded data.
- **u(n)**: unsigned integer using *n* bits with most significant bit written first. If *n* is "v", the number of bits varies in a manner dependent on the value of other decoded data.
- **xe(v)**: extended Exp-Golomb-coded syntax element with left bit first. If indicating a selection from a list having only two alternatives, shall be interpreted as `u(1)`. If indicating a selection from a list having more than two alternatives, shall be interpreted as `ue(v)`.
- **ae(v)**: context-adaptive arithmetic entropy-coded syntax element. Some syntax elements are coded using CABAC when `entropy_coding_mode == 1`. This is indicated by specifying an alternative descriptor separated by a bar.

7.3 Syntax in tabular form

7.3.1 NAL unit syntax

nal_unit(NumBytesInNALunit) {	Category	Descriptor
forbidden_bit		u(1)
nal_storage_idc		u(2)
nal_unit_type		u(5)
NumBytesInRBSP = 0		
for(i = 0; i < NumBytesInNALunit-1; i++) {		
if(next_bits(16) == 0x0003) {		
rbsp[NumBytesInRBSP++]		b(8)
i++		
emulation_prevention_byte /* == 0x03 */		f(8)
} else		
rbsp[NumBytesInRBSP++]		b(8)
}		
}		

7.3.2 Raw byte sequence payloads and RBSP trailing bits syntax

7.3.2.1 Sequence parameter set RBSP syntax

seq_parameter_set_rbsp() {	Category	Descriptor
profile_idc	0	ue(v)
level_idc	0	ue(v)
seq_parameter_set_id	0	ue(v)
log2_max_frame_num_minus4	0	ue(v)
pic_order_cnt_type	0	ue(v)
if(pic_order_cnt_type == 0)		
log2_max_pic_order_cnt_minus4	0	ue(v)
else if(pic_order_cnt_type == 1) {		
offset_for_non_stored_pic	0	se(v)
num_stored_frames_in_pic_order_cnt_cycle	0	ue(v)
for(i = 0; i < num_stored_frames_in_pic_order_cnt_cycle; i++)		
offset_for_stored_frame	0	se(v)
}		
num_of_ref_frames	0	ue(v)
required_frame_num_update_behaviour	0	u(1)
pic_width_in_mbs_minus1	0	ue(v)
pic_height_in_mbs_minus1	0	ue(v)
send_filter_parameters_flag	0	u(1)
constrained_intra_pred_flag	0	u(1)
mb_frame_field_adaptive_flag	0	u(1)
vui_seq_parameters_flag	0	u(1)
if(vui_seq_parameters_flag)		
vui_seq_parameters()	0	
rbsp_trailing_bits()	0	
}		

7.3.2.2 Picture parameter set RBSP syntax

	Category	Descriptor
pic_parameter_set_rbsp() {		
pic_parameter_set_id	1	ue(v)
seq_parameter_set_id	1	ue(v)
entropy_coding_mode	1	ue(v)
motion_resolution	1	ue(v)
adaptive_block_size_transform_flag	1	u(1)
num_slice_groups_minus1	1	ue(v)
if(num_slice_groups_minus1 > 0) {		
mb_allocation_map_type	1	ue(v)
if(mb_allocation_map_type == 0)		
for(i = 0; i <= num_slice_groups_minus1; i++)		
run_length	1	ue(v)
else if(mb_allocation_map_type == 2)		
for(i = 0; i < num_mbs_in_pic; i++)		
slice_group_id	1	u(v)
else if(mb_allocation_map_type == 3)		
for(i = 0; i < num_slice_groups_minus1; i++) {		
top_left_mb	1	u(v)
bottom_right_mb	1	u(v)
}		
else if(mb_allocation_map_type == 4 mb_allocation_map_type == 5 mb_allocation_map_type == 6) {		
slice_group_change_direction	1	u(1)
slice_group_change_rate_minus1	1	ue(v)
}		
}		
num_ref_idx_l0_active_minus1	1	ue(v)
num_ref_idx_l1_active_minus1	1	ue(v)
weighted_pred_flag	1	u(1)
weighted_bipred_explicit_flag	1	u(1)
weighted_bipred_implicit_flag	1	u(1)
slice_qp_minus26 /* relative to 26 */	1	se(v)
slice_qp_s_minus26 /* relative to 26 */	1	se(v)
redundant_slice_flag	1	u(1)
vui_pic_parameters_flag	1	u(1)
if(vui_pic_parameters_flag) {		
vui_pic_parameters()	1	
}		
rbbsp_trailing_bits()	1	
}		

7.3.2.3 Supplemental enhancement information RBSP syntax

<code>sei_rbsp() {</code>	Category	Descriptor
<code>do</code>		
<code>sei_message()</code>	7	
<code>while(more_rbsp_data())</code>		
<code>rbsp_trailing_bits()</code>	7	
<code>}</code>		

7.3.2.3.1 Supplemental enhancement information message syntax

<code>sei_message() {</code>	Category	Descriptor
<code>PayloadType = 0</code>		
<code>while(next_bits(8) == 0xFF) {</code>		
<code>byte_ff /* equal to 0xFF */</code>	7	u(8)
<code>PayloadType += 255</code>		
<code>}</code>		
<code>last_payload_type_byte</code>	7	u(8)
<code>PayloadType += last_payload_type_byte</code>		
<code>PayloadSize = 0</code>		
<code>while(next_bits(8) == 0xFF) {</code>		
<code>byte_ff</code>	7	u(8)
<code>PayloadSize += 255</code>		
<code>}</code>		
<code>last_payload_size_byte</code>	7	u(8)
<code>PayloadSize += last_payload_size_byte</code>		
<code>sei_payload(PayloadType, PayloadSize)</code>	7	
<code>}</code>		

7.3.2.4 Picture delimiter RBSP syntax

<code>pic_delimiter_rbsp() {</code>	Category	Descriptor
<code>three_reserved_bits</code>	8	u(3)
<code>pic_type</code>	8	u(3)
<code>non_stored_pic_flag</code>	8	u(1)
<code>rbsp_trailing_bits()</code>	8	
<code>}</code>		

7.3.2.5 Filler data RBSP syntax

<code>filler_data_rbsp(NumBytesInRBSP) {</code>	Category	Descriptor
<code>while(next_bits(8) == 0xFF)</code>		
<code>byte_ff</code>	9	f(8)
<code>rbsp_trailing_bits()</code>	9	
<code>}</code>		

7.3.2.6 Slice layer RBSP syntax

slice_layer_no_partitioning_rbsp() {	Category	Descriptor
slice_header()	4	
slice_data() /* all categories of slice_data() syntax */	4 5 6	
rbsp_slice_trailing_bits()	4	
}		

7.3.2.7 Data partition RBSP syntax

7.3.2.7.1 Data partition A RBSP syntax

dpa_layer_rbsp() {	Category	Descriptor
slice_header()	4	
slice_id	4	ue(v)
slice_data() /* only the category 4 parts of slice_data() syntax */	4	
rbsp_slice_trailing_bits()	4	
}		

7.3.2.7.2 Data partition B RBSP syntax

dpb_layer_rbsp() {	Category	Descriptor
slice_id	5	ue(v)
slice_data() /* only the category 5 parts of slice_data() syntax */	5	
rbsp_slice_trailing_bits()	5	
}		

7.3.2.7.3 Data partition C RBSP syntax

dpc_layer_rbsp() {	Category	Descriptor
slice_id	6	ue(v)
slice_data() /* only the category 6 parts of slice_data() syntax */	6	
rbsp_slice_trailing_bits()	6	
}		

7.3.2.8 RBSP trailing bits syntax

rsbp_trailing_bits() {	Category	Descriptor
rbsp_stop_bit /* equal to 1 */	All	f(1)
while(!byte_aligned())		
rbsp_alignment_bit /* equal to 0 */	All	f(1)
}		

7.3.2.9 RBSP slice trailing bits syntax

	Category	Descriptor
rbsp_slice_trailing_bits() {		
rbsp_stop_bit /* equal to 1 */	All	f(1)
if(entropy_coding_mode == 1)		
while(next_bits(1) == '1')		
cabac_stuffing_bit /* equal to 1 */	All	f(1)
while(!byte_aligned())		
rbsp_alignment_bit /* equal to 0 */	All	f(1)
}		

7.3.3 Slice header syntax

slice_header() {	Category	Descriptor
pic_parameter_set_id	4	ue(v)
frame_num	4	u(v)
pic_structure	4	uc(v)
first_mb_in_slice	4	u(v)
slice_type_idc	4	uc(v)
if(pic_order_cnt_type == 0)		
pic_order_cnt	4	u(v)
else if(pic_order_cnt_type == 1)		
delta_pic_order_cnt	4	se(v)
if(redundant_slice_flag)		
redundant_pic_cnt	4	uc(v)
if(slice_type_idc == BiPred)		
direct_spatial_mv_pred_flag	4	u(1)
num_ref_idx_active_override_flag	4	u(1)
if(num_ref_idx_active_override_flag) {		
if(slice_type_idc == Pred slice_type_idc == SPred slice_type_idc == BiPred) {		
num_ref_idx_l0_active_minus1	4	uc(v)
if(slice_type_idc == BiPred)		
num_ref_idx_l1_active_minus1	4	ue(v)
}		
}		
ref_idx_reordering()	4	
if((weighted_pred_flag && ((slice_type_idc == Pred) (slice_type_idc == SPred))) (weighted_bipred_explicit_flag && (slice_type_idc == BiPred)))		
pred_weight_table()	4	
ref_pic_buffer_management()	4	
slice_qp_delta	4	se(v)
if(slice_type_idc == SPred slice_type_idc == SIIntra) {		
if(slice_type_idc == SPred)		
sp_for_switch_flag	4	u(1)
slice_qp_s_delta	4	se(v)
}		
if(send_filter_parameters_flag == 1) {		
disable_deblocking_filter_flag	4	u(1)
if(!disable_deblocking_filter_flag) {		
slice_alpha_c0_offset_div2	4	se(v)
slice_beta_offset_div2	4	se(v)
}		
}		
if(num_slice_groups_minus1 > 0 && mb_allocation_map_type >= 4 && mb_allocation_map_type <= 6)		
slice_group_change_cycle	4	u(v)
}		

7.3.3.1 Reference index reordering syntax

	Category	Descriptor
ref_idx_reordering() {		
if(slice_type() != Intra && slice_type() != SIIntra) {		
ref_idx_reordering_flag_l0	4	u(1)
if(ref_idx_reordering_flag_l0) {		
do {		
remapping_of_pic_nums_idc	4	ue(v)
if(remapping_of_pic_nums_idc == 0 remapping_of_pic_nums_idc == 1)		
abs_diff_pic_num_minus1	4	ue(v)
else if(remapping_of_pic_nums_idc == 2)		
long_term_pic_idx	4	ue(v)
} while(remapping_of_pic_nums_idc != 3)		
}		
}		
if(slice_type() == BiPred) {		
ref_idx_reordering_flag_l1	4	u(1)
if(ref_idx_reordering_flag_l1) {		
do {		
remapping_of_pic_nums_idc	4	ue(v)
if(remapping_of_pic_nums_idc == 0 remapping_of_pic_nums_idc == 1)		
abs_diff_pic_num_minus1	4	ue(v)
else if(remapping_of_pic_nums_idc == 2)		
long_term_pic_idx	4	ue(v)
} while(remapping_of_pic_nums_idc != 3)		
}		
}		
}		

7.3.3.2 Prediction weight table syntax

	Category	Descriptor
pred_weight_table() {		
luma_log_weight_denom	4	ue(v)
chroma_log_weight_denom	4	ue(v)
for(i=0; i <= num_ref_idx_l0_active_minus1; i++) {		
luma_weight_flag_l0	4	u(1)
if(luma_weight_flag_l0) {		
luma_weight_l0[i]	4	se(v)
luma_offset_l0[i]	4	se(v)
}		
chroma_weight_flag_l0	4	u(1)
if(chroma_weight_flag_l0)		
for(j=0; j < 2; j++) {		
chroma_weight_l0[i][j]	4	se(v)
chroma_offset_l0[i][j]	4	se(v)
}		
}		

if(slice_type() == BiPred) {		
for(i = 0; i <= num_ref_idx_l1_active_minus1; i++) {		
luma_weight_flag_l1	4	u(1)
if(luma_weight_flag_l1) {		
luma_weight_l1[i]	4	se(v)
luma_offset_l1[i]	4	sc(v)
}		
chroma_weight_flag_l1	4	u(1)
if(chroma_weight_flag_l1)		
for(j = 0; j < 2; j++) {		
chroma_weight_l1[i][j]	4	se(v)
chroma_offset_l1[i][j]	4	sc(v)
}		
}		
num_custom_bipred_weights	4	ue(v)
for(i=0; i < num_custom_bipred_weights; i++) {		
if(num_ref_idx_l0_active_minus1 > 0)		
irp_l0	4	xc(v)
if(num_ref_idx_l1_active_minus1 > 0)		
irp_l1	4	xe(v)
luma_weight_bipred_l0[irp_l0][irp_l1]	4	se(v)
luma_weight_bipred_l1[irp_l0][irp_l1]	4	sc(v)
luma_offset_bipred[irp_l0][irp_l1]	4	sc(v)
chroma_weight_flag_bipred[irp_l0][irp_l1]	4	u(1)
if (chroma_weight_flag_bipred[irp_l0][irp_l1])		
for(j = 0; j < 2; j++) {		
chroma_weight_bipred_l0[irp_l0][irp_l1][j]	4	se(v)
chroma_weight_bipred_l1[irp_l0][irp_l1][j]	4	sc(v)
chroma_offset_bipred[irp_l0][irp_l1][j]	4	se(v)
}		
}		
}		
}		
}		

7.3.3.3 Reference picture buffer management syntax

ref_pic_buffer_management() {	Category	Descriptor
ref_pic_buffering_mode	4 7	u(1)
if(ref_pic_buffering_mode == 1)		
do {		
memory_management_control_operation	4 7	ue(v)
if(memory_management_control_operation == 1 memory_management_control_operation == 3)		
difference_of_pic_nums_minus1	4 7	ue(v)
if(memory_management_control_operation == 2 memory_management_control_operation == 3)		
long_term_pic_idx	4 7	ue(v)
if(memory_management_control_operation == 4)		
max_long_term_pic_idx_plus1	4 7	ue(v)
} while(memory_management_control_operation != 0 && memory_management_control_operation != 5)		
}		

7.3.4 Slice data syntax

slice_data() {	Category	Descriptor
if(mb_frame_field_adaptive_flag && (pic_structure == 0 pic_structure == 3 pic_structure == 4)) {		
MbPairY = first_mb_in_slice / (pic_width_in_mb_minus1 + 1)		
MbPairX = first_mb_in_slice % (pic_width_in_mb_minus1 + 1)		
MbNum = (MbPairY << 1) * (pic_width_in_mb_minus1 + 1) + MbPairX		
} else		
MbNum = first_mb_in_slice		
do {		
if(slice_type() != Intra && slice_type() != SIIntra)		
if(entropy_coding_mode == 0) {		
mb_skip_run	4	uc(v)
MoreDataFlag = more_rbsp_data()		
} else {		
mb_skip_flag	4	ac(v)
MoreDataFlag = !mb_skip_flag		
}		
if(MoreDataFlag)		
if(mb_frame_field_adaptive_flag && (pic_structure == 0 pic_structure == 3 pic_structure == 4) && (slice_type() != BiPred)) {		
if(MbNum % 2 == 0)		
MbFieldDecodingFlag = 1		
if(MbFieldDecodingFlag) {		
mb_field_decoding_flag	4	u(1) ae(v)
MbFieldDecodingFlag = 0		
} else		
mb_field_decoding_flag = 0		
}		
if(adaptive_block_size_transform_flag == 0)		
macroblock_layer()	4 5 6	
else		
macroblock_layer_abt()	4 5 6	
if(entropy_coding_mode == 0)		
MoreDataFlag = more_rbsp_data()		
else {		
if(MbNum < MAX_MB_ADDRESS) {		
if(mb_frame_field_adaptive_flag && (pic_structure == 0 pic_structure == 3 pic_structure == 4) && MbNum % 2 != 0)		
MoreDataFlag = 1		
else {		
end_of_slice_flag	4	ae(v)
MoreDataFlag = !end_of_slice_flag		

) else		
MoreDataFlag = 0		
}		
MbNum++		
} while(MoreDataFlag)		
}		

NOTE – macroblock_layer_abt() is specified in subclause 12.2.1.

7.3.5 Macroblock layer syntax

macroblock_layer() {	Category	Descriptor
mb_type	4	ue(v) ac(v)
if(num_mb_partition[mb_type] == 4)		
sub_mb_pred(mb_type)	4	
else		
mb_pred(mb_type)	4	
SendResidual = 0		
if(mb_partition_pred_mode(, 1) == Intra && mb_type != Intra_4x4) /* Intra_16x16_X_Y_Z mb_type */		
SendResidual = 1		
else {		
coded_block_pattern	4	mc(v) ac(v)
if(coded_block_pattern > 0)		
SendResidual = 1		
}		
if(SendResidual) {		
if(!mb_frame_field_adaptive_flag (mb_frame_field_adaptive_flag && (pic_structure == 0 pic_structure == 3 pic_structure == 4) && first_non_skip_mb_in_pair())		
delta_qp	4	se(v) ac(v)
residual()	5 6	
}		
}		

7.3.5.1 Macroblock prediction syntax

mb_pred(mb_type) {	Category	Descriptor
if(mb_partition_pred_mode(mb_type, 1) == Intra) {		
if(mb_type == Intra_4x4 mb_type == SIIntra_4x4)		
for(i = 0; i < num_mb_intra_partition(mb_type); i++) /* for each 4x4 luma block */		
intra_pred_mode	4	ce(v) ac(v)
intra_chroma_pred_mode	4	ue(v) ac(v)
} else if(mb_type != Direct_16x16) {		
for(i = 0; i < num_mb_partition(mb_type); i++)		
if(num_ref_idx_l0_active_minus1 > 0 && mb_partition_pred_mode(mb_type, i) != Pred_L1)		
ref_idx_l0	4	ue(v) ac(v)
for(i = 0; i < num_mb_partition(mb_type); i++) {		
if(num_ref_idx_l1_active_minus1 > 0 && mb_partition_pred_mode(mb_type, i) != Pred_L0)		
ref_idx_l1	4	ue(v) ac(v)
for(i = 0; i < num_mb_partition(mb_type); i++) {		
if(mb_partition_pred_mode(mb_type, i) != Pred_L1)		
for(j = 0; j < 2; j++)		
mvd_l0[i][j]	4	se(v) ac(v)
for(i = 0; i < num_mb_partition(mb_type); i++) {		

if(mb_partition_pred_mode(mb_type, i) != Pred_L0)		
for(j = 0; j < 2; j++)		
mvd_11[i][j]	4	se(v) ae(v)
}		
}		

7.3.5.2 Sub macroblock prediction syntax

sub_mb_pred(mb_type) {	Category	Descriptor
for(i = 0; i < 4; i++) /* for each sub macroblock */		
sub_mb_type[i]	4	ue(v) ae(v)
IntraChromaPredModeFlag = 0		
for(i = 0; i < 4; i++) /* for each sub macroblock */		
if(sub_mb_type[i] == Intra_8x8)		
for(j = 0; j < num_sub_mb_intra_partition(sub_mb_type[i]); j++)		
{ /* num_sub_mb_intra_partition() = 4 */		
intra_pred_mode	4	ce(v) ae(v)
IntraChromaPredModeFlag = 1		
}		
if(IntraChromaPredModeFlag)		
intra_chroma_pred_mode	4	uc(v) ae(v)
for(i = 0; i < 4; i++) /* for each sub macroblock */		
if(num_ref_idx_l0_active_minus1 > 0 &&		
mb_type != Pred_8x8ref0 &&		
sub_mb_type[i] != Intra_8x8 &&		
sub_mb_type[i] != Direct_8x8 &&		
sub_mb_pred_mode(sub_mb_type[i]) != Pred_L1)		
ref_idx_l0	4	ue(v) ae(v)
for(i = 0; i < 4; i++) /* for each sub macroblock */		
if(num_ref_idx_l1_active_minus1 > 0 &&		
(sub_mb_type[i] != Intra_8x8 &&		
sub_mb_type[i] != Direct_8x8 &&		
sub_mb_pred_mode(sub_mb_type[i]) != Pred_L0)		
ref_idx_l1	4	ue(v) ae(v)
for(i = 0; i < 4; i++) /* for each sub macroblock */		
if(sub_mb_type[i] != Intra_8x8 &&		
sub_mb_type[i] != Direct_8x8 &&		
sub_mb_pred_mode(sub_mb_type[i]) != Pred_L1)		
for(j = 0; j < num_sub_mb_partition(sub_mb_type[i]); j++)		
for(k = 0; k < 2; k++)		
mvd_l0[i][j][k]	4	se(v) ae(v)
for(i = 0; i < 4; i++) /* for each sub macroblock */		
if(sub_mb_type[i] != Intra_8x8 &&		
sub_mb_type[i] != Direct_8x8 &&		
sub_mb_pred_mode(sub_mb_type[i]) != Pred_L0)		
for(j = 0; j < num_sub_mb_partition(sub_mb_type[i]); j++)		
for(k = 0; k < 2; k++)		
mvd_11[i][j][k]	4	se(v) ae(v)
}		

7.3.5.3 Residual data syntax

residual(mb_type) {	Category	Descriptor
if(entropy_coding_mode == 1)		
residual_4x4block = residual_4x4block_cabac()	5 6	
else		
residual_4x4block = residual_4x4block_cavlc()	5 6	
if(mb_type == Intra_16x16)		
residual_4x4block(intra16x16DC, 16)	5	
for(i8x8 = 0; i8x8 < 4; i8x8++) /* each luma 8x8 block */		
for(i4x4 = 0; i4x4 < num_sub_blocks(); i4x4++) /* each 4x4		
sub-block of block */		
if(coded_block_pattern & (1 << i8x8))		
if(mb_type == Intra_16x16)		
residual_4x4block(intra16x16AC, 16)	5	
else		
residual_4x4block(luma, 16)	5 6	
if(coded_block_pattern & 0x30) /* chroma DC residual coded */		
for(iCbCr = 0; iCbCr < 2; iCbCr++)		
residual_4x4block(chromaDC, 4)	5 6	
if(coded_block_pattern & 0x20) /* chroma AC residual coded */		
for(iCbCr = 0; iCbCr < 2; iCbCr++)		
for(i4x4 = 0; i4x4 < 4; i4x4++)		
residual_4x4block(chromaAC, 16)	5 6	
}		

7.3.5.3.1 Residual 4x4 block CAVLC syntax

residual_4x4block_cavlc(block_mode, MaxNumCoeff) {	Category	Descriptor
coeff_token	5 6	ce(v)
NumCoeffs = total_coeff(coeff_token) - trailing_ones(coeff_token)		
if(trailing_ones(coeff_token) > 0)		
for(i = trailing_ones(coeff_token) - 1; i >= 0; i--)		
trailing_ones_sign[i]	5 6	u(1)
if(total_coeff(coeff_token) > 0) {		
for(i = NumCoeffs - 1; i >= 0; i--)		
coeff_level[i]	5 6	ce(v)
if(total_coeff(coeff_token) < MaxNumCoeff) {		
total_zeros	5 6	ce(v)
i = total_coeff(coeff_token) - 1		
ZerosLeft = total_zeros		
if(i > 0 && ZerosLeft > 0) {		
do {		
run_before[i]	5 6	ce(v)
ZerosLeft -= run_before[i]		
i--		
} while(ZerosLeft > 0 && i >= 0)		
run_before[i] = ZerosLeft		
}		
}		
}		
}		

7.3.5.3.2 Residual 4x4 block CABAC syntax

residual_4x4block_cabac(BlockType, MaxNumCoeff) {	Category	Descriptor
coded_block_flag	5 6	ae(v)
if(coded_block_flag) {		
for(i = 0; i < MaxNumCoeff - 1; i++) {		
significant_coeff_flag[i]	5 6	ae(v)
if(significant_coeff_flag[i]) {		
last_significant_coeff_flag[i]	5 6	ae(v)
if(last_significant_coeff_flag[i])		
MaxNumCoeff = i + 1		
}		
}		
coeff_absolute_value_minus1[MaxNumCoeff - 1]	5 6	ae(v)
coeff_sign[MaxNumCoeff - 1]	5 6	ae(v)
for(i = MaxNumCoeff - 2; i >= 0; i--)		
if(significant_coeff_flag[i]) {		
coeff_absolute_value_minus1[i]	5 6	ae(v)
coeff_sign[i]	5 6	ae(v)
}		
}		
}		

7.4 Semantics

7.4.1 NAL unit semantics

NOTE - The Video Coding Layer (VCL) is specified to efficiently represent the content of the video data. The Network Abstraction Layer (NAL) is specified to format that data and provide header information in a manner appropriate for conveyance by the transport layers or storage media. All data are contained in NAL units, each of which contains an integer number of bytes. A NAL unit specifies a generic format for use in both packet-oriented and bitstream systems. The format of NAL units for both packet-oriented transport and bitstream is identical except that each NAL unit can be preceded by a start code prefix in a bitstream-oriented transport layer.

NumBytesInNALunit specifies the size of the NAL unit in bytes. This value is required for decoding of the NAL unit and shall be conveyed by external means. Framing of NAL units is necessary to enable inference of NumBytesInNALunit. Such framing into a byte stream format is specified in Annex B and other methods for framing may be specified outside of this Recommendation | International Standard.

NOTE - Any sequence of bits can be formatted into a sequence of bytes in a manner defined as an RBSP by suffixing the data with `rbsp_trailing_bits()`, and any RBSP can be encapsulated in a NAL unit a manner that prevents emulation of byte stream start code prefixes within the NAL unit.

forbidden_bit shall be zero.

NOTE - The **forbidden_bit** may be used by external specifications to signal potentially corrupt NAL units.

nal_storage_idc equal to 0 signals that the content of the NAL unit belongs either to a picture that is not stored in the reference picture buffer, SEI data or Filler data. **nal_storage_idc** shall not be 0 for sequence parameter set or picture parameter set NAL units. If **nal_storage_idc** is 0 for one slice or data partition NAL unit of a particular picture, it shall be 0 for all slice and data partition NAL units of the picture. **nal_storage_idc** greater than 0 signals that the content of the NAL unit belongs to a decoded picture that is stored in the reference picture buffer.

NOTE - In addition to signalling non-stored content, external specifications may use **nal_storage_idc** to indicate the relative transport priority of the NAL unit in a manner not specified in this Recommendation | International Standard. The value 0 should be used to signal the lowest transport priority and the priority should grow in ascending order of **nal_storage_idc** values.

nal_unit_type indicates the type of element contained in the NAL unit according to the types specified in Table 7-1.

Table 7-1 – NAL Unit Type Codes

Value of nal_unit_type	Content of NAL unit and RBSP syntax structure	Category
0x0	Reserved for external use	
0x1	Coded slice <code>slice_layer_no_partitioning_rbsp()</code>	4, 5, 6
0x2	Coded data partition A (DPA) <code>dpa_layer_rbsp()</code>	4
0x3	Coded data partition B (DPB) <code>dpb_layer_rbsp()</code>	5
0x4	Coded data partition C (DPC) <code>dpc_layer_rbsp()</code>	6
0x5	Coded slice of an IDR picture <code>slice_layer_no_partitioning_rbsp()</code>	4, 5
0x6	Supplemental Enhancement Information (SEI) <code>sei_rbsp()</code>	7
0x7	Sequence Parameter Set (SPS) <code>seq_parameter_set_rbsp()</code>	0
0x8	Picture Parameter Set (PPS) <code>pic_parameter_set_rbsp()</code>	1
0x9	Picture Delimiter (PD) <code>pic_delimiter_rbsp()</code>	8
0xA	Filler Data (FD) <code>filler_data_rbsp()</code>	9
0xB – 0x17	Reserved	
0x18 – 0x1F	For external use	

An instantaneous decoder refresh picture (IDR picture) implies that all pictures in the multi-picture buffer are marked as “unused” except the current picture. Moreover, the maximum long-term index is reset to zero. An IDR picture contains only I or SI slices, and IDR slice type shall be used for all slices of an IDR picture.

rbbsp[i] a raw byte sequence payload is defined as an ordered sequence of bytes that contains an SODB. The RBSP contains the SODB in the following form:

- a) If the SODB is null, the RBSP is also null.
- b) Otherwise, the RBSP shall contain the SODB in the following form:
 - 1) The first byte of the RBSP shall contain the (most significant, left-most) eight bits of the SODB; the next byte of the RBSP shall contain the next eight bits of the SODB, etc.; until fewer than eight bits of the SODB remain.
 - 2) The final byte of the RBSP shall have the following form:
 - i) The first (most significant, left-most) bits of the final RBSP byte shall contain the remaining bits of the SODB, if any,
 - ii) The next bit of the final RBSP byte shall consist of a single `rbsp_stop_bit` having the value one ('1'), and
 - iii) Any remaining bits of the final RBSP byte, if any, shall consist of one or more `rbsp_alignment_bit` having the value zero ('0').

The last byte of a RBSP shall never have the value zero (0x00), because it contains the `rbsp_stop_bit`.

If the boundaries of the RBSP are known, the decoder can extract the SODB from the RBSP by concatenating the bits of the bytes of the RBSP and discarding the `rbsp_stop_bit`, which is the last (least significant, right-most) bit having the value one ('1'), and discarding any following (less significant, farther to the right) bits that follow it, which have the value zero ('0').

Syntax structures having these RBSP properties are denoted in the syntax tables using an "_rbsp" suffix. These structures shall be carried within NAL units as the content of the rbsp[i] data bytes. The association of the RBSP syntax structures to the NAL units shall be as specified in Table 7-1.

emulation_prevention_byte is a byte equal to 0x03.

Within the NAL unit, an **emulation_prevention_byte** shall be present after an rbsp[i] byte having the value zero (0x00) if and only if a next byte of RBSP data rbsp[i+1] follows that has one of the following four values:

- zero (0x00)
- one (0x01)
- two (0x02)
- three (0x03)

NOTE - Example encoder procedure. The encapsulation of an SODB within an RBSP and the encapsulation of an RBSP within a NAL unit is specified to prevent the emulation of start codes within NAL units while allowing any arbitrary SODB to be represented within a NAL unit and enable identification of the end of the SODB within the NAL unit.

The encoder can produce a NAL unit from an RBSP by the following procedure:

The RBSP data is searched for byte-aligned bits of the following binary patterns:

'00000000 000000xx' (where xx represents any 2 bit pattern: 00, 01, 10 or 11).

and a byte having the value three (0x03) is inserted to replace these bit patterns with the patterns

'00000000 00000011 000000xx'

The resulting sequence of bytes is then prefixed with the first byte of the NAL unit containing the indication of the type of RBSP data structure it contains.

This process can allow any RBSP data to be sent in NAL unit while ensuring that no long SCP and no byte-aligned short SCP is emulated in the NAL unit.

7.4.2 Raw byte sequence payloads and RBSP trailing bits semantics

7.4.2.1 Sequence parameter set RBSP semantics

A sequence parameter set is called an active sequence parameter set when an IDR NAL unit refers to it. The parameters of an active sequence parameter set shall be replaced only when an IDR NAL unit refers to a different sequence parameter set.

A picture parameter set includes the parameters that remain unchanged within a coded picture. Every picture parameter set shall refer to the active sequence parameter set. A decoded picture parameter set is an active picture parameter set when the first slice NAL unit or first DPA NAL unit of a coded picture refers to it. The picture parameters of an active picture parameter set shall be replaced only when the first slice NAL unit or DPA NAL unit of a picture refers to a different picture parameter set.

NOTE - The sequence and picture parameter set mechanism decouples the transmission of infrequently changing information from the transmission of coded macroblock data. The sequence parameter set, the picture parameter set, and the slice header contain all the parameters needed to decode the slice data. It is recommended to convey sequence and picture parameter sets out-of-band using a reliable transport mechanism. However, if an application requires a self-contained bitstream, in-band parameter set information units may be used. In error-prone transmission environments, in-band sequence and picture parameter set information units should be protected in a way that assures their successful reception. Synchronization between in-band and out-of-band transmission of the sequence and picture parameter set information is outside of the scope of this Recommendation | International Standard.

profile_idc and **level_idc** indicate profile and level as specified in Annex A.

seq_parameter_set_id identifies the sequence parameter set to be referred.

log2_max_frame_num_minus4 specifies the MAX_FN used in frame number related arithmetic as follows:

$$\text{MAX_FN} = 2^{(\text{log2_max_frame_num_minus4} + 4)} \quad (7-1)$$

The value of **log2_max_frame_num_minus4** shall be in the range of 0 to 12, inclusive.

pic_order_cnt_type equal to 0 or 1 indicates the method to code picture order count (see subclause 8.3.2). **pic_order_cnt_type** values greater than 1 are reserved.

log2_max_pic_order_cnt_minus4 is used to specify the MAX_PIC_ORDER_CNT used in picture order count related arithmetic as follows:

$$\text{MAX_PIC_ORDER_CNT} = 2^{(\text{log2_max_pic_order_cnt_minus4} + 4)} \quad (7-2)$$

The size of the `pic_order_cnt` parameter in the slice header is `log2_max_pic_order_cnt_minus4 + 4` bits. The value of `log2_max_pic_order_cnt_minus4` shall be in the range of 0 to 12, inclusive.

`offset_for_non_st_red_pic` indicates an expected picture order count difference of a non-stored picture compared to a stored picture having the same `frame_num` as the non-stored picture.

`num_stored_frames_in_pic_order_cnt_cycle` signals the number of frame numbers in a picture order count cycle. A picture order count cycle is a repetitive pattern of picture order count differences, each of which corresponds to a `frame_num` increment of one.

`offset_for_stored_frame` indicates an expected difference of picture order count corresponding to a `frame_num` increment of one. Notation `offset_for_stored_framen` indicates the `offset_for_stored_frame` corresponding to index `n` in the picture order count cycle. `offset_for_stored_frame_in_pic_order_cnt_cycle` is the sum of all values of `offset_for_stored_frame`.

`num_of_ref_frames` specifies the total number of short- and long-term pictures in the reference picture buffer.

If `required_frame_num_update_behaviour` equal to 1 specifies a specific decoder behaviour in case of missing frame numbers.

`pic_width_in_mbs_minus1` and `pic_height_in_mbs_minus1` specify the size of the luma picture array internal to the decoder in units of macroblocks. The picture width and height in units of macroblocks is computed by adding 1 to the decoded values of each of these parameters. The maximum macroblock address, `MAX_MB_ADDRESS`, shall be calculated according to Equation 7-3.

$$\text{MAX_MB_ADDRESS} = (\text{pic_width_in_mbs_minus1} + 1) \times (\text{pic_height_in_mbs_minus1} + 1) - 1 \quad (7-3)$$

The `NUM_BITS_IN_MB_ADDRESS` indicates the number of bits used to code a macroblock address with a fixed-length unsigned integer. It is calculated as follows.

If a picture is a field-structured picture or if macroblock-adaptive frame/field coding is not in use for the picture, then

$$\text{NUM_BITS_IN_MB_ADDRESS} = \text{Ceil}(\text{Log2}(\text{MAX_MB_ADDRESS} + 1)) \quad (7-4)$$

otherwise, `NUM_BITS_IN_MB_ADDRESS` shall be

$$\text{NUM_BITS_IN_MB_ADDRESS} = \text{Ceil}(\text{Log2}(\text{MAX_MB_ADDRESS} + 1) - 1) \quad (7-4a)$$

`send_filter_parameters_flag` specifies whether a set of parameters controlling the characteristics of the deblocking filter is indicated in the slice header.

`constrained_intra_pred_flag` equal to zero indicates normal intra prediction, whereas one indicates constrained intra prediction, where no intra prediction is done from macroblocks coded with `mb_pred_type != Intra`.

`mb_frame_field_adaptive_flag` equal to zero indicates no switching between frame and field decoding mode at the macroblock layer, whereas one indicates the use of switching between frame and field decoding mode at the macroblock layer.

`vui_seq_parameters_flag` equal to zero specifies that default parameter values for the vui sequence parameters shall be applied.

7.4.2.2 Picture parameter set RBSP semantics

`pic_parameter_set_id` the picture parameter set identifier to be used for reference.

`seq_parameter_set_id` refers to the sequence parameter set that is used with this picture parameter set.

`entropy_coding_mode` equal to zero indicates VLC and CAVLC (see subclause 9.1), whereas value one indicates CABAC (see subclause 9.2). If CABAC is indicated, the `ae(v)` entropy coding is used for the assigned syntax elements.

`motion_resolution` equal to zero indicates 1/4 luma sample accurate motion resolution, and equal to one indicates 1/8 luma sample accurate motion resolution.

adaptive_block_size_transform_flag equal to zero indicates usage of 4x4 transforms for the luma residual, and equal one indicates usage of transforms of size 4x4, 4x8, 8x4, and 8x8 for the luma residual. Clause 12 specifies modifications as indicated in clause 7 that are related to syntax, semantics, and decoding process.

num_slice_groups_minus1 the number of slice groups is equal to **num_slice_groups_minus1** + 1. If **num_slice_groups_minus1** is zero, all slices of the picture belong to the same slice group.

NOTE – One slice group means that no flexible macroblock ordering is applied. If **num_slice_groups_minus1** is greater than zero, flexible macroblock ordering is in use.

mb_allocation_map_type the macroblock allocation map type is present only if **num_slice_groups_minus1** is greater than 0. This parameter indicates how the macroblock allocation map is coded. The value of this syntax element shall be in the range of 0 to 6, inclusive.

mb_allocation_map_type 0 is used to indicate interleaved slices.

mb_allocation_map_type 1 is used to indicate a dispersed macroblock allocation.

mb_allocation_map_type 2 is used to explicitly assign a slice group to each macroblock location in raster scan order.

mb_allocation_map_type 3 is used to indicate one or more “foreground” slice groups and a “leftover” slice group.

mb_allocation_map_types 4, 5 and 6 are used to indicate changing slice groups. **num_slice_groups_minus1** shall be 1, when **mb_allocation_map_type** is 4, 5 or 6.

If **mb_allocation_map_type** is 0, the **run_length** syntax element follows for each slice group. It indicates the number of consecutive macroblocks that are assigned to the slice group in raster scan order. After the macroblocks of the last slice group have been assigned, the process begins again from the first slice group. The process ends when all the macroblocks of a picture have been assigned.

NOTE - Example: To signal macroblock row interleaving in a QCIF picture (where all even numbered macroblocks are in slice group 0, and all odd numbered macroblocks are in slice group 1), the number of slice groups is two and **run_length** is 11 for both slice groups.

If **mb_allocation_map_type** is 1, the macroblock allocation map is formed using the following formula, where *n* is the number of columns in the picture (in macroblocks) and *p* is the number of slice groups to be coded. Specifically, macroblock position *x* is assigned to slice group *S* according to Equation 7-5.

$$S(x) = ((x \% n) + ((\text{floor}(x / n) * p) / 2)) \% p \quad (7-5)$$

If **mb_allocation_map_type** is 2, **slice_group_id** identifies a slice group of a macroblock.

NOTE - **slice_group_id** is repeated as often as there are macroblocks in the picture.

If **mb_allocation_map_type** is 3, **top_left_mb** and **bottom_right_mb** are specified for each **slice_group_id** except for the last one. The **top_left_mb** specifies the top-left corner of a rectangle and **bottom_right_mb** specifies the bottom-right corner. **top_left_mb** and **bottom_right_mb** are indicated as macroblock addresses. The foreground slice group contains the macroblocks that are within the indicated rectangle and that do not belong to any slice group having a smaller **slice_group_id**. The last **slice_group_id** is dedicated for the leftover slice group, which contains the macroblocks that are not covered by the foreground slice groups. The leftover slice group shall not be empty. The size of the **top_left_mb** and **bottom_right_mb** parameters **NUM_BITS_IN_MB_ADDRESS**.

If **mb_allocation_map_type** is 4, 5 or 6, **mb_allocation_map_type** and **slice_group_change_direction** indicate the refined macroblock allocation map type according to Table 7-2. The macroblock allocation map is generated each time the decoder starts decoding of a new picture as described in subclause 8.3.4.

Table 7-2– Refined macroblock allocation map type

mb_allocation_map_type	slice_group_change_direction	refined macroblock allocation map type
4	0	Box-out clockwise
4	1	Box-out counter-clockwise
5	0	Raster scan
5	1	Reverse raster scan
6	0	Wipe right
6	1	Wipe left

slice_group_change_rate_minus1 is the minimum non-zero number of macroblocks by which the size a slice group can change from one picture to the next. The **SLICE_GROUP_CHANGE_RATE** variable is defined as follows:

$$\text{SLICE_GROUP_CHANGE_RATE} = \text{slice_group_change_rate_minus1} + 1 \quad (7-6)$$

The decoded value of `slice_group_change_rate_minus1` shall be in the range of 0 to `MAX_MB_ADDRESS - 1`, inclusive.

`num_ref_idx_l0_active_minus1` specifies the number of reference pictures minus 1 in the reference list 0 that are used to decode the picture.

`num_ref_idx_l1_active_minus1` specifies the number of reference pictures minus 1 in the reference list 1 that are used to decode the picture.

`weighted_pred_flag` equal to zero indicates that weighted prediction is not applied to P and SP slices. `weighted_pred_flag` equal to one indicates that weighted prediction is applied to P and SP slices.

`weighted_bipred_explicit_flag` equal to zero indicates that explicit weighted prediction is not applied to B slices. `weighted_bipred_explicit_flag` equal to one indicates that explicit weighted prediction is applied to B slices. `weighted_bipred_explicit_flag` shall be zero if `weighted_bipred_implicit_flag` is one.

`weighted_bipred_implicit_flag` equal to zero indicates that implicit weighted prediction is not applied to B slices. `weighted_bipred_implicit_flag` equal to one indicates that implicit weighted prediction is applied to B slices. `weighted_bipred_implicit_flag` shall be zero if `weighted_bipred_explicit_flag` is one.

`slice_qp_minus26` specifies the value of the default QP_Y for the macroblocks in an I, SI, P, SP, or B slice as specified in Equation 7-7. The value of this syntax element shall be in the range of -26 to +25, inclusive.

`slice_qp_s_minus26` specifies the value of the default QS_Y for the macroblocks in a SP or SI slice as specified in Equation 7-8. The value of this syntax element shall be in the range of -26 to +25, inclusive.

`redundant_slice_flag` indicates the presence of the `redundant_pic_cnt` parameter in all slice headers referencing the picture parameter set.

`vui_pic_parameters_flag` equal to zero specifies that default parameter values for the vui picture parameters shall be applied.

7.4.2.3 Supplemental enhancement information RBSP semantics

Supplemental Enhancement Information (SEI) contains information that is not necessary to decode VCL data correctly but is helpful for decoding or presentation purposes.

7.4.2.3.1 Supplemental enhancement information message semantics

An SEI NAL unit contains one or more SEI messages. Each SEI message consists of SEI header and SEI payload. The type and size of the SEI payload are coded using an extensible syntax. The SEI payload size is indicated in bytes. SEI payload types are specified in Annex C.

The SEI payload may have a SEI payload header. For example, a payload header may indicate to which picture the particular data belongs. The payload header shall be defined for each payload type separately.

An SEI message is associated with the next slice or data partition RBSP in decoding order.

`byte_ff` is a byte equal to 0xFF identifying a need for a longer representation of the syntax structure it is used within.

`last_payload_type_byte` identifies the payload type of the last entry in an SEI message.

`last_payload_size_byte` identifies the size of the last entry in an SEI message.

7.4.2.4 Picture delimiter RBSP semantics

The picture delimiter may be used to signal the boundary between pictures, i.e., if present, it shall be inserted before the first NAL unit of a picture in decoding order. There is no normative decoder process associated with the picture delimiter.

`pic_type` signals which slice coding types are used in the following picture in decoding order. Table 7-3 shows the slice coding types that can occur in a picture with a given `pic_type`.

Table 7-3— Meaning of `pic_type`

<code>pic_type</code>	Allowed <code>slice_type_idc</code>
000	Intra

001	Intra, Pred
010	Intra, Pred, BiPred
011	SIIntra
100	SIIntra, SPred
101	Intra, SIIntra
110	Intra, SIIntra, Pred, SPred
111	Intra, SIIntra, Pred, SPred, BiPred

If `adaptive_block_size_transform_flag` == 1, `pic_type` == '000', `pic_type` == '001', and `pic_type` == '010' are allowed.

`non_stored_content_flag` equal to 1 indicates that the picture is not stored in the reference picture buffer.

7.4.2.5 Filler data RBSP semantics

The filler data RBSP contains bytes whose value shall be equal to 0xFF.

7.4.2.6 Slice layer RBSP semantics

The slice layer RBSP consists of a slice header and slice data.

7.4.2.7 Data partition RBSP semantics

7.4.2.7.1 Data partition A RBSP semantics

When data partitioning is in use, the coded data for a single slice is divided into three separate partitions. Partition A contains all symbols of Category 4.

NOTE - Category 4 consists of the header symbols of all coded MBs.

slice_id Each slice of a picture is associated a unique slice identifier within the picture. The first coded slice of the picture shall have identifier 0 and the identifier shall be incremented by one per each coded slice.

7.4.2.7.2 Data partition B RBSP semantics

When data partitioning is in use, the coded data for a single slice is divided into three separate partitions. Data partition B contains all symbols of Category 5.

NOTE - Category 5 consists of the intra coded block patterns and coefficients.

slice_id Each slice of a picture is associated a unique slice identifier within the picture. The first coded slice of the picture shall have identifier 0 and the identifier shall be incremented by one per each coded slice.

7.4.2.7.3 Data partition C RBSP semantics

When data partitioning is in use, the coded data for a single slice is divided into three separate partitions. Data partition C contains all symbols of Category 6.

NOTE - Category 6 consists of the inter coded block patterns and coefficients.

slice_id Each slice of a picture is associated a unique slice identifier within the picture. The first coded slice of the picture shall have identifier 0 and the identifier shall be incremented by one per each coded slice.

7.3.2.8 RBSP trailing bits semantics

rbsp_stop_bit is a single bit having the value one ('1').

rbsp_alignment_bit is a single bit having the value zero ('0').

7.3.2.9 RBSP slice trailing bits semantics

rbsp_stop_bit has the same semantics as in subclause 7.3.2.8.

rbsp_alignment_bit has the same semantics as in subclause 7.3.2.8.

cabac_stuffing_bit is a single bit having the value one ('1'). When `entropy_coding_mode` is equal to 1, the number of bins resulting from decoding the contents of the slice layer NAL unit shall not exceed $0.5 \times \text{NumBytesInNALunit}$. A number of inserted `cabac_stuffing_bit` guarantee this condition.

NOTE – The method for determining the number of inserted `cabac_stuffing_bit` at the encoder is as follows: First, at the beginning of the slice encoding, the index `CodeLength` pointing to the current position of the bit stream is stored in a variable `CodeLengthStored`, i.e., $\text{CodeLength} \leftarrow \text{CodeLengthStored}$. In addition, two counters `EBins` and `EBinsx8` are set to zero. Then, each time a symbol is encoded, `EBins` is incremented by one, i.e., $\text{EBins} \leftarrow \text{EBins} + 1$. In the renormalization-procedure, each time

a new byte of compressed data is written, the following procedure is done:

```
while( EBins > 7 ) {
    EBins ← EBins-8
    EBinsx8 ← EBinsx8+1
}
```

After terminating the arithmetic encoding process such that the last pending bits have been written to the bitstream, the number of written bits is determined by $\text{CodeLength} \leftarrow 8 * (\text{CodeLength} - \text{CodeLengthStored})$. Given the number of encoded bins by $\text{EBins} \leftarrow 8 * \text{EBinsx8} + \text{EBins}$ and the number NumMbSlice of macroblocks per slice, the following procedure is done:

```
EBins ← 2 * EBins
if (CodeLength >= 4 * NumMbSlice)
{
    if (EBins > CodeLength)
        for(i = 0; i < EBins - CodeLength - 1; i++)
            putbits('1') /* writes cabac_stuffing_bit */
}
```

7.4.3 Slice header semantics

pic_parameter_set_id indicates the picture parameter set in use.

frame_num labels the frame. **frame_num** shall be incremented by 1 for each coded picture in decoding order, in modulo MAX_FN operation, relative to the **frame_num** of the previous stored frame in decoding order. The **frame_num** serves as a unique ID for each frame stored in the reference picture buffer. Therefore, a frame cannot be kept in the buffer after its **frame_num** has been used by another frame unless it has been assigned a long-term frame index as specified below. No **frame_num** of a frame to be added to the reference picture buffer shall equal to any other among the short-term frames in the reference picture buffer. A decoder which encounters a frame number on a current frame having a value equal to the frame number of some other short-term stored frame in the reference picture buffer should treat this condition as an error.

pic_structure identifies the picture structure according to Table 7-4.

Table 7-4 – Meaning of **pic_structure**

Value of pic_structure	Meaning
0	Progressive frame picture
1	Top field picture
2	Bottom field picture
3	Interlaced frame picture, whose top field precedes its bottom field in time.
4	Interlaced frame picture, whose bottom field precedes its top field in time.

Note that when top field and bottom field pictures are coded for a frame, the one that is decoded first is the one that occurs first in time.

first_mb_in_slice specifies the macroblock address of the first macroblock contained in this slice. The size of the **first_mb_in_slice** parameter is NUM_BITS_IN_MB_ADDRESS. The value of **first_mb_in_slice** shall be in the range of 0 to MAX_MB_ADDRESS, inclusive.

If macroblock-adaptive frame/field decoding is in use, **first_mb_in_slice** contains a macroblock pair address rather than a macroblock address and the number of macroblocks included in a slice shall be an even number.

slice_type_idc indicates the coding type of the slice according to Table 7-5.

Table 7-5 – Meaning of **slice_type_idc**

Value of slice_type_idc	Prediction type of slice (slice type)
0	Pred (P slice)
1	BiPred (B slice)
2	Intra (I slice)
3	SPred (SP slice)
4	SIIntra (SI slice)

Table 7-6 specifies, which macroblock prediction types are allowed when a slice type is decoded.

Table 7-6 – All web macroblock prediction types for slice_type_idc

Prediction type of slice (slice type)	Allowed macroblock prediction type
Pred (P slice)	Intra, Pred
BiPred (B slice)	Intra, Pred, BiPred
Intra (I slice)	Intra
SPred (SP slice)	SPred, Intra
SIIntra (SI slice)	SIIntra, Intra

If adaptive_block_size_transform_flag == 1, the use of SI slices and SP slices is not allowed.

pic_order_cnt carries the picture order count coded in modulo MAX_PICTURE_ORDER_CNT arithmetic. An IDR picture shall have pic_order_cnt equal to 0. The size of the pic_order_cnt parameter is log2_max_pic_order_cnt_minus4 + 4 bits.

delta_pic_order_cnt signals the picture order count difference compared to the offset picture order count as described in subclause 8.3.2.

redundant_pic_cnt is 0 for coded slices and data partitions belonging to the primary representation of the picture contents. The redundant_pic_cnt is greater than 0 for coded slices and data partitions that contain redundant coded representation of the picture contents. There should be no noticeable difference between the co-located areas of the decoded primary representation of the picture and any decoded redundant slices. Decoded slices having the same redundant_pic_cnt shall not overlap. Decoded slices having a redundant_pic_cnt greater than 0 may not cover the entire picture area.

direct_spatial_mv_pred_flag specifies the method used in the decoding process to determine the prediction values direct prediction. If direct_spatial_mv_pred_flag is set to 0, then direct mode motion parameters are calculated from the picture order count as described in subclause 10.3.3.2. Otherwise, if this flag is set to 1, then direct mode motion parameters are calculated using the spatial motion vector prediction technique as described in subclause 10.3.3.1.

num_ref_idx_active_override_flag equal to zero indicates that the num_ref_idx_l0_active_minus1 and num_ref_idx_l1_active_minus1 specified in the referred picture parameter set are in effect. num_ref_idx_active_override_flag equal to one indicates that the num_ref_idx_l0_active_minus1 and num_ref_idx_l1_active_minus1 specified in the referred picture parameter set are overridden by the following values in the slice header.

num_ref_idx_l0_active_minus1 specifies the number of reference pictures minus 1 in the reference picture list 0 that are used to decode the picture.

num_ref_idx_l1_active_minus1 specifies the number of reference pictures minus 1 in the reference picture list 1 that are used to decode the picture.

slice_qp_delta specifies the value of the QP_Y for the MBs in the slice unless modified by the value of delta_qp in the macroblock layer. From this value, the initial QP_Y parameter for the slice is computed as:

$$QP_Y = 26 + \text{slice_qp_minus26} + \text{slice_qp_delta} \quad (7-7)$$

The initial decoded QP_Y parameter shall be in the range of 0 to 51, inclusive. The value of QP_Y is initialised to the above result and this value is used for the decoding of each macroblock in the slice unless updated by a delta_qp sent in the macroblock layer.

sp_for_switch_flag indicates the decoding process to be used to decode the SP slice.

slice_qp_s_delta is signalled for SP and SI slices. The QS_Y parameter for the slice is computed as:

$$QS_Y = 26 + \text{slice_qp_s_minus26} + \text{slice_qp_s_delta} \quad (7-8)$$

The value of QS_Y shall be in the range of 0 to 51, inclusive. This value of QS_Y is used for the decoding of all macroblocks in the slice.

disable_deblocking_filter_flag equal to zero specifies that the deblocking filter shall be applied to the edges controlled by the macroblocks within the current slice. If **disable_deblocking_filter_flag** is 1, **Filter_Offset_A** and **Filter_Offset_B** shall both be inferred to be equal to -51. If not present in the slice header the value of this field shall be inferred to be zero.

slice_alpha_c0_offset_div2 specifies the offset used in accessing the ALPHA and C0 deblocking filter tables for filtering operations controlled by the macroblocks within the slice. The decoded value of this parameter shall be in the range from -6 to +6, inclusive. From this value, the offset that shall be applied when addressing these tables is computed as:

$$\text{Filter_Offset_A} = \text{slice_alpha_c0_offset_div2} \ll 1$$

If not present in the slice header the value of this field shall be inferred to be zero unless **disable_deblocking_filter_flag** is 1.

slice_beta_offset_div2 specifies the offset used in accessing the BETA deblocking filter table for filtering operations controlled by the macroblocks within the slice. The decoded value of this parameter shall be in the range from -6 to +6, inclusive. From this value, the offset that is applied when addressing the BETA table of the deblocking filter is computed as:

$$\text{Filter_Offset_B} = \text{slice_beta_offset_div2} \ll 1$$

If not present in the slice header the value of this field shall be inferred to be zero unless **disable_deblocking_filter_flag** is 1.

slice_group_change_cycle \times **SLICE_GROUP_CHANGE_RATE** indicates the number of macroblocks in slice group 0. The size of the **slice_group_change_cycle** field is $\text{Ceil}(\text{Log2}(\text{Ceil}(\text{MAX_MB_LOCATION} + \text{SLICE_GROUP_CHANGE_RATE})))$. The maximum value of **slice_group_change_cycle** is $\text{Ceil}(\text{MAX_MB_LOCATION} + \text{SLICE_GROUP_CHANGE_RATE})$.

7.4.3.1 Reference index reordering semantics

The syntax elements **remapping_of_pic_nums_idc**, **abs_diff_pic_num_minus1**, and **long_term_pic_idx** specify the change from the default reference index lists to the reference index lists used for decoding the slice.

ref_idx_reordering_flag_10 indicates whether the syntax elements **remapping_of_pic_nums_idc**, **abs_diff_pic_num_minus1**, and **long_term_pic_idx** are present for specifying the reference index list 0.

ref_idx_reordering_flag_11 has the same semantics as **ref_idx_reordering_flag_10** except that the reordering of the reference index list 1 is specified instead of the reference index list 0.

remapping_of_pic_nums_idc together with **abs_diff_pic_num_minus1** and **long_term_pic_idx** indicates which of the reference pictures are re-mapped. The restrictions and the mapping to the code number are specified in Table 7-7. The number of signalling **remapping_of_pic_nums_idc** is limited to the **num_ref_idx_10_active_minus1** + 1.

Table 7-7 – **remapping_of_pic_nums_idc** operations for re-mapping of reference pictures

Value of remapping_of_pic_nums_idc	Re-mapping Specified
0	abs_diff_pic_num_minus1 is present and corresponds to a negative difference to add to a picture number prediction value
1	abs_diff_pic_num_minus1 is present and corresponds to a positive difference to add to a picture number prediction value
2	long_term_pic_idx is present and specifies the long-term index for a reference picture
3	End loop for re-mapping of reference picture set relative indexing default order

abs_diff_pic_num_minus1 plus 1 indicates the absolute difference between the picture number of the picture being remapped and the picture number prediction value.

long_term_pic_idx indicates the long-term picture index of the picture being remapped. In the case of frame-structured pictures, it shall be less than **max_long_term_pic_idx_plus1**; while in the case of field-structured pictures, it shall be less than $2 \times \text{max_long_term_pic_idx_plus1}$.

7.4.3.2 Reference picture buffer management semantics

The syntax elements **ref_pic_buffering_mode**, **memory_management_control_operation**, **difference_of_pic_nums_minus1**, **long_term_pic_idx**, and **max_long_term_pic_idx_plus1** specify the buffering of a stored decoded picture into the reference picture buffer. Further, the reference picture buffer can be modified by marking pictures as unused, by assigning long-term pictures indices and by resetting of the reference picture buffer. The syntax elements **ref_pic_buffering_mode**, **memory_management_control_operation**, **difference_of_pic_nums_minus1**, **long_term_pic_idx**, and **max_long_term_pic_idx_plus1** shall be identical for all coded slices of a coded picture.

ref_pic_buffering_mode specifies the buffering mode of the currently decoded picture and specifies how the reference picture buffer is modified after the current picture is decoded. The values for **ref_pic_buffering_mode** are specified in Table 7-8.

Table 7-8 – Interpretation of **ref_pic_buffering_mode**

Value of ref_pic_buffering_mode	Reference picture buffering mode specified
0	Sliding window buffering mode: A simple buffering mode providing a first-in first-out mechanism for pictures that are not assigned a long-term index
1	Adaptive buffering mode: A more flexible buffering mode than sliding window buffering mode providing syntax elements to specify marking pictures as unused, to assign long-term pictures indices, and to reset the reference picture buffer.

memory_management_control_operation specifies a control operation to be applied to manage the reference picture buffer. The **memory_management_control_operation** parameter is followed by data necessary for the operation specified by the value of **memory_management_control_operation**. **memory_management_control_operation** commands do not affect the buffer contents or the decoding process for the decoding of the current frame. They specify the necessary buffer status for the decoding of subsequent coded pictures. The values and control operations associated with **memory_management_control_operation** are defined in Table 7-9.

If **memory_management_control_operation** is Reset, all frames and fields in the reference picture buffer (but not the current picture unless specified separately) shall be marked “unused” (including both short-term and long-term pictures). Moreover, the maximum long-term picture index shall be reset to zero.

The frame height and width shall not change within the bitstream except within a picture containing a Reset **memory_management_control_operation** command.

A “stored picture” shall not contain any **memory_management_control_operation** command which marks that (entire) picture as “unused”. If the current picture is non-stored picture, the value of the **memory_management_control_operation** shall not contain any of the following types of **memory_management_control_operation** commands:

- A Reset **memory_management_control_operation** command,
- Any **memory_management_control_operation** command which marks any other picture (other than the current picture) as “unused” that has not also been marked as “unused” in the RPS layer of a prior stored picture, or
- Any **memory_management_control_operation** command which assigns a long-term index to a picture that has not also been assigned the same long-term index in the RPS layer of a prior stored picture.

Table 7-9 – Memory management control operation (**memory_management_control_operation**) values

Value of memory_management_control_operation	Memory Management Control Operation	Associated Data Fields Following
0	End memory_management_control_operation Loop	None (end of RPS layer)

1	Mark a short-term picture as "Unused"	difference_of_pic_nums_minus1
2	Mark a long-term prame as "Unused"	long_term_pic_idx
3	Assign a long-term index to a picture	difference_of_pic_nums and long_term_pic_idx
4	Specify the maximum long-term picture index	max_long_term_pic_idx_plus1
5	Reset	None

difference_of_pic_nums_minus1 is used to assign a long-term index to a picture or to mark a short-term picture as "unused".

long_term_pic_idx is used to assign a long-term index to a picture or to mark a long-term picture as "unused".

max_long_term_pic_idx_plus1 indicates the maximum index allowed for long-term reference frames (until receipt of another value of **max_long_term_pic_idx_plus1**). The decoder shall initially infer that **max_long_term_pic_idx_plus1** is 0 until some other value has been received.

7.4.3.3 Prediction weight table semantics

luma_log_weight_denom is the binary logarithm of the denominator for all luma weighting factors.

chroma_log_weight_denom is the binary logarithm of the denominator for all chroma weighting factors.

luma_weight_flag_10 indicates whether weighting factors are present for the luma component of the list 0 prediction.

luma_weight_10[i] is the weighting factor applied to the luma prediction value for reference index *i* in list 0 prediction.

luma_offset_10[i] is the additive offset applied to the luma prediction value for reference index *i* in list 0 prediction.

If **luma_weight_flag_10** is equal to zero, **luma_weight_10[i]** shall be interpreted as equal to $2^{\text{luma_log_weight_denom}}$ and **luma_offset_10[i]** shall be interpreted as equal to zero.

chroma_weight_flag_10 indicates whether weighting factors are present for the Cb and Cr components of the list 0 prediction.

chroma_weight_10[i][0] is the weighting factor applied to the Cb prediction values for reference index *i* in list 0 prediction.

chroma_offset_10[i][0] is the additive offset applied to the Cb prediction values for reference index *i* in list 0 prediction.

chroma_weight_10[i][1] is the weighting factor applied to the Cr prediction values for reference index *i* in list 0 prediction.

chroma_offset_10[i][1] is the additive offset applied to the Cr prediction values for reference index *i* in list 0 prediction.

If **chroma_weight_flag_10** is equal to zero, **chroma_weight_10[i]** shall be interpreted as equal to $2^{\text{chroma_log_weight_denom}}$ and **chroma_offset_10[i]** shall be interpreted as equal to zero.

luma_weight_flag_11 indicates whether weighting factors are present for the luma component of the list 1 prediction.

luma_weight_11[i] is the weighting factor applied to the luma prediction values for reference index *i* in list 1 prediction.

luma_offset_11[i] is the additive offset applied to the luma prediction value for reference index *i* in list 1 prediction.

If **luma_weight_flag_11** is equal to zero, **luma_weight_11[i]** shall be interpreted as equal to $2^{\text{luma_log_weight_denom}}$ and **luma_offset_11[i]** shall be interpreted as equal to zero.

chroma_weight_flag_11 indicates whether weighting factors are present for the chroma component of the list 1 prediction.

chroma_weight_11[i][0] is the weighting factor applied to the Cb prediction values for reference index *i* in list 1 prediction.

chroma_offset_11[i][0] is the additive offset applied to the Cb prediction values for reference index *i* in list 1 prediction.

chroma_weight_11[i][1] is the weighting factor applied to the Cr prediction values for reference index i in list 1 prediction.

chroma_offset_11[i][1] is the additive offset applied to the Cr prediction values for reference index i in list 1 prediction.

If **chroma_weight_flag_11** is equal to zero, **chroma_weight_11**[i][j] shall be interpreted as equal to $2^{\text{chroma_log_weight_denom}}$ and **chroma_offset_11**[i][j] shall be interpreted as equal to zero.

num_custom_bipred_weights is the number of custom weight and offset combinations sent for bi-predictive weighting.

irp_10 is the index of the reference picture in list 0 for which a custom weight and offset combination is indicated for custom bi-predictive weighting.

irp_11 is the index of the reference picture in list 1 for which a custom weight and offset combination is indicated for custom bi-predictive weighting.

luma_weight_bipred_10[irp_10][irp_11] is the weighting factor applied to the luma prediction value for reference index irp_10 in list 0 when used with reference index irp_11 in list 1 for bi-prediction.

luma_weight_bipred_11[irp_10][irp_11] is the weighting factor applied to the luma prediction value for reference index irp_11 in list 1 when used with reference index irp_10 in list 0 for bi-prediction.

luma_offset_bipred[irp_10][irp_11] is the additive offset applied to the luma prediction values when reference index irp_10 in list 0 is used with reference index irp_11 in list 1 for bi-prediction.

chroma_weight_flag_bipred[irp_10][irp_11] indicates whether custom weight and offset combinations are sent for Cb and Cr prediction when reference index irp_10 in list 0 is used with reference index irp_11 in list 1 for bi-prediction.

chroma_weight_bipred_10[irp_10][irp_11][0] is the weighting factor applied to the Cb prediction value for reference index irp_10 in list 0 when used with reference index irp_11 in list 1 for bi-prediction.

chroma_weight_bipred_11[irp_10][irp_11][0] is the weighting factor applied to the Cb prediction value for reference index irp_11 in list 1 when used with reference index irp_10 in list 0 for bi-prediction.

chroma_offset_bipred[irp_10][irp_11][0] is the additive offset applied to the Cb prediction values when reference index irp_10 in list 0 is used with reference index irp_11 in list 1 for bi-prediction.

chroma_weight_bipred_10[irp_10][irp_11][1] is the weighting factor applied to the Cr prediction value for reference index irp_10 in list 0 when used with reference index irp_11 in list 1 for bi-prediction.

chroma_weight_bipred_11[irp_10][irp_11][1] is the weighting factor applied to the Cr prediction value for reference index irp_11 in list 1 when used with reference index irp_10 in list 0 for bi-prediction.

chroma_offset_bipred[irp_10][irp_11][1] is the additive offset applied to the Cr prediction values when reference index irp_10 in list 0 is used with reference index irp_11 in list 1 for bi-prediction.

If **chroma_weight_flag_bipred**[irp_10][irp_11] is zero, **chroma_weight_bipred_10**[irp_10][irp_11][j] and **chroma_weight_bipred**[irp_10][irp_11][j] shall be interpreted as equal to $2^{\text{chroma_log_weight_denom}}$ and **chroma_offset_bipred**[irp_10][irp_11][j] shall be interpreted as equal to zero.

For any combination of irp_10 and irp_11 that is not sent, the following values shall be inferred:

- **luma_weight_bipred_10**[irp_10][irp_11] = **luma_weight_10**[irp_10],
- **luma_weight_bipred_11**[irp_10][irp_11] = **luma_weight_11**[irp_11],
- **luma_offset_bipred**[irp_10][irp_11] =
 $(\text{luma_offset_10}[\text{irp_10}] + \text{luma_offset_11}[\text{irp_11}] + 1) \gg 1$
- **chroma_weight_bipred_10**[irp_10][irp_11][j] = **chroma_weight_10**[irp_10][j],
- **chroma_weight_bipred_11**[irp_10][irp_11][j] = **chroma_weight_11**[irp_11][j],
- **chroma_offset_bipred**[irp_10][irp_11][j] =
 $(\text{chroma_offset_10}[\text{irp_10}][j] + \text{chroma_offset_11}[\text{irp_11}][j] + 1) \gg 1$

7.4.4 Slice data semantics

mb_skip_run indicates a number of consecutive macroblocks decoded as MbSkip macroblock type in P slices or Direct_16x16 macroblock type and no additional transform coefficients in B slices when **entropy_coding_mode** == 0.

For **mb_frame_field_adaptive_flag** == 1, refer to the MB scanning order in Figure 6-4 (subclause 6.3).

mb_skip_flag indicates that the macroblock is decoded as MbSkip macroblock type in P slices or Direct_16x16 macroblock type and no additional transform coefficients in B slices when **entropy_coding_mode** == 1.

For the MbSkip macroblock type no further information about the macroblock is decoded. The motion vector for a MbSkip macroblock type shall be obtained as described in subclause 8.3.1.3. If **pic_structure** indicates a frame, then the decoded frame with **ref_idx_l0** == 0, which either was decoded from a frame picture or is the union of two decoded field pictures shall be used as reference in motion compensation. If **pic_structure** indicates a field, then the decoded field of the same parity (top or bottom) with **ref_idx_l0** == 0, which was either decoded from a field picture or is part of the most recently decoded frame picture shall be used as reference in motion compensation. For **mb_frame_field_adaptive_flag** == 1, a pair of macroblocks will be in frame mode only. If one of a pair of macroblocks is skipped, it should be in the same frame/field coding mode as another macroblock of the same pair. In field coding, the skipped macroblock is decoded by copying the co-located macroblock from the most recently decoded I or P field of the same field parity.

mb_field_decoding_flag equal to zero indicates that the macroblock pair is decoded in frame decoding mode and equal to one indicates that the macroblock pair is decoded in field decoding mode.

end_of_slice_flag equal to 0 indicates that another macroblock is following, whereas equal to 1 indicates the end of the slice and that no further macroblock follows. **end_of_slice_flag** is only present if **entropy_coding_mode** == 1 for each macroblock except for the last macroblock of the picture.

If the current picture is a frame-structured picture and **mb_adaptive_frame_field_flag** is 1, the number of coded macroblocks in the slice shall be an even number.

7.4.5 Macroblock layer semantics

mb_type indicates the macroblock types. The semantics of **mb_type** depend on the slice type. In the following, for I slices, SI slices, P slices, SP slices, and B slices, tables and semantics are specified for the various macroblock types.

The macroblock types for I slices are specified in Table 7-10. If **adaptive_block_size_transform_flag** == 1, the macroblock types for I slices are specified in Table 12-1.

Table 7-10 – Macroblock types for I slices

Value of mb_type	Name of mb_type in I slices	mb_partition_pred_mode (, 1)	num_sub_blocks ()	num_mb_intra_partition ()
0	Intra_4x4	Intra	4	16
1	Intra_16x16_0_0_0	Intra	4	na
2	Intra_16x16_1_0_0	Intra	4	na
3	Intra_16x16_2_0_0	Intra	4	na
4	Intra_16x16_3_0_0	Intra	4	na
5	Intra_16x16_0_1_0	Intra	4	na
6	Intra_16x16_1_1_0	Intra	4	na
7	Intra_16x16_2_1_0	Intra	4	na
8	Intra_16x16_3_1_0	Intra	4	na
9	Intra_16x16_0_2_0	Intra	4	na
10	Intra_16x16_1_2_0	Intra	4	na
11	Intra_16x16_2_2_0	Intra	4	na
12	Intra_16x16_3_2_0	Intra	4	na
13	Intra_16x16_0_0_1	Intra	4	na
14	Intra_16x16_1_0_1	Intra	4	na
15	Intra_16x16_2_0_1	Intra	4	na
16	Intra_16x16_3_0_1	Intra	4	na

17	Intra_16x16_0_1_1	Intra	4	na
18	Intra_16x16_1_1_1	Intra	4	na
19	Intra_16x16_2_1_1	Intra	4	na
20	Intra_16x16_3_1_1	Intra	4	na
21	Intra_16x16_0_2_1	Intra	4	na
22	Intra_16x16_1_2_1	Intra	4	na
23	Intra_16x16_2_2_1	Intra	4	na
24	Intra_16x16_3_2_1	Intra	4	na

The following semantics are assigned to the macroblock types in Table 7-10:

- Intra_4x4: the macroblock is coded as Intra prediction type.
- Intra_16x16_x_y_z: x: Imode, y: nc, z: AC these modes refer to 16x16 Intra prediction type. Imode numbers from 6 and upwards represent 16x16 intra coding.

The macroblock types for SI slices are specified in Table 7-11 and Table 7-10. The mb_type value 0 is specified in Table 7-11 and the mb_type values 1 to 25 are specified in Table 7-10 by adding 1 to the value of mb_type in Table 7-10.

NOTE - If adaptive_block_size_transform_flag == 1, the use of SI slices is not allowed.

Table 7-11 – Macroblock type with value 0 for SI slices

Value of mb_type	Name of mb_type SI slices	mb_partition_pred_mode(, 1)	num_sub_blocks()
0	SIIntra_4x4	SIIntra	4

The following semantics are assigned to the macroblock types in Table 7-11:

- SIIntra_4x4: the macroblock is coded as SIIntra prediction type.

The macroblock types for P slices are specified in Table 7-12 and Table 7-10. The mb_type values 0 to 4 are specified in Table 7-12 and the mb_type values 5 to 28 are specified in Table 7-10 by adding 5 to the value of mb_type in Table 7-10.

The macroblock types for SP slices are specified in Table 7-12, Table 7-11, and Table 7-10. The mb_type values 0 to 4 are specified in Table 7-12, the mb_type value 5 is specified in Table 7-11 by adding 5 to the value of mb_type in Table 7-11, and the mb_type values 6 to 29 are specified in Table 7-10 by adding 6 to the value of mb_type in Table 7-10.

NOTE - If adaptive_block_size_transform_flag == 1, the use of SP slices is not allowed.

Table 7-12 – Macroblock type values 0 to 4 for P and SP slices

Value of mb_type	Name of mb_type	num_mb_partition ()	mb_partition_pred_mode(, 1)	mb_partition_pred_mode(, 2)	num_sub_blocks()
0	Pred_L0_16x16	1	Pred_L0		4
1	Pred_L0_L0_16x8	2	Pred_L0	Pred_L0	4
2	Pred_L0_L0_8x16	2	Pred_L0	Pred_L0	4
3	Pred_8x8	4	Na	na	4
4	Pred_8x8rcf0	4	Na	na	na
					na

The following semantics are assigned to the macroblock types in Table 7-12:

- **Pred_L0_16x16, Pred_L0_L0_16x8, Pred_L0_L0_8x16, and Pred_8x8:** the macroblock is predicted from a past picture with luma block sizes 16x16, 16x8, 8x16, and 8x8, respectively, and the associated chroma blocks. For the macroblock types NxM=16x16, 16x8, and 8x16, a motion vector is provided for each NxM luma block and the associated chroma blocks. If N=M=8, for each 8x8 sub macroblock an additional syntax element is decoded which indicates in which type the corresponding sub macroblock is decoded (see subclause 7.4.5.2). Depending on N,M and the sub macroblock types modes there may be 1 to 16 sets of motion data elements for a macroblock.
- **Pred_8x8ref0:** same as Pred_8x8 but ref_idx_10 is not sent and set to 0 for all sub macroblocks.

The macroblock types for B slices are specified in Table 7-13 and Table 7-10. The mb_type values 0 to 22 are specified in Table 7-13 and the mb_type values 23 to 57 are specified in Table 7-10 by adding 23 to the value of mb_type in Table 7-10.

Table 7-13 – Macroblock type values 0 to 22 for B slices

Value of mb_type	Macroblock type mb_type name	num_mb_partition()	mb_partition_pred_mode(, 1)	mb_partition_pred_mode(, 2)	num_sub_blocks()
0	Direct_16x16	1	Direct		4
1	Pred_L0_16x16	1	Pred_L0		4
2	BiPred_L1_16x16	1	Pred_L1		4
3	BiPred_Bi_16x16	1	BiPred		4
4	Pred_L0_L0_16x8	2	Pred_L0	Pred_L0	4
5	Pred_L0_L0_8x16	2	Pred_L0	Pred_L0	4
6	BiPred_L1_L1_16x8	2	Pred_L1	Pred_L1	4
7	BiPred_L1_L1_8x16	2	Pred_L1	Pred_L1	4
8	BiPred_L0_L1_16x8	2	Pred_L0	Pred_L1	4
9	BiPred_L0_L1_8x16	2	Pred_L0	Pred_L1	4
10	BiPred_L1_L0_16x8	2	Pred_L1	Pred_L0	4
11	BiPred_L1_L0_8x16	2	Pred_L1	Pred_L0	4
12	BiPred_L0_Bi_16x8	2	Pred_L0	BiPred	4
13	BiPred_L0_Bi_8x16	2	Pred_L0	BiPred	4
14	BiPred_L1_Bi_16x8	2	Pred_L1	BiPred	4
15	BiPred_L1_Bi_8x16	2	Pred_L1	BiPred	4
16	BiPred_Bi_L0_16x8	2	BiPred	Pred_L0	4
17	BiPred_Bi_L0_8x16	2	BiPred	Pred_L0	4
18	BiPred_Bi_L1_16x8	2	BiPred	Pred_L1	4
19	BiPred_Bi_L1_8x16	2	BiPred	Pred_L1	4
20	BiPred_Bi_Bi_16x8	2	BiPred	BiPred	4
21	BiPred_Bi_Bi_8x16	2	BiPred	BiPred	4
22	BiPred_8x8	4	na		na

The following semantics are assigned to the macroblock types in Table 7-13:

- **Direct_16x16 type:** no motion vector data is transmitted.

- **BiPred_x_y_NxM**, $x,y=L0,L1,Bi$: each NxM block of a macroblock is predicted by using distinct motion vectors, reference pictures, and prediction directions. As indicated in Table 11-11, three different macroblock types that differ in their prediction methods exist for the 16x16 mode. For the 16x8 and 8x16 macroblock types, nine different combinations of the prediction methods are possible. If a macroblock is coded in 8x8 mode, an additional codeword for each 8x8 sub-partition indicates the decomposition of the 8x8 block as well as the chosen prediction direction (see Table 11-2).
- **BiPred_8x8**: the macroblock is partitioned into sub macroblocks. The coding of each sub macroblock is specified using **sub_mb_type**.

coded_block_pattern contains information which of the 8x8 blocks - luma and chroma - contain transform coefficients. An 8x8 block contains four 4x4 blocks. An indication that an 8x8 block contains coefficients means that one or more of the four 4x4 blocks within the 8x8 block contains coefficients. The four least significant bits of **coded_block_pattern** contain information on which of four 8x8 luma blocks in the macroblock contains nonzero coefficients. These four bits are denoted as **coded_block_patternY**. The ordering of 8x8 blocks is indicated in Figure 6-5. A bit equal to zero in position n of **coded_block_pattern** (binary representation) indicates that the corresponding 8x8 block has no coefficients and a bit equal to 1 indicates that the 8x8 block has one or more non-zero coefficients. For chroma, 3 possibilities are specified in Table 7-14.

Table 7-14 – Specification of nc values

Value of nc	Description
0	All chroma coefficients are 0.
1	One or more chroma DC coefficients are non-zero. All chroma AC coefficients are 0.
2	Zero or more chroma DC coefficients are non-zero. One or more chroma AC coefficients are non-zero.

The value of **coded_block_pattern** for a macroblock is given by $\text{coded_block_pattern} = \text{coded_block_patternY} + 16 \times nc$

The **coded_block_pattern** is indicated with a different codeword for macroblocks in P, SP, and B slices compared to macroblocks in I and SI slices.

If **adaptive_block_size_transform_flag** == 1, the semantics for **coded_block_pattern** are specified in subclause 12.3.

delta_qp the value of QP_Y can be changed in the macroblock layer by the parameter **delta_qp**. The **delta_qp** parameter is present only for non-skipped macroblocks, as defined by:

- If **coded_block_pattern** indicates that there are nonzero transform coefficients in the macroblock or
- If the macroblock is 16x16 based intra coded

Furthermore, when macroblock-level adaptive frame/field coding is in use, **delta_qp** is present only for the first non-skipped macroblock of each macroblock pair.

The decoded value of **delta_qp** shall be in the range from -26 to +25, inclusive. This specifies the value of QP_Y in the range [0..51], as given by

$$QP_Y = (QP_Y + \text{delta_qp} + 52) \% 52 \quad (7-9)$$

7.4.5.1 Macroblock prediction semantics

All samples of the macroblock are predicted. The prediction mode is signalled using the **mb_type** syntax element. Depending on the **mb_type** syntax element, intra prediction information is signalled using **intra_pred_mode** or inter prediction information is signalled using the syntax elements **ref_idx_l0**, **ref_idx_l1**, **mvd_l0**, and **mvd_l1**.

If **adaptive_block_size_transform_flag** == 1, modifications to the macroblock prediction semantics are specified in subclause 12.2.1.1.

The return value of **num_mb_intra_partition()** is always equal to 16 if **adaptive_block_size_transform_flag** == 0.

NOTE - If **adaptive_block_size_transform_flag** == 1 the semantics regarding the function **num_mb_intra_partition()** are specified in subclause 12.2.1.1.

intra_pred_mode indicates the intra prediction mode.

intra_chroma_pred_mode indicates the type of spatial prediction used for chroma whenever any part of the luma macroblock is intra coded. This is shown in Table 7-15.

Table 7-15 – Relationship between intra_chroma_pred_mode and spatial prediction modes

Value of intra_chroma_pred_mode	Prediction Mode
0	DC
1	Horizontal
2	Vertical
3	Plane

ref_idx_10, when present, indicates the reference picture to be used for prediction.

If **pic_structure** indicates that the current picture is a frame picture, then the reference picture is a previous frame in list 0 that was either indicated as a single frame picture or a frame that was indicated as two field pictures and has been reconstructed as a frame. Thus for frames the following table gives the reference frame:

Code_num	Reference frame
0	The first frame in list 0
1	The second frame in list 0
2	The third frame in list 0
..	..

If **pic_structure** indicates that the current picture is a field picture, then the reference picture is a previous field in list 0 that was either coded as part of a frame-structured picture or coded as a field-structured picture. Thus for fields the following table gives the reference field:

Code_num	Reference field
0	The first field in list 0
1	The second field in list 0
2	The third field in list 0
..	..

If **num_ref_idx_10_active_minus1** is equal to 0, **ref_idx_10** is not present. If **num_ref_idx_10_active_minus1** is equal to 1, only a single encoded bit is used to represent **ref_idx_10**. If **num_ref_idx_10_active_minus1** is greater than 1, the value of **ref_idx_10** is represented by a decoded index.

ref_idx_11 has the same semantics as **ref_idx_10**, except that it is applied to the reference index list 1.

mvd_10 if so indicated by **mb_type**, vector data for 1-16 blocks are transmitted. For every block a prediction is formed for the horizontal and vertical components of the motion vector. **mvd_10** signals the difference between the vector component to be used and this prediction. Motion vectors are allowed to point to samples outside the reference picture. If a sample outside the reference picture is referred to in the prediction process, the nearest sample belonging to the picture (an edge or corner sample) shall be used. All fractional sample positions shall be interpolated as described in subclause 8.3.2. If a sample referred in the interpolation process (necessarily integer accuracy) is outside of the reference picture it shall be replaced by the nearest sample belonging to the picture (an edge or corner sample). Reconstructed motion vectors shall be clipped to ± 19 integer samples outside of the picture.

mvd_11 has the same semantics as **mvd_10**, except that it is applied to the reference index list 1.

7.4.5.2 Sub macroblock prediction semantics

sub_mb_type indicates the sub macroblock types.

If `adaptive_block_size_transform_flag == 1`, modifications to the sub macroblock prediction semantics are specified in subclause 12.2.1.2.

The return value of `num_sub_mb_intra_partition()` is always equal to 4 if `adaptive_block_size_transform_flag == 0`.

NOTE - If `adaptive_block_size_transform_flag == 1` the semantics regarding the function `num_sub_mb_intra_partition()` are specified in subclause 12.2.1.1.

The sub macroblock types for P macroblocks are defined in Table 7-16.

Table 7-16 – Sub macroblock types in P macroblocks

Value of sub_mb_type	Name of sub_mb_type	num_sub_mb_partition()	sub_mb_pred_mode()	num_sub_mb_intra_partition()	num_sub_blocks()
0	Pred_L0_8x8	1	Pred_L0	na	4
1	Pred_L0_8x4	2	Pred_L0	na	4
2	Pred_L0_4x8	2	Pred_L0	na	4
3	Pred_L0_4x4	4	Pred_L0	4	4
4	Intra_8x8	na	Intra		

The following semantics are assigned to the sub macroblock types in Table 7-16:

- `Pred_L0_XxY`, $X,Y=4,8$ the corresponding partition of the sub macroblock is predicted from a past picture with luma block size 8×4 , 4×8 , and 4×4 , respectively, and the associated chroma blocks. A motion vector is transmitted for each $N \times M=8 \times 4$, 4×8 , and 4×4 block. Depending on N and M , up to 4 motion vectors may be decoded for a sub macroblock, and thus up to 16 motion vectors maybe dedoced for a macroblock.
- `Intra_8x8` the 8×8 sub-partition is coded in intra mode. `Intra_8x8` *shall not* be present in SPred slices.

The sub macroblock types for B macroblocks are defined in Table 7-17.

Table 7-17 – Sub macroblock types in B macroblocks

Value of sub_mb_type	Name of sub_mb_type	num_sub_mb_partition()	sub_mb_pred_mode()	num_sub_mb_intra_partition()	num_sub_blocks()
0	Direct_8x8	1	Direct	na	4
1	Pred_L0_8x8	1	Pred_L0	na	4
2	BiPred_L1_8x8	1	Pred_L1	na	4
3	BiPred_Bi_8x8	1	BiPred	na	4
4	Pred_L0_8x4	2	Pred_L0	na	4
5	Pred_L0_4x8	2	Pred_L0	na	4
6	BiPred_L1_8x4	2	Pred_L1	na	4
7	BiPred_L1_4x8	2	Pred_L1	na	4
8	BiPred_Bi_8x4	2	BiPred	na	4
9	BiPred_Bi_4x8	2	BiPred	na	4
10	Pred_L0_4x4	4	Pred_L0	na	4
11	BiPred_L1_4x4	4	Pred_L1	na	4
12	BiPred_Bi_4x4	4	BiPred	na	4
13	Intra_8x8	1	Intra	4	4

The following semantics are assigned to the sub macroblock types in Table 7-17:

- Pred_L0_XxY, X,Y=4,8, have the same semantics as in Table 7-16.
- BiPred_Z_X_Y, Z=L1,Bi, X,Y=4,8
- Intra_8x8 has the same semantics as in Table 7-16.

7.4.5.3 Residual data semantics

If `adaptive_block_size_transform_flag == 1`, modifications to the residual data semantics are specified in subclause 12.2.1.3.

The return value of `num_sub_blocks()` is always equal to 4 if `adaptive_block_size_transform_flag == 0`.

NOTE - If `adaptive_block_size_transform_flag == 1` the semantics regarding the function `num_sub_blocks()` are specified in subclause 12.2.1.3.

7.4.5.3.1 Residual 4x4 block CAVLC semantics

7.4.5.3.2 Residual 4x4 block CABAC semantics

`coded_block_flag` indicates whether the block contains non-zero transform coefficients. If `coded_block_flag` is equal to 0, the block contains no non-zero transform coefficients. If `coded_block_flag` is equal to 1, the block contains at least one non-zero transform coefficient.

`significant_coeff_flag[i]` indicates whether the transform coefficient at scanning position *i* is non-zero. If `significant_coeff_flag[i]` is equal to 0, the transform coefficient at scanning position *i* is equal to zero; if `significant_coeff_flag[i]` is equal to 1, the transform coefficient at position *i* has a non-zero value.

`last_significant_coeff_flag[i]` indicates for the scanning position *i* whether there are non-zero transform coefficients for subsequent scanning positions *i*+1 to `max_numcoeff-1`. If all following transform coefficients (in scanning order) of the block have value equal to zero `last_significant_coeff_flag[i]` is equal to 1. If `last_significant_coeff_flag[i]` is equal to 0, there are further non-zero transform coefficients along the scanning path.

`coeff_absolute_value_minus_1` is the absolute value of the transform coefficient minus 1.

`coeff_sign` is the sign of the transform coefficient. A `coeff_sign` equal to 0 indicates a positive transform coefficient; a `coeff_sign` equal to 1 indicates a negative transform coefficient.

8 Decoding process

8.1 Ordering of decoding process

A macroblock or sub-partition is decoded in the following order.

1. Parsing of syntax elements using VLC/CAVLC (see subclause 9.1) or CABAC (see subclause 9.2)
2. Motion compensation (see subclause 8.4) or Intra prediction (see subclause 8.5)
3. Transform coefficient decoding (see subclause 8.6)
4. Deblocking Filter (see subclause 8.7)

8.2 NAL unit decoding

8.2.1 NAL unit delivery and decoding order

This subclause presents the requirements for the NAL unit delivery and decoding order.

Decoders conforming to this Recommendation | International Standard shall be capable of receiving NAL units in decoding order. Systems conveying NAL unit streams conforming to this Recommendation | International Standard shall either

- 1) Present NAL unit streams to the decoder in decoding order, or
- 2) Provide a means to indicate the NAL unit decoding order to the decoder in the case of enhanced-capability decoders which may be capable of receiving or processing some NAL units in an out-of-order fashion. No such enhanced capability is defined or required herein for decoders conforming to this Recommendation | International Standard.

The decoding order of a sequence parameter set shall precede the decoding order of other NAL units that refer to that sequence parameter set.

The decoding order of a picture parameter set shall precede the decoding order of other NAL units that refer to that picture parameter set.

A coded picture is called a primary coded picture if the `redundant_slice_flag` is 0 or if its slice headers contain `redundant_pic_cnt` equal to 0.

The decoding order of coded slices and data partitions of a primary coded picture shall be contiguous relative to the decoding order of coded slices and data partitions of other primary coded pictures.

The decoding order of coded slices and data partitions of a primary or redundant coded picture shall precede the decoding order of coded slices and data partitions of any other coded picture that uses the primary coded picture as a reference for inter-picture prediction.

The decoding order of any coded slices or data partitions of a primary coded picture shall precede the decoding order of any redundant slices or data partitions containing coded data for the same macroblock locations represented in the slice or data partition for the primary decoded picture.

The decoding order of any redundant coded slice or data partition shall precede the decoding order of the coded slices and data partitions of any other coded picture that uses the primary coded picture corresponding to the coded slice or data partition of the redundant coded slice or data partition as a reference for inter-picture prediction.

The decoding order of slices and data partitions of primary coded pictures shall be non-decreasing in frame number order. The decoding order of the slices and data partitions of non-stored primary coded pictures shall be subsequent to the decoding order of the slices and data partitions of the stored picture with the same frame number. If multiple primary coded pictures share the same frame number, the decoding order of the slices and data partitions of the non-stored pictures shall be in ascending order of `redundant_pic_cnt`.

Depending on the profile in use, arbitrary slice ordering may or may not be allowed. If arbitrary slice ordering is allowed, the slices and data partitions of a primary coded picture may follow any decoding order relative to each other. If arbitrary slice ordering is not allowed, the decoding order of slices and data partitions of a primary coded picture shall be increasing in the raster scan order of the first macroblock of each slice, and the decoding order of data partition A of a coded slice shall precede the decoding order of data partition B of the same coded slice, and the decoding of data partition B of a coded slice shall precede the decoding order of data partition C of the same coded slice, and data partitions A, B, and C of a coded slice shall be contiguous in decoding order relative to the decoding order of any data partitions or non-partitioned slice data NAL units of other coded slices.

The decoding order of SEI NAL units shall precede the decoding order of the slices and the slices and data partitions of the corresponding slice or data partition or coded picture or sequence of pictures to which the SEI NAL unit corresponds, and shall be subsequent to the decoding order of any SEI NAL units, slices, and data partitions of pictures that precede the corresponding coded picture in decoding order.

The decoding order of a picture delimiter, if present, shall precede the decoding order of the SEI NAL units, slices and data partitions of the corresponding coded picture, and shall be subsequent to the decoding order of any SEI NAL units, slices, and data partitions of pictures that precede the corresponding coded picture in decoding order.

8.2.2 Parameter set decoding

The decoder maintains 16 sequence parameter set locations. For each 16 possible values of `seq_parameter_set_id`, the most recent decoded sequence parameter set is copied into the location referenced by `seq_parameter_set_id` immediately before the decoding of the next IDR picture.

The decoder maintains 64 picture parameter set locations. For each 64 possible values of `pic_parameter_set_id`, the most recent picture parameter set is copied into the location referenced by `pic_parameter_set_id` immediately before the decoding of a slice or DPA belonging to the next coded picture.

8.3 Slice decoding

8.3.1 Detection of coded picture boundaries

Decoding of a new picture is started from the slice to be decoded, herein called the current slice, if the slice is not a redundant slice and if one of the following conditions is true:

1. The frame number of the current slice is different from the frame number of the previously decoded slice.
2. The frame number of the current slice is the same as frame number of the previously decoded slice, the `nal_storage_idc` of the previously decoded slice is zero, and the `nal_storage_idc` of the current slice is non-zero.

3. The frame number of the current slice is the same as frame number of the previously decoded slice, `pic_order_cnt_type` is 0, and `pic_order_cnt` is different from the `pic_order_cnt` in the previously decoded slice.
4. The frame number of the current slice is the same as the previously decoded slice, `pic_order_cnt_type` is 1 and `delta_pic_order_cnt` is different from the `delta_pic_order_cnt` in the previously decoded slice.

8.3.2 Picture order count

Each coded picture is associated with a picture order count, called `PicOrderCnt`, which is a 32-bit signed integer. An IDR picture shall have `PicOrderCnt` equal to 0. The `PicOrderCnt` of each stored picture shall be stored as long as the picture stays in the reference picture buffer.

The decoder should treat a wraparound, underflow or overflow of `pic_order_cnt`, `PicOrderCntOffset`, `FrameNumOffset` and `AbsFrameNum` defined in subclauses 8.3.2.1 and 8.3.2.2 as an error.

8.3.2.1 Picture order count type 0

If `pic_order_cnt_type` is 0, the decoder shall maintain a picture order count offset, called `PicOrderCntOffset`, which is a 32-bit signed integer. The `PicOrderCntOffset` shall be zero for an IDR picture.

If `pic_order_cnt_type` is 0 and if the decoding of a new picture is started, the `PicOrderCntOffset` is updated and the `pic_order_cnt` of the picture is calculated. The `pic_order_cnt` of the previous picture in decoding order is herein called `PreviousPicOrderCnt`. If `pic_order_cnt` is smaller than `PreviousPicOrderCnt` and if $(\text{PreviousPicOrderCnt} - \text{pic_order_cnt})$ is greater than or equal to $(\text{MAX_PIC_ORDER_CNT} / 2)$, `PicOrderCntOffset` is calculated according to Equation 8-1.

$$\text{PicOrderCntOffset} = \text{PicOrderCntOffset} + \text{MAX_PIC_ORDER_CNT} \quad (8-1)$$

If `pic_order_cnt` is greater than `PreviousPicOrderCnt` and if $(\text{pic_order_cnt} - \text{PreviousPicOrderCnt})$ is greater than or equal to $(\text{MAX_PIC_ORDER_CNT} / 2)$, `PicOrderCntOffset` is calculated according to Equation 8-2.

$$\text{PicOrderCntOffset} = \text{PicOrderCntOffset} - \text{MAX_PIC_ORDER_CNT} \quad (8-2)$$

Otherwise, the value of `PicOrderCntOffset` is not changed.

If `pic_order_cnt_type` is 0 and if the decoding of a new picture is started, the `PicOrderCnt` of the picture is calculated according to Equation 8-3.

$$\text{PicOrderCnt} = \text{PicOrderCntOffset} + \text{pic_order_cnt} \quad (8-3)$$

8.3.2.2 Picture order count type 1

If `pic_order_cnt_type` is 1, the decoder shall maintain a `FrameNumOffset` that is a 32-bit unsigned integer. The `FrameNumOffset` of an IDR picture shall be zero.

If `pic_order_cnt_type` is 1 and if the decoding of a new picture is started, the `PicOrderCnt` of the picture is calculated. In the following, `AbsFrameNum` and `PicOrderCntCycleCount` are 32-bit unsigned integers, and the `frame_num` of the previous picture in decoding order is called `PreviousFrameNum`. First, the `FrameNumOffset` is updated. If `frame_num` is greater than or equal to the `PreviousFrameNum`, `FrameNumOffset` is unchanged. Otherwise, when `frame_num` is smaller than `PreviousFrameNum`, `FrameNumOffset` is calculated according to Equation 8-4.

$$\text{FrameNumOffset} = \text{FrameNumOffset} + \text{MAX_FN} \quad (8-4)$$

Second, the `AbsFrameNum` is calculated according to Equation 8-5.

$$\text{AbsFrameNum} = \text{FrameNumOffset} + \text{frame_num} \quad (8-5)$$

Third, the `PicOrderCntCycleCount` is calculated according to Equation 8-6.

$$\text{PicOrderCntCycleCount} = \text{AbsFrameNum} / \text{num_stored_frames_in_pic_order_cnt_cycle} \quad (8-6)$$

Fourth, the `FrameNumInPicOrderCntCycle` is calculated according to Equation 8-7.

$$\text{FrameNumInPicOrderCntCycle} = \text{AbsFrameNum} \% \text{num_stored_frames_in_pic_order_cnt_cycle} \quad (8-7)$$

In the following, the EXPECTED_DELTA_PER_PIC_ORDER_CNT_CYCLE is the sum of offset_for_stored_frame values. Finally, the PicOrderCnt of the picture is computed using the algorithm expressed in Equation 8-8.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{PicOrderCnt} &= \text{PicOrderCntCycleCount} \times \text{EXPECTED_DELTA_PER_PIC_ORDER_CNT_CYCLE} \\ \text{for(} i &= 0; i \leq \text{FrameNumInPicOrderCntCycle}; i++ \text{)} \\ &\quad \text{PicOrderCnt} = \text{PicOrderCnt} + \text{offset_for_stored_frame}_i \\ \text{PicOrderCnt} &= \text{PicOrderCnt} + \text{delta_pic_order_cnt} \\ \text{if(} \text{nal_storage_idc} &= 0 \text{)} \\ &\quad \text{PicOrderCnt} = \text{PicOrderCnt} + \text{offset_for_non_stored_pic} \end{aligned} \quad (8-8)$$

8.3.3 Decoder process for redundant slices

If the redundant_pic_cnt in the slice header of a coded slice is greater than 0, the decoder may discard the coded slice. If some of the samples in the decoded primary picture are incorrect and if the coded redundant slice can be correctly decoded, the decoder should replace the incorrect samples with the corresponding samples of the redundant decoded slice.

8.3.4 Specification of macroblock allocation map

If decoding of a new picture is started, if num_slice_groups_minus1 is greater than 0 and if mb_allocation_map_type is 4, 5 or 6, a macroblock allocation map is generated. Slice group 0 has a growth order specified in subclauses 8.3.4.1-8.3.4.4. The number of macroblocks in slice group 0 is equal to slice_group_change_cycle \times SLICE_GROUP_CHANGE_RATE. This number of macroblock locations in the specified growth order is allocated for slice group 0. The rest of the macroblocks of the picture are allocated for slice group 1.

8.3.4.1 Allocation order for box-out

Let H denote the number of coded macroblock rows of the picture and W denote the number of coded macroblocks columns of the picture. Macroblock locations are indicated with coordinates (x, y), where the top-left macroblock location of the picture has coordinates (0, 0) and the bottom-right macroblock location has coordinates (W - 1, H - 1). The allocation order is created using a AllocationDirection variable that indicates the next macroblock location relative to the current one. AllocationDirection can have four values: (-1, 0), (1, 0), (0, -1) and (0, 1). Furthermore, the left-most and right-most macroblock columns allocated in the allocation order and the top-most and bottom-most macroblock rows allocated in the allocation order are stored in the variables Left, Right, Top, and Bottom respectively. For the box-out clockwise macroblock allocation map type, the first macroblock location in the allocation order is (x, y) = (W/2, H/2) and the initial AllocationDirection is (-1, 0). For the counter-clockwise macroblock allocation map type, the first macroblock location in allocation order is (x, y) = ((W - 1)/2, (H - 1)/2) and the initial AllocationDirection is (0, 1). At the beginning, Left = Right = x, and Top = Bottom = y. A subsequent macroblock location (x, y) in allocation order is allocated by searching the first row from top to bottom in Table 8-1 for the same value of AllocationDirection and where the given condition is true. Then, the x, y, AllocationDirection, Left, Right, Top and Bottom variables are updated according to the refined macroblock allocation map type. If Left \geq 0, Right < W, Top \geq 0 and Bottom < H, the next macroblock location (x, y) in allocation order is allocated as described above. Otherwise, all macroblock locations have been allocated.

Table 8-1 – Allocation order for the box-out macroblock map allocation type

AllocationDirection	Condition	Box-out clockwise	Box-out counter-clockwise
(-1, 0)	x > Left	x = x - 1	x = x - 1

(-1, 0)	$x == 0$	$y = \text{Top} - 1$ $\text{Top} = \text{Top} - 1$ $\text{AllocationDirection} = (1, 0)$	$y = \text{Bottom} + 1$ $\text{Bottom} = \text{Bottom} + 1$ $\text{AllocationDirection} = (1, 0)$
(-1, 0)	$x == \text{Left}$	$x = x - 1$ $\text{Left} = \text{Left} - 1$ $\text{AllocationDirection} = (0, -1)$	$x = x - 1$ $\text{Left} = \text{Left} - 1$ $\text{AllocationDirection} = (0, 1)$
(1, 0)	$x < \text{Right}$	$x = x + 1$	$x = x + 1$
(1, 0)	$x == W - 1$	$y = \text{Bottom} + 1$ $\text{Bottom} = \text{Bottom} + 1$ $\text{AllocationDirection} = (-1, 0)$	$y = \text{Top} - 1$ $\text{Top} = \text{Top} - 1$ $\text{AllocationDirection} = (-1, 0)$
(1, 0)	$x == \text{Right}$	$x = x + 1$ $\text{Right} = \text{Right} + 1$ $\text{AllocationDirection} = (0, 1)$	$x = x + 1$ $\text{Right} = \text{Right} + 1$ $\text{AllocationDirection} = (0, -1)$
(0, -1)	$y > \text{Top}$	$y = y - 1$	$y = y - 1$
(0, -1)	$y == 0$	$x = \text{Right} + 1$ $\text{Right} = \text{Right} + 1$ $\text{AllocationDirection} = (0, 1)$	$x = \text{Left} - 1$ $\text{Left} = \text{Left} - 1$ $\text{AllocationDirection} = (0, 1)$
(0, -1)	$y == \text{Top}$	$y = y - 1$ $\text{Top} = \text{Top} - 1$ $\text{AllocationDirection} = (1, 0)$	$y = y - 1$ $\text{Top} = \text{Top} - 1$ $\text{AllocationDirection} = (-1, 0)$
(0, 1)	$y < \text{Bottom}$	$y = y + 1$	$y = y + 1$
(0, 1)	$y == H - 1$	$x = \text{Left} - 1$ $\text{Left} = \text{Left} - 1$ $\text{AllocationDirection} = (0, -1)$	$x = \text{Right} + 1$ $\text{Right} = \text{Right} + 1$ $\text{AllocationDirection} = (0, -1)$
(0, 1)	$y == \text{Bottom}$	$y = y + 1$ $\text{Bottom} = \text{Bottom} + 1$ $\text{AllocationDirection} = (-1, 0)$	$y = y + 1$ $\text{Bottom} = \text{Bottom} + 1$ $\text{AllocationDirection} = (1, 0)$

8.3.4.2 Allocation order for raster scan

For the raster scan slice group macroblock allocation map type, the first macroblock in the allocation order is the top-left one of the picture, and the allocation order follows the raster scan order.

For the reverse raster scan slice group macroblock allocation map type, the first macroblock in the allocation order is the bottom-right one of the picture, and the allocation order follows the reverse raster scan order.

8.3.4.3 Allocation order for wipe

For the wipe right slice group macroblock allocation map type, the first macroblock in the allocation order is the top-left one of the picture. The allocation order runs from top to bottom. The next macroblock after the bottom macroblock of a column is the top macroblock of the column to the right of the previous column.

For the wipe left slice group macroblock allocation map type, the first macroblock in the allocation order is the bottom-right one of the picture. The allocation order runs from bottom to top. The next macroblock after the top macroblock of a column is the bottom macroblock of the column to the left of the previous column.

8.3.4.4 Allocation order for macroblock level adaptive frame and field coding

Allocation order follows Figure 6-4 in subclause 6.2, instead of raster scan.

8.3.5 Data partitioning

When data partitioning is not used, coded slices start with a slice header and are followed by all the entropy coded symbols of Categories 4, 5, and 6 (see Category column in clause 7) of the macroblock data for the macroblocks of the slice.

When Data Partitioning is used, the macroblock data of a Slice is partitioned in three partitions. Partition A contains a partition A header and all entropy coded symbols of Category 4. Partition B contains a partition B header all symbols of Category 5. Partition C contains a partition C header and all symbols of Category 6. When data partitioning is used, each partition is conveyed in its own NAL unit, which may be empty if no symbols of the respective Category.

NOTE - Symbols of Category 5 are relevant to the decoding of intra coded texture information. Symbols of Category 6 are relevant to the decoding of residual data in Inter slices. Category 4 encompasses all other symbol types related to the decoding of macroblocks, and their information is often denoted as header information. The Partition A header contains all the symbols of the slice header, and additionally a slice number that is used to associate the partitions B and C with the partition A. The partition B and C headers contain only the slice number which allows their association with the partition A of the slice

8.3.6 Decoder process for management and use of the reference picture buffer

8.3.6.1 General

Intro to multi picture buffer.

Decoder stores reference pictures as indicated in the bitstream. These are used for prediction. The buffer is divided into two independent buffers: the short term buffer and the long term buffer. Pictures can only remain in the short term buffer for a finite duration, given by MAX_FN. Pictures can remain in the long term buffer until the next IDR picture. mmco commands are used to control the contents of these buffers.

The decoder employs indices when referencing a picture for motion compensation on the macroblock layer. Default indices are defined. These indices of pictures in the reference picture buffer are re-mapped onto newly specified indices according to the remapping_of_pic_nums_idc, abs_diff_pic_num_minus1, and long_term_pic_idx fields.

8.3.6.2 Picture Numbering

Picture numbers are used in the decoding process for management and use of the reference picture buffer for both changing the default indices and for controlling the contents of the reference picture buffer using memory management control operations.

In frame structured pictures, the picture number, PN, of a frame that has frame number FN, is given by $PN = FN$

In field structured pictures, the picture number, PN, of a field that has frame number FN, is given by $PN = 2 \times FN$ if the field is a top field, and is given by $PN = 2 \times FN + 1$ if the field is a bottom field.

Long term picture numbers are also used in the decoding process for management and use of the reference picture buffer. Long term picture numbers are used for both changing the default indices of pictures in the long term buffer, and are used for transferring pictures from short term buffer to the long term buffer and for removing pictures from the long term buffer.

In frame structured pictures, the long term picture number, LTPN, of a frame that has long-term frame index LTFI, is given by $LTPN = LTFI$

In field structured pictures, the long term picture number, LTPN, of a field that has long-term frame index LTFI, is given by $LTPN = 2 \times LTFI$ if the field is a top field, and is given by $LTPN = 2 \times LTFI + 1$ if the field is a bottom field.

In frame-structured pictures, the parameter MAX_PN is defined to equal MAX_FN, and in field-structured pictures, the parameter MAX_PN is defined to equal $2 \times MAX_FN$.

8.3.6.3 Default index orders

8.3.6.3.1 General

A reference index is a relative index into a list of reference indices to indicate which reference picture out of the reference picture buffer is used for motion compensation. When decoding a P or SP slice, there is one such list of reference indices, called the first reference index list. When decoding a B slice, there may be two reference indices used per block each pointing into a separate lists of reference indices which are called the first reference index list and second reference index list.

The first reference index list and the second reference index list have default mappings to the pictures numbers in the reference picture buffer as defined below.

8.3.6.3.2 Default index order for P and SP slices in frame-structured pictures

The default index order for list 0 prediction of P and SP slices in frame-structured pictures (i.e., frames which have not been given a long-term index) to precede the long-term frames in the reference indexing order. Within the set of short-term frames, the default order is for the frames to be ordered starting with the most recently-decoded reference frame and proceeding through to the reference frame in the short-term buffer that was decoded first (i.e., in decreasing order of frame_num in the absence of wrapping of the frame_num value). Within the set of long-term frames, the default order is for the frames to be ordered starting with the frame with the smallest long-term index and proceeding up to the frame with largest long-term index.

A field that is stored in the short term or long term buffer for which the opposite parity field is not stored in the same buffer, are not included in the default index order, shall not be remapped, and shall not be used for prediction in frame-structured pictures.

A field that is stored in the short term or long term buffer for which the opposite parity field is not stored in the same buffer, are not included in the default index order, shall not be remapped, and shall not be used for prediction in frame-structured pictures.

For example, assuming no wrap of the frame_num field, if the buffer contains three short-term frames with frame_num equal to 300, 302, and 303 and two long-term frames with long-term frame indices 0 and 3, the default index order is:

- default relative index 0 refers to the short-term frame with frame_num 303,
- default relative index 1 refers to the short-term frame with frame_num 302,
- default relative index 2 refers to the short-term frame with frame_num 300,
- default relative index 3 refers to the long-term frame with long-term frame index 0, and
- default relative index 4 refers to the long-term frame with long-term frame index 3.

8.3.6.3.3 Default index order for P and SP slices in field-structured pictures

In the case that the current picture is field-structured, each field of the stored reference pictures is identified as a separate reference picture with a unique index. Thus field structured pictures effectively have at least twice the number of pictures available for referencing. The calculated decoding order of reference fields alternates between reference pictures of the same and opposite parity, starting with fields that have the same parity as the current field-structured picture. Figure 8-6 shows the case of the first field in a field-structured picture pair, while Figure 8-7 shows the case of the second field. If one field of a reference frame was neither decoded nor stored, the decoding order calculation shall ignore the missing field and instead index the next available stored reference field of the respective parity in decoding order. When there are no more fields of the respective parity in the short term buffer, default indices shall be allocated to the not yet indexed fields of the other parity starting with the most recently decoded such field and progressing to the first decoded such field.

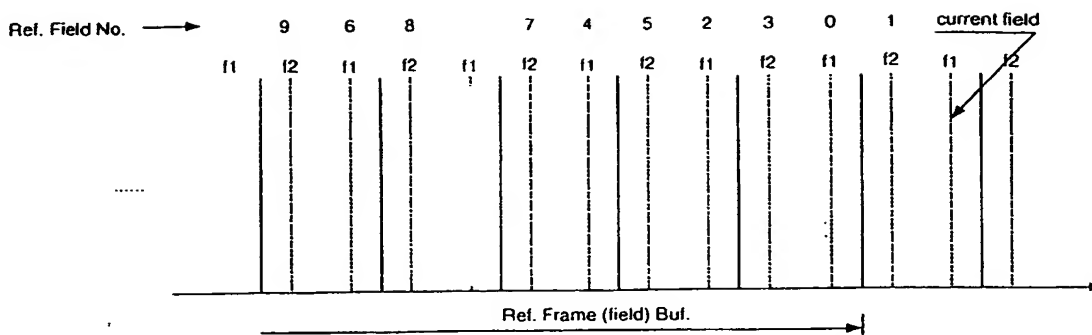


Figure 8-1 – Default reference field number assignment when the current picture is the first field coded in a frame

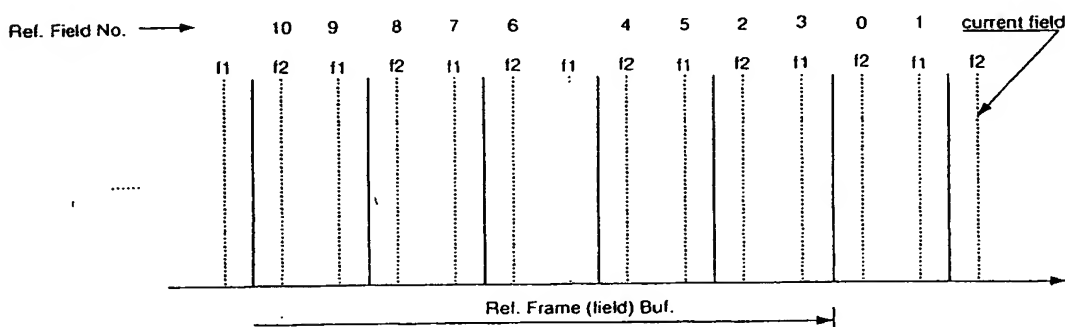


Figure 8-2 – Default reference field number assignment when the current picture is the second field coded in a frame

8.3.6.3.4 Default index order for B slices in frame-structured pictures

The organisation of short term pictures in the default order for B slices depends on output order, as given by PicOrderCnt.

The default index order for list 0 prediction of B slices in frame-structured pictures is for the short-term frames (i.e., frames which have not been given a long-term index) to precede the long-term frames in the reference indexing order. Within the set of short-term frames, the default order is for the frames to be ordered starting with the decoded reference frame with the largest value of PicOrderCnt less than the value of PicOrderCnt of the current frame and proceeding through to the reference frame in the short-term buffer that has the smallest value of PicOrderCnt; and then the frame with the largest value of PicOrderCnt greater than the value of PicOrderCnt of the current frame and proceeding through to the reference frame in the short-term buffer that has the smallest value of PicOrderCnt greater than the value of PicOrderCnt of the current frame. Within the set of long-term frames, the default order is for the frames to be ordered starting with the frame with the smallest long-term index and proceeding up to the frame with the largest long-term index.

The default index order for list 1 prediction of B slices in frame-structured pictures is for the short-term frames (i.e., frames which have not been given a long-term index) to precede the long-term frames in the reference indexing order. Within the set of short-term frames, the default order is for the frames to be ordered starting with the decoded reference frame with the largest value of PicOrderCnt and proceeding through to the reference frame in the short-term buffer that has the smallest value of PicOrderCnt. Within the set of long-term frames, the default order is for the frames to be ordered starting with the frame with the smallest long-term index and proceeding up to the frame with the largest long-term index.

The ordinary default order defined in the previous paragraph shall be used as the default index order for list 1 prediction unless there is more than one reference picture in the set and the ordinary default index order for list 1 prediction is the

same as the default index order for list 0 prediction. In this exceptional case, the default index order for list 1 prediction shall be the ordinary default index order with the order of the first two pictures switched.

A field that is stored in the short term or long term buffer for which the opposite parity field is not stored in the same buffer, are not included in the default index order, shall not be remapped, and shall not be used for prediction in frame-structured pictures.

8.3.6.3.5 Default index order for B slices in field-structured pictures

The default index order for list 0 and list 1 prediction of B slices in field-structured pictures is as for frame-structured pictures except that it is split between even indices for same-parity fields and odd indices for opposite-parity fields.

8.3.6.4 Changing the default index orders

8.3.6.4.1 General

The syntax elements `remapping_of_pic_nums_idc`, `abs_diff_pic_num_minus1`, and `long_term_pic_idx` fields allow indexing into the reference picture buffer to be temporarily altered from the default index order for the decoding of the current slice. A `remapping_of_pic_nums_idc` "end loop" indication indicates the end of a list of re-ordering commands.

The indices are assigned starting at zero and increasing by one for each `remapping_of_pic_nums_idc` field. Pictures that are not re-mapped to a specific order by `remapping_of_pic_nums_idc`, shall follow after any pictures having a re-mapped order in the indexing scheme, following the default order amongst these non-re-mapped pictures.

8.3.6.4.2 Changing the default index orders for short term pictures

`abs_diff_pic_num_minus1` plus one indicates the absolute difference between the picture number of the picture being re-mapped and the prediction value. For the first occurrence of the `abs_diff_pic_num_minus1` field in `ref_idx_reordering()`, the prediction value is the picture number of the current picture. For subsequent occurrences of the `abs_diff_pic_num_minus1` field in `ref_idx_reordering()`, the prediction value is the picture number of the picture that was re-mapped most recently using `abs_diff_pic_num_minus1`.

The decoder shall determine the picture number of the picture being re-mapped, PNQ, in a manner mathematically equivalent to the following, where the picture number prediction is PNP.

```

if(remapping_of_pic_nums_idc == 0)
{
    /* a negative difference */
    if(PNP - abs_diff_pic_num_minus1 < 0)
        PNQ = PNP - abs_diff_pic_num_minus1 + MAX_PN;
    else
        PNQ = PNP - abs_diff_pic_num_minus1;
}
else
{
    /* a positive difference */
    if(PNP + abs_diff_pic_num_minus1 > MAX_PN-1)
        PNQ = PNP + abs_diff_pic_num_minus1 - MAX_PN;
    else
        PNQ = PNP + abs_diff_pic_num_minus1;
}

```

The encoder shall control `remapping_of_pic_nums_idc` and `abs_diff_pic_num_minus1` such that the decoded value of `abs_diff_pic_num_minus1` shall not be greater than or equal to `MAX_PN`.

As an example implementation, the encoder may use the following process to determine values of `abs_diff_pic_num_minus1` and `remapping_of_pic_nums_idc` to specify a re-mapped picture number in question, PN:

```

if(remapping_of_pic_nums_idc == 0)
{
    /* a negative difference */
    if(PNP - abs_diff_pic_num_minus1 < 0)
        PNQ = PNP - abs_diff_pic_num_minus1 + MAX_PN;
    else
        PNQ = PNP - abs_diff_pic_num_minus1;
}

```

```

    }
    else
    { /* a positive difference */
        if (PNP + abs_diff_pic_num_minus1 > MAX_PN-1)
            PNQ = PNP + abs_diff_pic_num_minus1 - MAX_PN;
        else
            PNQ = PNP + abs_diff_pic_num_minus1;
    }

```

where `abs()` indicates an absolute value operation.

`remapping_of_pic_nums_idc` is then determined by the sign of `MDELTA`.

The prediction value used by any subsequent `abs_diff_pic_num_minus1` re-mappings is not affected by `long_term_pic_idx`.

8.3.6.4.3 Changing the default index orders for long term pictures

The `long_term_pic_idx` field indicates the long term picture number of the long term picture being remapped.

8.3.6.5 Overview of decoder process for reference picture buffer management

The reference picture buffer consists of two independent parts: a short term buffer and a long term buffer. The decoder shall assume the initial size of the long term buffer to be 0, that is, it shall assume that `max_long_term_pic_idx_plus1` is set to zero.

The long term buffer has capacity to store `max_long_term_idx_plus1` frames. The usage of the long term buffer is constrained so that it has capacity for no more than `max_long_term_idx_plus1` top fields and no more than `max_long_term_idx_plus1` bottom fields.

The remainder of the reference picture buffer is allocated to the short term buffer, which has capacity to store $(\text{num_of_ref_frames} - \text{max_long_term_idx_plus1})$ frames. There is no further constraint on its capacity to store top and bottom fields. For example, the whole of the short term buffer could be used to store top fields.

`nal_storage_idc` indicates whether the current picture is stored in the reference picture buffer. When `nal_storage_idc` is equal to 0, the current picture is not stored in the reference picture buffer, otherwise it is stored in the reference picture buffer.

If the current picture is stored in the reference picture buffer, the process used for storing is indicated by `ref_pic_buffering_mode`, which indicates either "Sliding Window", a first-in, first-out mechanism, or "Adaptive Memory Control", a customised adaptive buffering operation specified with `memory_management_control_operation` commands.

In frame structured pictures, `memory_management_control_operation` commands apply to both fields of the frame.

In field structured pictures, `memory_management_control_operation` commands apply to individual fields.

8.3.6.6 Sliding window reference picture buffer management

The "Sliding Window" buffering mode operates as follows.

If there is sufficient "unused" capacity in the short term buffer to store the current picture, the current picture is stored in the short term buffer and no pictures are removed from the short term buffer.

Otherwise if the current picture is a field-structured picture, the short-term field with the largest default index, that is, field that has been in the short term buffer for the longest time, is marked "unused", thus creating sufficient capacity to store the current picture. The current picture is then stored in the short term buffer.

Otherwise if the current picture is a frame-structured picture, default indices are calculated as done when decoding a field-structured picture, and the short-term field with the largest default index is marked "unused". If there is still insufficient "unused" capacity in the short term buffer to store the current picture, the short-term field which now has the largest default index is also marked "unused". The current picture is then stored in the short term buffer.

8.3.6.7 Adaptive Memory Control reference picture buffer management

8.3.6.7.1 General

The "Adaptive Memory Control" buffering mode allows specified pictures to be removed from either or both of the short and long term buffers, allows specified pictures to be moved from the short term buffer to the long term buffer, allows

specified pictures to be removed from the long term buffer, allows the number of long term pictures to be modified, and allows the whole buffer to be reset, by use of `memory_management_control_operation` commands.

`memory_management_control_operation` commands are processed in the order they occur in the bitstream, and are processed after the whole picture has been decoded. When all commands have been processed, storage of the current picture is considered. When `nal_storage_idc` is equal to 0, the current picture is not stored in the reference picture buffer, otherwise it is stored in the short term buffer. `memory_management_control_operation` commands in the bitstream shall be such that when `nal_storage_idc` indicates that the current picture is to be stored, that there shall be sufficient "unused" capacity in the short term buffer to store the current picture.

8.3.6.7.2 Removal of short term pictures

If `memory_management_control_operation` equals 1 (Mark a Short-Term Picture as "Unused"), a specified short term picture in the short term buffer is marked as "unused", if that picture has not already been marked as "unused".

If the current decoded picture number is PNC, `difference_of_pic_nums_minus1` is used in an operation mathematically equivalent to the following equations, to calculate, PNQ, the picture number of the short term picture to be marked as "unused".

```
if (PNC < difference_of_pic_nums_minus1)
    PNQ = PNC - difference_of_pic_nums_minus1 - 1 + MAX_PN;
else
    PNQ = PNC - difference_of_pic_nums_minus1 - 1;
```

Similarly, the encoder may compute the `difference_of_pic_nums_minus1` value to encode using the following relation:

```
if (PNC < PNQ)
    difference_of_pic_nums_minus1 = PNC - PNQ - 1 + MAX_PN;
else
    difference_of_pic_nums_minus1 = PNC - PNQ - 1;
```

8.3.6.7.3 Removal of long term pictures

If `memory_management_control_operation` equals 2 (Mark a Long-Term Picture as "Unused"), a specified long term picture in the long term buffer is marked as "unused", if that picture has not already been marked as "unused".

The field `long_term_pic_idx` indicates the the long term picture number, LTPN, of the picture to be marked as "unused".

NOTE: this use of `long_term_pic_idx` is different to its use when transferring short term pictures to the long term buffer.

8.3.6.7.4 Transfer of short term pictures to the long term buffer

If `memory_management_control_operation` equals 3 (Assign a Long-Term Index to a Picture), a specified short term picture in the short term buffer is transferred to the long term buffer with a specified long-term index, if that picture has not already been transferred to the long term buffer. If the picture specified in a long-term assignment operation is already associated with the required `long_term_pic_idx`, no action shall be taken by the decoder. The specified short term picture is no longer in the short term buffer following the processing of this command, and shall not be referenced at a later point in the bitstream by reference to its picture number.

If another picture is already present in the long term buffer with the same long-term index as the specified long-term index, the other picture is marked as "unused".

The picture in the short term buffer to be transferred is identified by its picture number, which is derived from `difference_of_pic_nums_minus1` as in 9.2.6.6.1.

A top field in the short term buffer can only be transferred to the top field of a long term frame, and a bottom field in the short term buffer can only be transferred to the bottom field of a long term frame. The long term frame number of the frame into which the short term picture is transferred is given by `long_term_pic_idx`.

`long_term_pic_idx` shall not be greater than `max_long_term_idx_plus1-1`. If `long_term_pic_idx` does not satisfy this constraint, this condition should be treated by the decoder as an error.

For error resilience, the bitstream may contain the same long-term index assignment operation or `max_long_term_idx_plus1` specification message repeatedly.

A bitstream shall not assign a long-term index to a short-term picture that has been marked as "unused" by the decoding process prior to the first such assignment message in the bitstream. A bitstream shall not assign a long-term index to a picture number that has not been sent.

Once a long-term picture index has been assigned to a picture, the only potential subsequent use of the long term picture's picture number within the bitstream shall be in a repetition of the long-term index assignment. `long_term_pic_idx` becomes the unique ID for the life of a long term picture.

8.3.6.7.5 Modification of the size of the long term buffer

If `memory_management_control_operation` equals 4 (Specify the Maximum Long-Term Frame Index), `max_long_term_pic_idx_plus1` indicates the maximum index allowed for long-term reference frames (until receipt of another value of `max_long_term_pic_idx_plus1`).

If `max_long_term_pic_idx_plus1` is smaller than its previous value, all frames in the long term buffer having indices greater than `max_long_term_pic_idx_plus1 - 1` shall be marked "unused".

If `max_long_term_pic_idx_plus1` is greater than its previous value, the capacity of the short term buffer is reduced by the same amount as the capacity of the long term buffer is increased. The `memory_management_control_operation` commands in the bitstream shall be such that at the time of processing this command, the reduced capacity of the short term buffer shall be sufficient for the contents of the short term buffer.

NOTE: `max_long_term_pic_idx_plus1` can therefore be used to remove long term pictures from the long term buffer but can not be used to remove short term pictures from the short term buffer.

The frequency of transmitting `max_long_term_idx_plus1` is out of the scope of this Recommendation. However, the encoder should send an `max_long_term_idx_plus1` parameter upon receiving an error message, such as an Intra request message.

8.3.6.7.6 Buffer reset

If `memory_management_control_operation` equals 5 (Reset), or the current picture is an IDR picture, all pictures in the short and long term buffers are marked as "unused", and `max_long_term_pic_idx_plus1` is set to zero.

8.3.6.8 Error resilience with reference picture buffer management

If `required_frame_num_update_behaviour` equals 1 the following picture buffer management behaviour shall be used.

If the decoder identifies that pictures that should have been stored have not been decoded, by a gap in frame numbers, the decoder shall act as if the missing pictures had been inserted into the reference picture buffer using the "Sliding Window" buffering mode. An index for a missing picture is called an "invalid" index. The decoder should infer an unintentional picture loss if any "invalid" index is referred to in motion compensation or if an "invalid" index is re-mapped.

If `required_frame_num_update_behaviour` equals 0, the decoder should infer an unintentional picture loss if one or several frame numbers are missing or if a picture not stored in the reference picture buffer is indicated in an `abs_diff_pic_num_minus1` or `long_term_pic_idx` field.

Note: In case of an unintentional picture loss, the decoder may invoke some concealment process. If `required_frame_num_update_behaviour` equals 1, the decoder may replace the picture corresponding to an "invalid" index with an error-concealed one and remove the "invalid" indication. Otherwise, the decoder may insert an error-concealed picture into the reference picture buffer assuming the "Sliding Window" buffering mode. Concealment may be conducted by copying the closest temporally preceding picture that is available in the reference picture buffer into the position of the missing picture. The temporal order of the short-term pictures in the reference picture buffer can be inferred from their picture numbers. In addition or instead, the decoder may send a forced intra update signal to the encoder by external means (for example, Recommendation H.245) if such external means is available, or the decoder may use external means or back-channel messages (for example, Recommendation H.245) to indicate the loss of pictures to the encoder if such external means is available.

8.3.6.9 Decoding process for macroblock level frame/field adaptive coding

When `mb_frame_field_adaptive_flag` == 1, the decoded frame is scanned on a macroblock pair by macroblock pair basis, as shown in Figure 6-4 (subclause 6.2). A macroblock pair can be decoded in either frame or field decoding mode. For frame decoding mode, a macroblock pair is decoded as two frame macroblocks, and each can be further divided into one of block patterns shown in Figure 6-4. For field coding mode, a macroblock pair is first split into one top-field macroblock and one bottom-field macroblock, as shown in Figure 8-3. The top-field macroblock and the bottom-field macroblock are further divided into block patterns shown in Figure 6-5. Each macroblock in either frame or field decoding mode can have a different `mb_type` described in subclause 7.4.6.

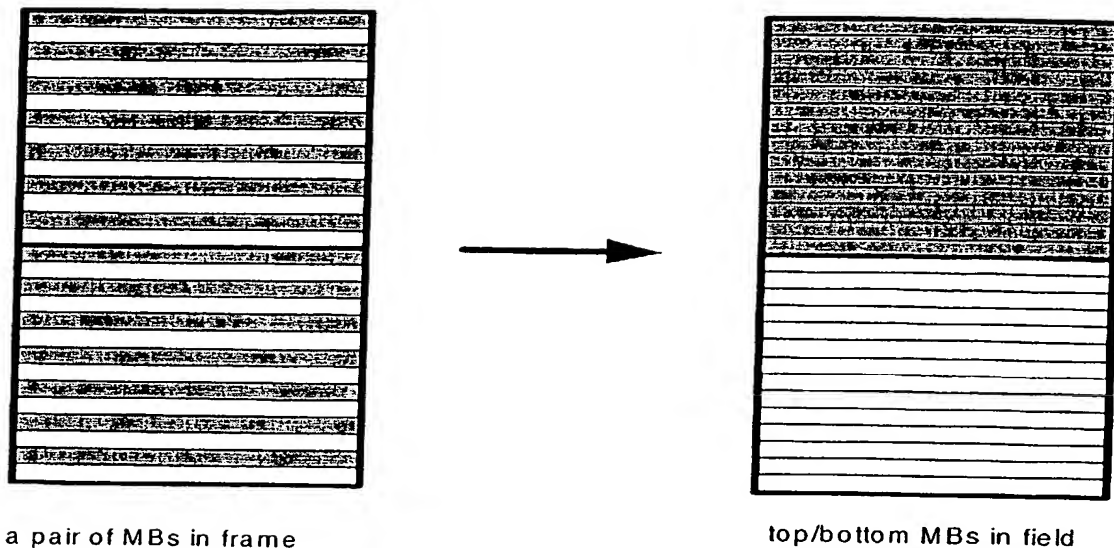


Figure 8-3 – Split of a pair of macroblocks into one top-field macroblock and one bottom-field macroblock.

When `mb_field_decoding_flag == 0`, the top macroblock of a macroblock pair is decoded first, followed by the bottom macroblock, as shown in Figure 6-4 (subclause 6.2). When `mb_field_decoding_flag == 1`, the top-field macroblock is decoded first, followed by the bottom-field macroblock (see Figure 6-4). A few specific rules/conventions are specified as follows.

For intra prediction, if a block/macroblock is in field decoding mode, its neighbouring samples in calculating the prediction shall be the neighbouring samples of the same field.

As in frame decoding mode, the prediction mode of a 4x4 field block is decoded based upon the prediction modes of the (above and left) neighbouring blocks. For interior blocks of a field macroblock pair, the neighbouring blocks used in coding of intra prediction mode are the blocks above and left of the current block. For boundary blocks of a field macroblock pair, the above or left neighbouring block may be in different macroblock pair that can be of either frame or field coding mode. The neighbouring blocks for these boundary blocks shall be as follows:

- If the above or the left macroblock pair is also in field decoding mode, the neighbours of the boundary blocks in the current macroblock pair are in the same field of the above or the left macroblock pair.
- If the above or the left macroblock pair is in frame decoding mode, the neighbours of the boundary blocks in the top (bottom) field macroblock are defined to be the corresponding blocks in the top (bottom) macroblock in the frame macroblock pair.
- For macroblock pairs on the upper boundary of a slice, if the left macroblock pair is in frame decoding mode, then the intra mode prediction value used to predict a field macroblock shall be set to DC prediction.

8.4 Motion compensation

The motion compensation process generates motion compensated predictions for picture blocks using previously decoded reference pictures. The reference picture selection is described in subclauses 7.3.3, 7.3.5.1-2, 7.4.6.1, and 8.3.6-7. If `pic_structure` indicates a field picture, only the reference field indicated by the `ref_idx_10` or `ref_idx_11` is used in the motion compensation. The motion vectors to be used are described in subclauses 7.3.5.1-2, 7.4.5, 7.4.6.1 and 8.4.1.

If the current MB pair is in frame mode and one or more neighbouring blocks is in field mode, the reference frame index used in MV prediction from the field coded neighbours is obtained by dividing the reference field list index by 2 and truncation any fractional result toward zero to obtain the effective frame index for prediction. If the MB pair is in frame mode, the reference field number for any frame coded neighbour is obtained by multiplying the reference frame index by 2.

When a macroblock pair is in field mode, each field macroblock may refer to any (top or bottom) field in the reference picture buffer.

8.4.1 Prediction of vector components

No vector component prediction takes place across macroblock boundaries of macroblocks that do not belong to the same slice. For the purpose of vector component prediction, macroblocks that do not belong to the same slice are treated as outside the picture.

With exception of the 16x8 and 8x16 block shapes, "median prediction" (see subclause 8.4.1.1) is used. In case the macroblock may be classified to have directional segmentation the prediction is defined in subclause 8.4.1.2. Motion vector for a Skip mode macroblock shall be obtained as described in subclause 8.4.1.3.

8.4.1.1 Median prediction

The prediction of the components of the motion vector value for a block E is formed based on the parameters of neighbouring blocks A, B, C, and D as shown in Figure 8-4. This process is referred to as median prediction.

- A The block containing the sample to the left of the upper left sample in E
- B The block containing the sample just above the upper left sample in E
- C The block containing the sample above and to the right of the upper right sample in E
- D The block containing the sample above and to the left of the upper left sample in E

NOTE - The prediction of A, B, C, D and E may use different indices into the reference picture list.

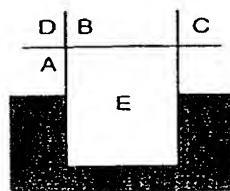


Figure 8-4 – Median prediction of motion vectors

The following rules specify the predicted motion vector value resulting from the median prediction process for block E:

- If block C is outside the current picture or slice or is not available due to the decoding order within a macroblock as specified in Figure 6-4, its motion vector and reference picture index shall be considered equal to the motion vector and reference picture index for block D.
- If blocks B, C, and D are all outside the current picture or slice, their motion vector values and reference picture indices shall be considered as equal to the motion vector value and reference picture index for block A.
- If any predictor not specified by the first or second rules above is coded as intra or is outside the current picture or slice, its motion vector value shall be considered equal to zero and it shall be considered to have a different reference picture than block E.
- If only one of the three blocks A, B and C has the same reference picture as block E, then the predicted motion vector for block E shall be equal to the motion vector of the A, B, or C block with the same reference picture as block E; otherwise, each component of the predicted motion vector value for block E shall be the median of the corresponding motion vector component values for blocks A, B, and C.

The following additional considerations apply in the case of macroblock-adaptive frame/field coding:

- If a block A is field type then it is assigned two frame MV's for the purpose of motion vector prediction. The first frame MV is the field MV of the block with vertical motion vector component multiplied by 2, and the second MV is the field MV of the block in same geometric location as A in the second MB of the MB pair (vertical motion vector component multiplied by two). If a block A is frame type then it is assigned two field MV's for the purpose of motion vector prediction. The first field MV is the frame MV of the block with vertical motion vector component divided by 2, and the second MV is the frame MV of the block in same geometric location as A in the second MB of the MB pair (vertical motion vector component divided by two). Similar rules are used to determine the two reference frames (fields) of a field (frame) block.

- If E is in frame coding mode, the MVs of A, B, C and D used in calculating PMV are also frame-based. If block A, B, C, or D is coded in field coding mode, its two frame-based MVs are averaged. In that case, the two reference field numbers of A, B, C or D shall be the same, and they shall be equal to the reference frame number of E multiplied by 2.
- If E is in field coding mode, the MVs of A, B, C and D used in calculating PMV are also field-based in the same field parity. If block A, B, C, or D is frame coded, the field-based motion vector is obtained by averaging the two field MVs of the block. In that case, two frame reference numbers of A, B, C or D shall be the same, and they shall be equal to the reference field number of E divided by 2 with truncation of fractional values toward zero.

8.4.1.2 Directional segmentation prediction

If the macroblock where the block to be predicted is coded in 16x8 or 8x16 mode, the prediction is generated as follows (refer to Figure 8-5 and the definitions of A, B, C, E above):

- a) Vector block size 8x16:
 - 1) Left block: A is used as prediction if it has the same reference picture as E, otherwise "median prediction" is used
 - 2) Right block: C is used as prediction if it has the same reference picture as E, otherwise "median prediction" is used
- b) Vector block size 16x8:
 - 1) Upper block: B is used as prediction if it has the same reference picture as E, otherwise "median prediction" is used
 - 2) Lower block: A is used as prediction if it has the same reference picture as E, otherwise "median prediction" is used

If the indicated prediction block is outside the picture, the same substitution rules are applied as in the case of median prediction.

For field-coded macroblocks, the directional segmentation follow the same conventions as the above, but the neighbouring blocks are constructed from samples of the macroblock pair having the same field parity.

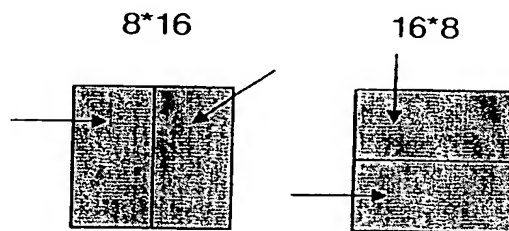


Figure 8-5 – Directional segmentation prediction

8.4.1.3 Motion vector for a skip mode macroblock

Motion vector for a Skip mode macroblock shall be obtained identically to the prediction motion vector for the 16x16 macroblock type. However, if any of the conditions below hold, a zero motion vector shall be used instead:

- a) The Macroblock immediately above or to the left is not available (that is, is outside of the picture or belongs to a different slice)
- b) Either one of the motion vectors applying to samples A or B (as described in subclause 8.4.1.1) uses the last decoded picture as reference and has zero magnitude.

8.4.1.4 Chroma vectors

Chroma vectors are derived from the luma vectors. Since chroma has half resolution compared to luma, the chroma vectors are obtained by dividing the corresponding luma motion vectors by two.

Due to the lower resolution of the chroma array relative to the luma array, a chroma vector applies to 1/4 as many samples as the luma vector. For example if the luma vector applies to 8x16 luma samples, the corresponding chroma

vector applies to 4x8 chroma samples and if the luma vector applies to 4x4 luma samples, the corresponding chroma vector applies to 2x2 chroma samples.

8.4.2 Fractional sample accuracy

Fractional sample accuracy is indicated by motion_resolution. If motion_resolution has the value 0, quarter-sample interpolation with a 6-tap filter is applied to the luma samples in the block. If motion_resolution has the value 1, eighth-sample interpolation with an 8-tap filter is used. The prediction process for chroma samples in both cases is described in subclause 8.4.2.3.

8.4.2.1 Quarter sample luma interpolation

In Figure 8-6, the positions labelled with upper-case letters within shaded blocks represent reference picture samples at integer sample positions, and the positions labelled with lower-case letters within un-shaded blocks represent reference picture samples at fractional sample positions.

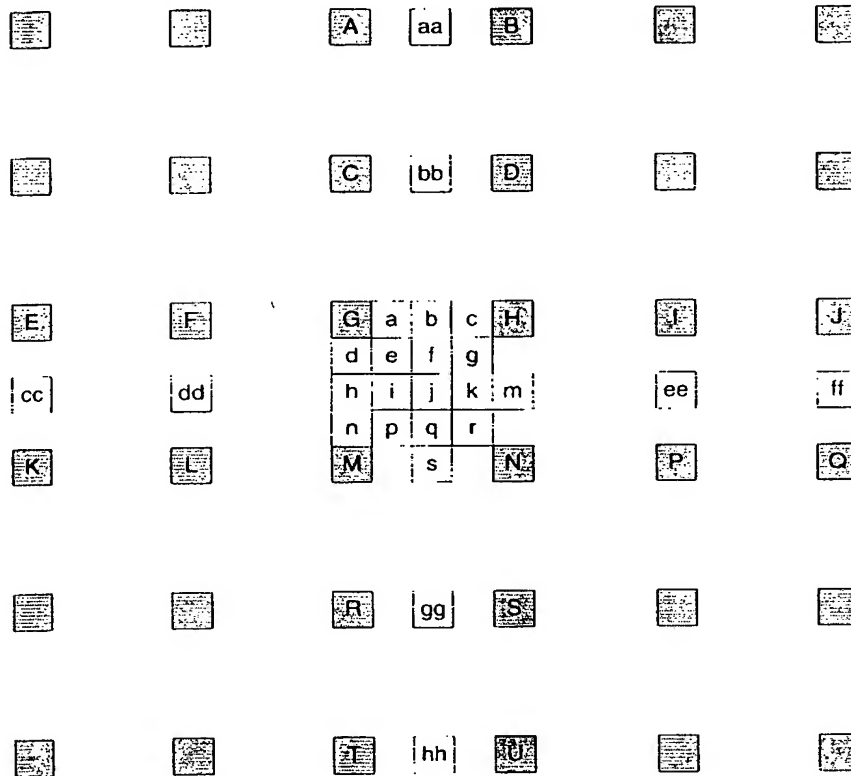


Figure 8-6 – Integer samples (shaded blocks with upper-case letters) and fractional sample positions (un-shaded blocks with lower-case letters) for quarter sample luma interpolation.

The luma prediction values at half sample positions shall be obtained by applying a 6-tap filter with tap values (1, -5, 20, 20, -5, 1). The luma prediction values at quarter sample positions shall be obtained by averaging samples at integer and half sample positions. The process for each fractional position is described below.

- The samples at half sample positions labelled 'b' shall be obtained by first calculating intermediate values denoted as 'b' by applying the 6-tap filter to the nearest integer position samples in the horizontal direction. The samples at half sample positions labelled 'h' shall be obtained by first calculating intermediate values denoted as 'h' by applying the 6-tap filter to the nearest integer position samples in the vertical direction:

$$b = (E - 5F + 20G + 20H - 5I + J),$$

$$h = (A - 5C + 20G + 20M - 5R + T).$$

The final prediction values shall be calculated using:

$$b = \text{Clip1}((b+16) \gg 5),$$

$$h = \text{Clip1}((h+16) \gg 5).$$

- The samples at half sample position labelled as 'j' shall be obtained by first calculating intermediate value denoted as 'j' by applying the 6-tap filter to the intermediate values of the closest half sample positions in either the horizontal or vertical direction because these yield an equivalent result.

$$j = cc - 5dd + 20h + 20m - 5ee + ff, \text{ or}$$

$$j = aa - 5bb + 20b + 20s - 5gg + hh,$$

where intermediate values denoted as 'aa', 'bb', 'gg', 's' and 'hh' shall be obtained by applying the 6-tap filter horizontally in an equivalent manner to 'b' and intermediate values denoted as 'cc', 'dd', 'ee', 'm' and 'ff' shall be obtained by applying the 6-tap filter vertically in an equivalent manner to 'h'. The final prediction value shall be calculated using: $j = \text{Clip1}((j+512) \gg 10)$.

- The samples at quarter sample positions labelled as 'a', 'c', 'd', 'n', 'f', 'i', 'k' and 'q' shall be obtained by averaging with truncation the two nearest samples at integer and half sample positions using: $a = (G+b) \gg 1$, $c = (H+b) \gg 1$, $d = (G+h) \gg 1$, $n = (M+h) \gg 1$, $f = (b+j) \gg 1$, $i = (h+j) \gg 1$, $k = (j+m) \gg 1$ and $q = (j+s) \gg 1$.
- The samples at quarter sample positions labelled as 'e', 'g' and 'p' shall be obtained by averaging with truncation the two nearest samples at half sample positions in the diagonal direction using $e = (b+h) \gg 1$, $g = (b+m) \gg 1$, $p = (h+s) \gg 1$.
- The sample at quarter sample position labelled as 'r' shall be obtained by averaging with rounding using the four nearest samples at integer positions using $r = (G+H+M+N+2) \gg 2$.

8.4.2.2 One eighth sample luma interpolation

The positions labelled 'A' in Figure 8-7 represent reference picture samples in integer positions. Other symbols represent interpolated values at fractional sample positions.

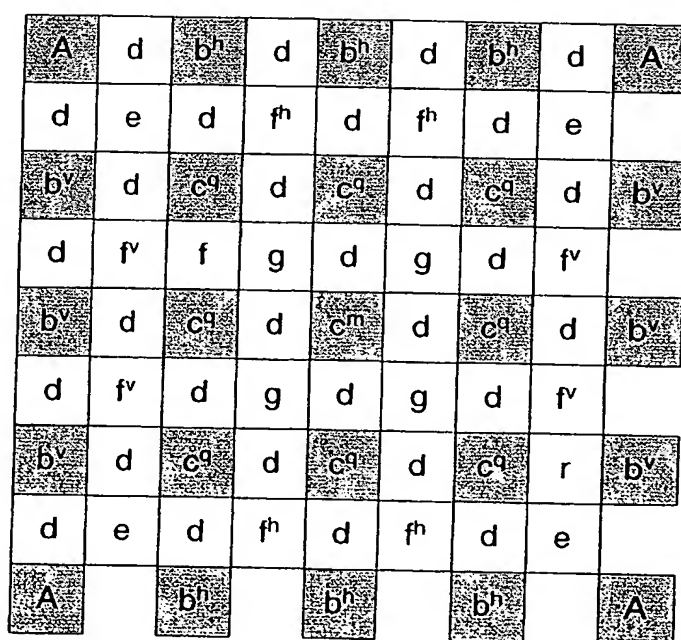


Figure 8-7 – Integer samples ('A') and fractional sample locations for one eighth sample luma interpolation

The samples at half and quarter sample positions shall be obtained by applying 8-tap filters with following coefficients:

- coeff1 for sample values at 1/4 positions: (-3, 12, -37, 229, 71, -21, 6, -1),
- coeff2 for sample values at 2/4 positions: (-3, 12, -39, 158, 158, -39, 12, -3),

- coeff3 for sample values at 3/4 positions: (-1, 6, -21, 71, 229, -37, 12, -3).

The samples at one eighth sample positions are defined as weighted averages of reference picture samples at integer, half and quarter sample positions. The process for each position is described below.

- The samples at half and quarter sample positions denoted as ' b^h ' shall be obtained by first calculating intermediate values b , by applying 8-tap filter to the nearest samples ' A ' at integer positions in a horizontal direction. For left ' b^h ', middle ' b^h ' and right ' b^h ' in Figure 8-7, coefficients coeff1, coeff2 and coeff3 are used, respectively. The final value of ' b^h ' shall be obtained using $b^h = \text{Clip1}((b+128)>>8)$. The samples at half and quarter sample positions labelled as ' b^v ' shall be obtained equivalently with the filter applied in vertical direction. For upper ' b^v ', middle ' b^v ' and bottom ' b^v ' coefficients coeff1, coeff2 and coeff3 are used, respectively.
- The samples at half and quarter sample positions labelled as ' c^m ' and ' c^q ' shall be obtained by 8-tap filtering of the closest intermediate values b in either horizontal or vertical direction to obtain value c , and then the final result shall be obtained using $c^m = \text{Clip1}((c+32768)>>16)$ or $c^q = \text{Clip1}((c+32768)>>16)$. Filtering in horizontal and vertical direction gives identical results. When filtering in horizontal direction is applied, for left ' c^q ', middle ' c^q ' and right ' c^q ', coefficients coeff1, coeff2 and coeff3 are used, respectively. When filtering in vertical direction is applied, for upper ' c^q ', middle ' c^q ' and bottom ' c^q ' coefficients coeff1, coeff2 and coeff3 are used, respectively. For ' c^m ' coefficients coeff2 are used.
- The samples at one eighth sample positions labelled as ' d ' shall be obtained by averaging with truncation of the two closest samples at half and quarter sample positions using $d = (A+b^h)>>1$, $d = (b^h+b^h)>>1$, $d = (A+b^v)>>1$, $d = (b^h+c^q)>>1$, $d = (b^v+c^q)>>1$, $d = (c^q+c^q)>>1$, $d = (b^v+b^v)>>1$, or $d = (c^q+c^m)>>1$.
- The samples at one eighth sample positions labelled as ' e ' shall be obtained by averaging with truncation the closest ' b^h ' and ' b^v ' samples in diagonal direction using $e = (b^h+b^v)>>1$.
- The samples at one eighth sample positions labelled as ' g ' shall be obtained from the closest integer samples ' A ' and the ' c^m ' samples using $g = (A+3c^m+2)>>2$.
- The samples at one eighth sample positions labelled as ' f^h ' and ' f^v ' shall be calculated as $f^h = (3b^h+b^v+2)>>2$ and $f^v = (3b^v+b^h+2)>>2$.

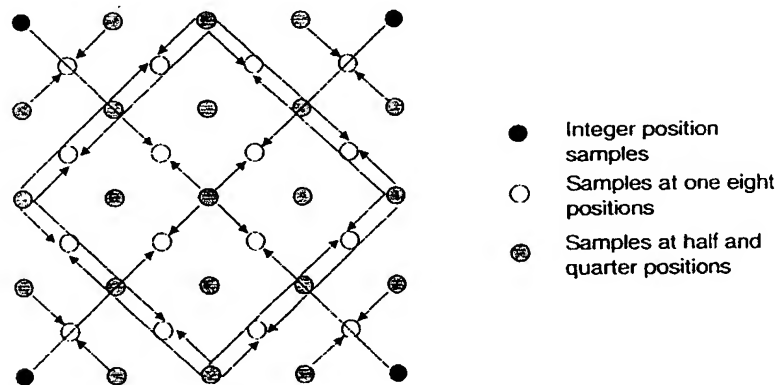


Figure 8-8 – Diagonal interpolation for one eighth sample luma interpolation

8.4.2.3 Chroma interpolation

Motion compensated prediction fractional chroma samples shall be obtained using Equation 8-13.

$$v = ((s - d^x)(s - d^y)A + d^x(s - d^y)B + (s - d^x)d^yC + d^x d^y D + s^2 / 2) / s^2 \quad (8-13)$$

where A , B , C and D are the integer position reference picture samples surrounding the fractional sample location; d^x and d^y are the fractional parts of the sample position in units of one eighth samples for quarter sample interpolation or one sixteenth samples for one eighth sample interpolation; and s is 8 for quarter sample interpolation and is 16 for one eighth sample interpolation. The relationships between the variables in Equation 8-13 and reference picture positions are illustrated in Figure 8-9.

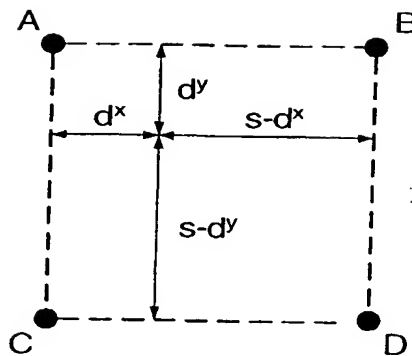


Figure 8-9 – Fractional sample position dependent variables in chroma interpolation and surrounding integer position samples A, B, C, and D.

8.5 Intra Prediction

Two Intra coding modes for macroblocks are described below. Sample values used in the prediction process for intra sample prediction shall be sample values prior to alteration by any deblocking filter operations.

8.5.1 Intra Prediction for 4x4 luma block in Intra_4x4 macroblock type

Figure 8-10 illustrates the Intra prediction for a 4x4 block. The samples of a 4x4 block containing samples a to p in Figure 8-10 are predicted using samples A to Q in Figure 8-10 from neighbouring blocks. Samples A to Q may already be decoded and may be used for prediction. Any sample A-Q shall be considered not available under the following circumstances:

- if they are outside the picture or outside the current slice,
- if they belong to a macroblock that is subsequent to the current macroblock in raster scan order,
- if they are sent later than the current 4x4 block in the order shown in Figure 6-5, or
- if they are in a non-intra macroblock and constrained_intra_pred is 1.

When samples E-H are not available, the sample value of D is substituted for samples E-H. When samples M-P are not available, the sample value of L is substituted for samples M-P.

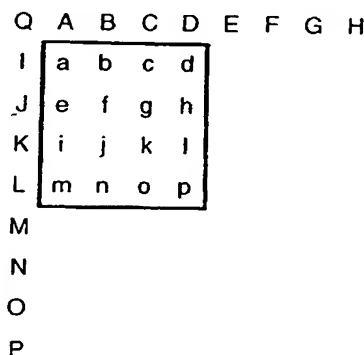


Figure 8-10 – Identification of samples used for intra spatial prediction

For the luma signal, there are nine intra prediction modes labelled 0, 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8. Mode 2 is 'DC-prediction' (see below). The other modes represent directions of predictions as indicated in Figure 8-11.

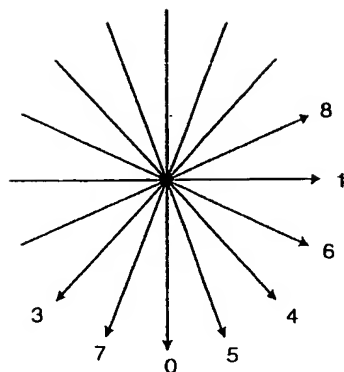


Figure 8-11 – Intra prediction directions

If `adaptive_block_size_transform_flag == 1`, the intra prediction modes may be used for 4x8, 8x4, and 8x8 blocks as specified in subclause 12.4.1.

8.5.1.1 Mode 0: vertical Prediction

This mode shall be used only if A, B, C, D are available. The prediction in this mode shall be as follows:

- a, c, i, m are predicted by A.
- b, f, j, n are predicted by B.
- e, g, k, o are predicted by C.
- d, h, l, p are predicted by D.

8.5.1.2 Mode 1: horizontal prediction

This mode shall be used only if I, J, K, L are available. The prediction in this mode shall be as follows:

- a, b, c, d are predicted by I.
- e, f, g, h are predicted by J.
- i, j, k, l are predicted by K.
- m, n, o, p are predicted by L.

8.5.1.3 Mode 2: DC prediction

If all samples A, B, C, D, I, J, K, L, are available, all samples are predicted by $(A+B+C+D+I+J+K+L+4) \gg 3$. If A, B, C, and D are not available and I, J, K, and L are available, all samples shall be predicted by $(I+J+K+L+2) \gg 2$. If I, J, K, and L are not available and A, B, C, and D are available, all samples shall be predicted by $(A+B+C+D+2) \gg 2$. If all eight samples are not available, the prediction for all luma samples in the 4x4 block shall be 128. A block may therefore always be predicted in this mode.

8.5.1.4 Mode 3: diagonal down/left prediction

This mode shall be used only if all A, B, C, D, I, J, K, L, Q are available. This is a 'diagonal' prediction. The prediction in this mode shall be as follows:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| – a is predicted by | $(A + 2B + C + I + 2J + K + 4) \gg 3$ |
| – b, e are predicted by | $(B + 2C + D + J + 2K + L + 4) \gg 3$ |
| – c, f, i are predicted by | $(C + 2D + E + K + 2L + M + 4) \gg 3$ |
| – d, g, j, m are predicted by | $(D + 2E + F + L + 2M + N + 4) \gg 3$ |
| – h, k, n are predicted by | $(E + 2F + G + M + 2N + O + 4) \gg 3$ |
| – l, o are predicted by | $(F + 2G + H + N + 2O + P + 4) \gg 3$ |
| – p is predicted by | $(G + H + O + P + 2) \gg 2$ |

8.5.1.5 Mode 4: diagonal down/right prediction

This mode shall be used only if all A, B, C, D, I, J, K, L, Q are available. This is a 'diagonal' prediction. The prediction in this mode shall be as follows:

- m is predicted by $(J + 2K + L + 2) \gg 2$
- i, n are predicted by $(I + 2J + K + 2) \gg 2$
- e, j, o are predicted by $(Q + 2I + J + 2) \gg 2$
- a, f, k, p are predicted by $(A + 2Q + I + 2) \gg 2$
- b, g, l are predicted by $(Q + 2A + B + 2) \gg 2$
- c, h are predicted by $(A + 2B + C + 2) \gg 2$
- d is predicted by $(B + 2C + D + 2) \gg 2$

8.5.1.6 Mode 5: vertical-left prediction

This mode shall be used only if all A, B, C, D, I, J, K, L, Q are inside the slice. This is a 'diagonal' prediction.

- a, j are predicted by $(Q + A + 1) \gg 1$
- b, k are predicted by $(A + B + 1) \gg 1$
- c, l are predicted by $(B + C + 1) \gg 1$
- d is predicted by $(C + D + 1) \gg 1$
- e, n are predicted by $(I + 2Q + A + 2) \gg 2$
- f, o are predicted by $(Q + 2A + B + 2) \gg 2$
- g, p are predicted by $(A + 2B + C + 2) \gg 2$
- h is predicted by $(B + 2C + D + 2) \gg 2$
- i is predicted by $(Q + 2I + J + 2) \gg 2$
- m is predicted by $(I + 2J + K + 2) \gg 2$

8.5.1.7 Mode 6: horizontal-down prediction

This mode shall be used only if all A, B, C, D, I, J, K, L, Q are available. This is a 'diagonal' prediction. The prediction in this mode shall be as follows:

- a, g are predicted by $(Q + I + 1) \gg 1$
- b, h are predicted by $(I + 2Q + A + 2) \gg 2$
- c is predicted by $(Q + 2A + B + 2) \gg 2$
- d is predicted by $(A + 2B + C + 2) \gg 2$
- e, k are predicted by $(I + J + 1) \gg 1$
- f, l are predicted by $(Q + 2I + J + 2) \gg 2$
- i, o are predicted by $(J + K + 1) \gg 1$
- j, p are predicted by $(I + 2J + K + 2) \gg 2$
- m is predicted by $(K + L + 1) \gg 1$
- n is predicted by $(J + 2K + L + 2) \gg 2$

8.5.1.8 Mode 7: vertical-right prediction

This mode shall be used only if all A, B, C, D, I, J, K, L, Q are available. This is a 'diagonal' prediction. The prediction in this mode shall be as follows:

- a is predicted by $(2A + 2B + J + 2K + L + 4) \gg 3$
- b, i are predicted by $(B + C + 1) \gg 1$
- c, j are predicted by $(C + D + 1) \gg 1$
- d, k are predicted by $(D + E + 1) \gg 1$
- l is predicted by $(E + F + 1) \gg 1$
- e is predicted by $(A + 2B + C + K + 2L + M + 4) \gg 3$
- f, m are predicted by $(B + 2C + D + 2) \gg 2$

- g, n are predicted by $(C + 2D + E + 2) \gg 2$
- h, o are predicted by $(D + 2E + F + 2) \gg 2$
- p is predicted by $(E + 2F + G + 2) \gg 2$

8.5.1.9 Mode 8: horizontal-up prediction

This mode shall be used only if all A, B, C, D, I, J, K, L, Q are available. This is a 'diagonal' prediction. The prediction in this mode shall be as follows:

- a is predicted by $(B + 2C + D + 2I + 2J + 4) \gg 3$
- b is predicted by $(C + 2D + E + I + 2J + K + 4) \gg 3$
- c, e are predicted by $(J + K + I) \gg 1$
- d, f are predicted by $(J + 2K + L + 2) \gg 2$
- g, i are predicted by $(K + L + I) \gg 1$
- h, j are predicted by $(K + 2L + M + 2) \gg 2$
- l, n are predicted by $(L + 2M + N + 2) \gg 2$
- k, m are predicted by $(L + M + I) \gg 1$
- o is predicted by $(M + N + I) \gg 1$
- p is predicted by $(M + 2N + O + 2) \gg 2$

8.5.2 Intra prediction for luma block in Intra_16x16 macroblock type

Denote the block to be predicted as having sample locations 0 to 15 horizontally and 0 to 15 vertically. The notation $P(x,y)$ is used, where $x = 0..15$ corresponds to horizontal positions and $y = 0..15$ corresponds to vertical positions. $P(x,-1)$, $x=0..15$ are the neighbouring samples above the block and $P(-1,y)$, $y=0..15$ are the neighbouring samples to the left of the block. $Pred(x,y)$, $x,y = 0..15$ is the prediction for the luma macroblock samples. There are 4 different prediction modes as specified in subclauses 8.5.2.1 to 8.5.2.4.

Samples $P(x,-1)$ or $P(-1,y)$ shall be considered not available under the following circumstances:

- if they are outside the picture or outside the current slice, or
- if they are in a non-intra macroblock and constrained_intra_pred is 1.

8.5.2.1 Mode 0: vertical prediction

This mode shall be used only if all neighbouring samples $P(x, -1)$ are available.

$$Pred(x, y) = P(x, -1), x, y=0..15 \quad (8-14)$$

8.5.2.2 Mode 1: horizontal prediction

This mode shall be used only if all neighbouring samples $P(-1, y)$ are available.

$$Pred(x, y) = P(-1, y), x, y=0..15 \quad (8-15)$$

8.5.2.3 Mode 2: DC prediction

$$Pred(x, y) = \left[\sum_{x'=0}^{15} P(x', -1) + \sum_{y'=0}^{15} P(-1, y') + 16 \right] \gg 5 \quad x, y=0..15 \quad (8-16)$$

If the neighbouring samples $P(x, -1)$ are not available and the neighbouring samples $P(-1, y)$ are available, the prediction for all luma samples in the macroblock is given by Equation 8-17.

$$Pred(x, y) = \left[\sum_{y'=0}^{15} P(-1, y') + 8 \right] \gg 4 \quad x, y=0..15, \quad (8-17)$$

If the neighbouring samples $P(-1, y)$ are not available and the neighbouring samples $P(x, -1)$ are available, the prediction for all luma samples in the macroblock is given by Equation 8-18.

$$\text{Pred}(x, y) = \left[\sum_{x'=0}^{15} P(x', -1) + 8 \right] \gg 4 \quad x, y=0..15, \quad (8-18)$$

If none of the neighbouring samples $P(x, -1)$ and $P(-1, y)$ are available, the prediction for all luma samples in the macroblock shall be 128.

8.5.2.4 Mode 3: plane prediction

This mode shall be used only if all neighbouring samples $P(x, -1)$ and $P(-1, y)$ are available.

$$\text{Pred}(x, y) = \text{Clip1}((a + b \cdot (x-7) + c \cdot (y-7) + 16) \gg 5), \quad (8-19)$$

where:

$$a = 16 \cdot (P(-1, 15) + P(15, -1)) \quad (8-20)$$

$$b = (5 \cdot H + 32) \gg 6 \quad (8-21)$$

$$c = (5 \cdot V + 32) \gg 6 \quad (8-22)$$

and H and V are defined in Equations 8-23 and 8-24.

$$H = \sum_{x=1}^8 x \cdot (P(7+x, -1) - P(7-x, -1)) \quad (8-23)$$

$$V = \sum_{y=1}^8 y \cdot (P(-1, 7+y) - P(-1, 7-y)) \quad (8-24)$$

8.5.3 Prediction in intra coding of chroma blocks

The chroma in intra macroblocks is predicted in a manner very similar to the luma block in Intra_16x16 macroblock type (subclause 8.5.2), using one of four prediction modes. The same prediction mode is applied to both chroma blocks, but it is independent of the prediction mode used for the luma.

NOTE - If any portion of the luma macroblock is coded in intra mode, the entire chroma macroblock is coded intra.

Let $P(x, -1)$, $x=0..7$ be the neighbouring samples above the chroma macroblock and $P(-1, y)$, $y=0..7$ be the neighbouring samples to the left of the chroma macroblock. $\text{Pred}(x, y)$, $x, y = 0..7$ is the prediction for the whole chroma macroblock, and is computed as follows for the four prediction modes. Samples $P(x, -1)$ or $P(-1, y)$ shall be considered not available under the following circumstances:

- if they are outside the picture or outside the current slice,
- if they are in a non-intra macroblock and `constrained_intra_pred` is 1.

Whenever $P(x, y)$ is not available, $P(x, y)$ is inferred to have the value 128 except as specified in subclause 8.5.3.3.

For the horizontal and vertical prediction, $P(x, y)$ is first filtered using a $\{1, 2, 1\}/4$ filter, with pixel replication at the edges.

8.5.3.1 Mode 0: vertical prediction

$$F(0, -1) = (P(0, -1) + P(1, -1) + 1) \gg 1 \quad (8-25)$$

$$F(x, -1) = (P(x-1, -1) + 2 \times P(x, -1) + P(x+1, -1) + 2) \gg 2, \quad x=1, \dots, 6 \quad (8-26)$$

$$F(7, -1) = (P(6, -1) + P(7, -1) + 1) \gg 1 \quad (8-27)$$

$$\text{Pred}(x, y) = F(x, -1), x, y=0..7 \quad (8-28)$$

8.5.3.2 Mode 1: horizontal prediction

$$F(-1,0) = (P(-1,0) + P(-1,1) + 1) \gg 1 \quad (8-29)$$

$$F(-1, y) = (P(-1, y-1) + 2 \times P(-1, y) + P(-1, y+1) + 2) \gg 2, y=1, \dots, 6 \quad (8-30)$$

$$F(-1,7) = (P(-1,6) + P(-1,7) + 1) \gg 1 \quad (8-31)$$

$$\text{Pred}(x, y) = F(-1, y), x, y=0..7 \quad (8-32)$$

8.5.3.3 Mode 2: DC prediction

If all samples $P(-1,n)$ and $P(n,-1)$ used in Equation 8-33 are available, the prediction is formed as

$$\text{Pred}(x, y) = \left(\left(\sum_{n=0}^7 (P(-1,n) + P(n,-1)) \right) + 8 \right) \gg 4 \quad x, y=0..7, \quad (8-33)$$

If the 8 samples $P(-1,n)$ are not available, the prediction is formed as

$$\text{Pred}(x, y) = \left[\left(\sum_{n=0}^7 P(n, -1) \right) + 4 \right] \gg 3 \quad x, y=0..7, \quad (8-33a)$$

If the 8 samples $P(n,-1)$ are not available, the prediction is formed as

$$\text{Pred}(x, y) = \left[\left(\sum_{n=0}^7 P(n, -1) \right) + 4 \right] \gg 3 \quad x, y=0..7, \quad (8-33b)$$

If all 16 samples are not available, the prediction $\text{Pred}(x,y)$ for all samples $x,y=0..7$ is 128.

8.5.3.4 Mode 3: plane prediction

For the plane mode, the prediction is formed as:

$$\text{Pred}(i,j) = \text{Clip1}((a + b \cdot (i-3) + c \cdot (j-3) + 16) \gg 5), i, j=0, \dots, 7 \quad (8-34)$$

where:

$$a = 16 \cdot (P(-1,7) + P(7,-1)) \quad (8-35)$$

$$b = (17 \cdot H + 16) \gg 5 \quad (8-36)$$

$$c = (17 \cdot V + 16) \gg 5 \quad (8-37)$$

and H and V are defined as:

$$H = \sum_{i=1}^4 i \cdot (P(3+i,-1) - P(3-i,-1)) \quad (8-38)$$

$$V = \sum_{j=1}^4 j \cdot (P(-1,3+j) - P(-1,3-j)) \quad (8-39)$$

8.6 Transform coefficient decoding and picture construction prior to deblocking

This subclause defines aspects related to transform coefficient decoding.

8.6.1 Zig-zag scan

The decoder maps the sequence of transform coefficient levels to the transform coefficient level positions. For this mapping, the scanning pattern is shown in Figure 8-12.

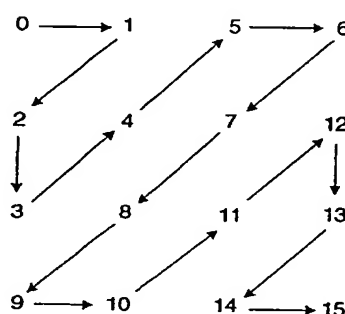


Figure 8-12 – Zig-zag scan

In the case of 16x16 intra macroblocks, the coefficients of the 4x4 luma DC transform are scanned in the same scan order as ordinary 4x4 coefficient blocks. Then for each 4x4 block of luma coefficients with AC coefficients to scan, the 15 remaining coefficients are scanned by starting the zig-zag scan at its second position.

The coefficients of the 2x2 chroma DC transform are scanned in raster order. Then for each 4x4 block of chroma coefficients with AC coefficients to scan, the 15 remaining coefficients are scanned by starting the zig-zag scan at its second position.

If `adaptive_block_size_transform_flag` == 1, 4x4, 4x8, 8x4, and 8x8 luma coefficient blocks are scanned using zig-zag scans and field scans as specified in subclause 12.4.2.

8.6.2 Scaling and transformation

There are 52 different values of QP values that are used, ranging from 0 to 51, inclusive. The value of QP_C for chroma is determined from the current value of QP_Y . The scaling equations are defined such that the equivalent scaling parameter doubles for every increment of 6 in QP. Thus, there is an increase in scaling magnitude of approximately 12% from one QP to the next.

The value of QP_C shall be determined from the value of QP_Y as specified in Table 8-2:

Table 8-2 – Specification of QP_C as a function of QP_Y

QP_Y	<30	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50	51
QP_C	= QP_Y	29	30	31	32	32	33	34	34	35	35	36	36	37	37	37	38	38	38	39	39	39	39

QP_Y shall be used as the QP to be applied for luma scaling and QP_C shall be used for chroma scaling.

The coefficients $R_{ij}^{(m)}$ defined in Equation 8-40 are used in Equations 8-43, 8-44, 8-46, 8-47 and 8-48.

$$R_{ij}^{(m)} = \begin{cases} V_{m0} & \text{for } (i, j) \in \{(0,0), (0,2), (2,0), (2,2)\}, \\ V_{m1} & \text{for } (i, j) \in \{(1,1), (1,3), (3,1), (3,3)\}, \\ V_{m2} & \text{otherwise;} \end{cases} \quad (8-40)$$

where the first and second subscripts of V are row and column indices, respectively, of the matrix defined as:

$$V = \begin{bmatrix} 10 & 16 & 13 \\ 11 & 18 & 14 \\ 13 & 20 & 16 \\ 14 & 23 & 18 \\ 16 & 25 & 20 \\ 18 & 29 & 23 \end{bmatrix} \quad (8-41)$$

8.6.2.1 Luma DC coefficients in Intra 16x16 macroblock

After decoding the coefficient levels for a 4x4 block of luma DC coefficients coded in 16x16 intra mode and assembling these into a 4x4 matrix C of elements c_{ij} , a transform process shall be applied in a manner mathematically equivalent to the following process. The process uses application of a transform before the scaling process.

The transform for the 4x4 luma DC coefficients in 16x16 intra macroblocks is defined by:

$$F = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} c_{00} & c_{01} & c_{02} & c_{03} \\ c_{10} & c_{11} & c_{12} & c_{13} \\ c_{20} & c_{21} & c_{22} & c_{23} \\ c_{30} & c_{31} & c_{32} & c_{33} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (8-42)$$

A bitstream conforming to this Recommendation | International Standard shall not contain indicated data that results in any element of F that exceeds the range of integer values from -2^{15} to $2^{15}-1$, inclusive.

After the transform, scaling is performed according to the following:

- a) If QP is greater than or equal to 12, then the scaled result shall be calculated as

$$DC_{ij} = [F_{ij} \cdot R_{00}^{(QP \% 6)}] \ll (QP/6 - 2), \quad i, j = 0, \dots, 3. \quad (8-43)$$

- b) If QP is less than 12, then the scaled results shall be calculated as

$$DC_{ij} = [F_{ij} \cdot R_{00}^{(QP \% 6)} + 2^{1-QP/6}] \gg (2 - QP/6), \quad i, j = 0, \dots, 3. \quad (8-44)$$

A bitstream conforming to this Recommendation | International Standard shall not contain data that results in element of DC_{ij} that exceeds the range of integer values from -2^{15} to $2^{15}-1$, inclusive.

8.6.2.2 Chroma DC coefficients

After decoding the coefficient levels for a 2x2 block of chroma DC coefficients and assembling these into a 2x2 matrix C of elements c_{ij} , the transform process is applied before the scaling process.

Definition of transform:

$$F = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} c_{00} & c_{01} \\ c_{10} & c_{11} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (8-45)$$

A bitstream conforming to this Recommendation | International Standard shall not contain indicated data that results in any element of F that exceeds the range of integer values from -2^{15} to $2^{15}-1$, inclusive.

After the transform, scaling is performed according to the following.

- a) If QP is greater than or equal to 6, then the scaling result shall be calculated as

$$DC_{ij} = [F_{ij} \cdot R_{00}^{(QP \% 6)}] \ll (QP/6 - 1), \quad i, j = 0, \dots, 3. \quad (8-46)$$

- b) If QP is less than 6, then the scaling results shall be calculated by

$$DC_{ij} = [F_{ij} \cdot R_{00}^{(QP \% 6)}] \gg 1, \quad i, j = 0, \dots, 3. \quad (8-47)$$

A bitstream conforming to this Recommendation | International Standard shall not contain indicated data that results in any element of DC_{ij} that exceeds the range of integer values from -2^{15} to $2^{15}-1$, inclusive.

8.6.2.3 Residual 4x4 blocks

Scaling of 4x4 block coefficient levels c_{ij} other than those as specified in subclauses 8.6.2.1 and 8.6.2.2 shall be performed according to Equation 8-48

$$w_{ij} = [c_{ij} \cdot R_{ij}^{(QP \% 6)}] \ll (QP/6), \quad i, j = 0, \dots, 3. \quad (8-48)$$

A bitstream conforming to this Recommendation | International Standard shall not contain indicated data that results in a value of w_{ij} that exceeds the range of integer values from -2^{15} to $2^{15}-1$, inclusive.

After constructing an entire 4x4 block of scaled transform coefficients and assembling these into a 4x4 matrix W of elements w_{ij} illustrated as

$$W = \begin{bmatrix} w_{00} & w_{01} & w_{02} & w_{03} \\ w_{10} & w_{11} & w_{12} & w_{13} \\ w_{20} & w_{21} & w_{22} & w_{23} \\ w_{30} & w_{31} & w_{32} & w_{33} \end{bmatrix} \quad (8-49)$$

in which the w_{00} element may be a result DC_{ij} from Equation 8-43, 8-44, 8-46, or 8-47; or may be from Equation 8-48, as appropriate, the transform process shall convert the block of reconstructed transform coefficients to a block of output samples in a manner mathematically equivalent to the following process:

- First, each row of reconstructed transform coefficients is transformed using a one-dimensional transform, and
- Second, each column of the resulting matrix is transformed using the same one-dimensional transform.

The one-dimensional transform is defined as follows for four input samples w_0, w_1, w_2, w_3 .

- a) First, a set of intermediate values is computed:

$$z_0 = w_0 + w_2 \quad (8-50)$$

$$z_1 = w_0 - w_2 \quad (8-51)$$

$$z_2 = (w_1 \gg 1) - w_3 \quad (8-52)$$

$$z_3 = w_1 + (w_3 \gg 1) \quad (8-53)$$

- b) Then the transformed result is computed from these intermediate values

$$x_0 = z_0 + z_3 \quad (8-54)$$

$$x_1 = z_1 + z_2 \quad (8-55)$$

$$x_2 = z_1 - z_2 \quad (8-56)$$

$$x_3 = z_0 - z_3 \quad (8-57)$$

A bitstream conforming to this Recommendation | International Standard shall not contain indicated data that results in a value of $z_0, z_1, z_2, z_3, x_0, x_1, x_2$, or x_3 that exceeds the range of integer values from -2^{15} to $2^{15}-1$, inclusive, in either the first (horizontal) or second (vertical) stage of application of this transformation process. A bitstream conforming to this Recommendation | International Standard shall not contain indicated data that results in a value of x_0, x_1, x_2 , or x_3 that exceeds the range of integer values from -2^{15} to $2^{15}-33$, inclusive, in the second (vertical) stage of application of this transformation process.

After performing the transform in both the horizontal and vertical directions to produce a block of transformed samples,

$$X' = \begin{bmatrix} x'_{00} & x'_{01} & x'_{02} & x'_{03} \\ x'_{10} & x'_{11} & x'_{12} & x'_{13} \\ x'_{20} & x'_{21} & x'_{22} & x'_{23} \\ x'_{30} & x'_{31} & x'_{32} & x'_{33} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (8-58)$$

the final reconstructed sample residual values shall be obtained as

$$X''_{ij} = [x'_{ij} + 2^5] \gg 6 \quad (8-59)$$

If `adaptive_block_size_transform_flag` == 1, scaling and inverse transform for 4x8, 8x4, and 8x8 coefficient blocks is specified in subclause 12.4.3.

8.6.3 Adding decoded samples to prediction with clipping

Finally, the reconstructed sample residual values X'' from Equation 8-59 are added to the prediction values P_{ij} from motion compensated prediction or spatial prediction and clipped to the range of 0 to 255 to form the final decoded sample result prior to application of the deblocking filter:

$$S'_{ij} = \text{Clip1}(P_{ij} + X''_{ij}) \quad (8-60)$$

8.7 Deblocking Filter

A conditional filtering shall be applied to all macroblocks of a picture. This filtering is done on a macroblock basis, with macroblocks being processed in raster-scan order throughout the picture. For luma, as the first step, the 16 samples of the 4 vertical edges of the 4x4 raster shall be filtered beginning with the left edge, as shown in Figure 8-13. Filtering of the 4 horizontal edges (vertical filtering) follows in the same manner, beginning with the top edge. The same ordering applies for chroma filtering, with the exception that 2 edges of 8 samples each are filtered in each direction. This process also affects the boundaries of the already reconstructed macroblocks above and to the left of the current macroblock. Picture edges are not filtered.

When `mb_adaptive_frame_field_flag` = 1, a MB may be coded in frame or field decoding mode. For frame MB, deblocking is performed on the frame samples. In this case, if neighbouring MB pairs are field MBs, they shall be converted into frame MB pairs (Figure 8-3) before deblocking. For field MB, deblocking is performed on the field samples of the same field parity. In this case, if neighbouring MB pairs are frame MBs, they shall be converted into field MB pairs (Figure 8-3) before deblocking.

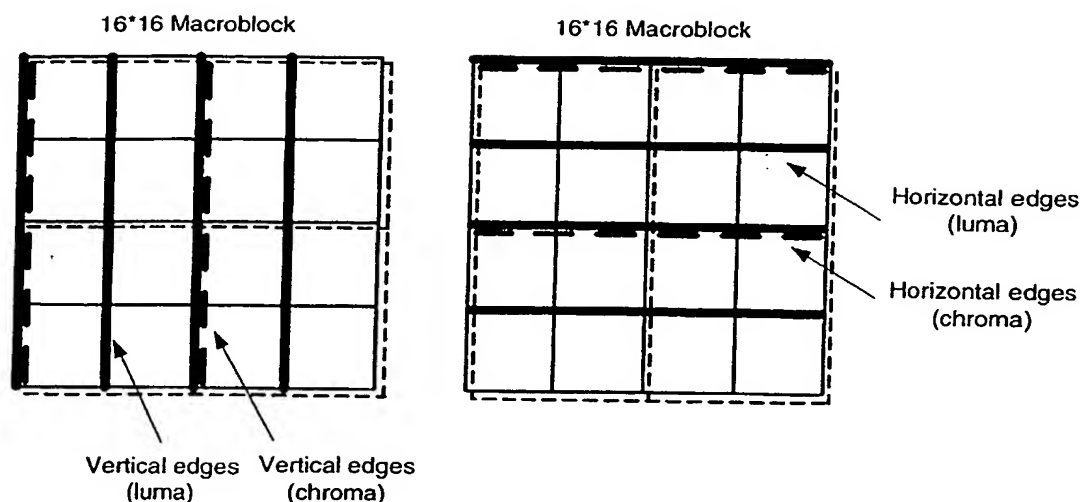


Figure 8-13 – Boundaries in a macroblock to be filtered (luma boundaries shown with solid lines and chroma boundaries shown with dotted lines)

Intra prediction of a macroblock shall be done using the unfiltered content of the already decoded neighbouring macroblocks. Depending on the implementation, the values necessary for intra prediction may need to be stored before filtering in order to be used in the intra prediction of the macroblocks to the right and below the current macroblock.

When `pic_structure` indicates a field picture all decoding operations for the deblocking filter are based solely on samples within the current field.

8.7.1 Content dependent boundary filtering strength

For each boundary between neighbouring 4x4 luma blocks, a “Boundary Strength” B_s is assigned as shown in Figure 8-14. If $B_s=0$, filtering is skipped for that particular edge. In all other cases filtering is dependent on the local sample properties and the value of B_s for this particular boundary segment.

For each edge, if one of the neighbouring blocks is intra-coded, a relatively strong filtering ($B_s=3$) is applied. A special procedure with even stronger filtering might be applied on intra-coded macroblock boundaries ($B_s=4$). If neither of the blocks are intra-coded and at least one of them contains non-zero coefficients, medium filtering strength ($B_s=2$) is used. If none of the previous conditions are satisfied, filtering takes place with $B_s=1$ if at least one of the following conditions is satisfied: (a) prediction of the two blocks is formed using different reference frames or a different number of reference frames. (b) a pair of motion vectors from the two blocks is referencing the same frame and either component of this pair has a difference of more than one sample. Otherwise filtering is skipped for that particular edge ($B_s=0$).

Figure 8-14 – Flow chart for determining the boundary strength (Bs), for the block boundary between two neighbouring blocks p and q, where $V_1(p,x)$, $V_1(p,y)$ and $V_2(p, x)$, $V_2(p, y)$ are the horizontal and vertical components of the motion vectors of block p for the first and second reference frames or fields.

8.7.2 Thresholds for each block boundary

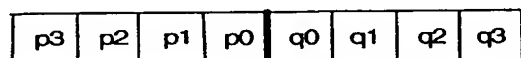


Figure 8-15 – Convention for describing samples across a 4x4 block horizontal or vertical boundary

In the following description, the set of eight samples across a 4x4 block horizontal or vertical boundary is denoted as shown in Figure 8-15 with the actual boundary lying between p_0 and q_0 . Uppercase letters indicate filtered samples and lower case letters indicate unfiltered samples with regard to the current edge filtering operation. However, p_1 and p_2 may indicate samples that have been modified by the filtering of a previous block edge.

Sets of samples across this edge are only filtered if the condition

$$Bs \neq 0 \ \&\& \ |p_0 - q_0| < \alpha \ \&\& \ |p_1 - p_0| < \beta \ \&\& \ |q_1 - q_0| < \beta \quad (8-61)$$

is true. The values of the thresholds α and β are dependent on the average value of QP for the two blocks as well as on a pair of index offsets "Filter_Offset_A" and "Filter_Offset_B" that may be transmitted in the slice header for the purpose of modifying the characteristics of the filter. The average QP value for the two blocks is computed as $QP_{av} = (QP_p + QP_q) >> 1$. The index used to access the α -table (Table 8-3), as well as the C0-table (Table 8-4) that is used in the default filter mode, is computed as:

$$\text{Index}_A = \text{Clip3}(0, 51, \text{QP}_{av} + \text{Filter_Offset_A}) \quad (8-62)$$

NOTE - In SP and SI slices, QP_{av} is calculated in the same way as in other slice types. QS_Y from Equation 7-8 is not used in the deblocking filter.

The index used to access the β -table (Table 8-3) is computed as:

$$\text{Index}_B = \text{Clip3}(0, 51, \text{QP}_{av} + \text{Filter_Offset_B}) \quad (8-63)$$

If $\text{adaptive_block_size_transform_flag} == 1$, Index_A and Index_B are calculated as specified in subclause 12.4.4.

The relationships between the indices (Equations 8-62 and 8-63) and the thresholds (α and β) are shown in Table 8-3.

Table 8-3 – QP_{av} and offset dependent threshold parameters α and β

	Index _A (for α) or Index _B (for β)																									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25
α	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	4	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	12	13	
β	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	2	2	3	3	3	3	4	4	4	4

Table 8-3 (concluded)

	Index _A (for α) or Index _B (for β)																									
	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50	51
α	15	17	20	22	25	28	32	36	40	45	50	56	63	71	80	90	101	113	127	144	162	182	203	226	255	255
β	6	6	7	7	8	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	15	16	16	17	17	18	18

8.7.3 Filtering of edges with $B_s < 4$

Two types of filtering are defined. In the default case with $0 < B < 4$, Equations 8-64, 8-65 and 8-66 are used to filter p_0 and q_0 :

$$\Delta = \text{Clip3}(-C, C, (((q_0 - p_0) << 2 + (p_1 - q_1) + 4) >> 3)) \quad (8-64)$$

$$P_0 = \text{Clip1}(p_0 + \Delta) \quad (8-65)$$

$$Q_0 = \text{Clip1}(q_0 - \Delta) \quad (8-66)$$

where C is determined as specified below.

The two intermediate threshold variables

$$a_p = |p_2 - p_0| \quad (8-67)$$

$$a_q = |q_2 - q_0| \quad (8-68)$$

shall be used to determine whether filtering for the luma samples p_1 and q_1 is taking place at this position of the edge.

If $a_p < \beta$ for a luma edge, a filtered sample P_1 shall be produced as specified by

$$P_1 = p_1 + \text{Clip3}(-C_0, C_0, (p_2 + (p_0 + q_0) >> 1 - (p_1 < 1)) >> 1) \quad (8-69)$$

If $a_q < \beta$ for a luma edge, a filtered sample Q_1 shall be produced as specified by

$$Q_1 = q_1 + \text{Clip3}(-C_0, C_0, (q_2 + (p_0 + q_0) \gg 1 - (q_1 < 1) \gg 1)) \quad (8-70)$$

where C_0 is specified in Table 8-4. Chroma samples p_1 and q_1 are never filtered.

C is determined by setting it equal to C_0 and then incrementing it by one if $a_p < \beta$, and again by one if $a_q < \beta$.

Table 8-4 – Value of filter clipping parameter C_0 as a function of Index_A and B_s

	Index _A																									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25
B _s = 1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1
B _s = 2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1
B _s = 3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Table 8-4 (concluded)

	Index _A																									
	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50	51
B _s = 1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	2	2	2	3	3	3	4	4	4	5	6	6	7	8	9	10	11	13
B _s = 2	1	1	1	1	1	2	2	2	2	3	3	3	4	4	5	5	6	7	8	8	10	11	12	13	15	17
B _s = 3	1	2	2	2	2	3	3	3	4	4	4	5	6	6	7	8	9	10	11	13	14	16	18	20	23	25

8.7.4 Filtering of edges with $B_s = 4$

When B_s is equal to 4 and the following condition holds:

$$a_p < \beta \ \&\& \ |p_0 - q_0| < ((\alpha \gg 2) + 2) \quad (8-71)$$

filtering of the left/upper side of the block edge is specified by Equations 8-72 and 8-73.

$$P_0 = (p_2 + 2*p_1 + 2*p_0 + 2*q_0 + q_1 + 4) \gg 3 \quad (8-72)$$

$$P_1 = (p_2 + p_1 + p_0 + q_0 + 2) \gg 2 \quad (8-73)$$

In the case of luma filtering, the filter in Equation 8-74 is also applied.

$$P_2 = (2*p_3 + 3*p_2 + p_1 + p_0 + q_0 + 4) \gg 3 \quad (8-74)$$

Otherwise, if the condition of 8-71 does not hold, the filter in Equation 8-75 is applied.

$$P_0 = (2*p_1 + p_0 + q_1 + 2) \gg 2 \quad (8-75)$$

Similarly, for filtering of the right/lower side of the edge, if the following condition holds:

$$a_q < \beta \ \&\& \ |p_0 - q_0| < ((\alpha \gg 2) + 2) \quad (8-76)$$

filtering is defined by Equations 8-77 and 8-78.

$$Q_0 = (p_1 + 2*p_0 + 2*q_0 + 2*q_1 + q_2 + 4) \gg 3 \quad (8-77)$$

$$Q_1 = (p_0 + q_0 + q_1 + q_2 + 2) \gg 2 \quad (8-78)$$

In the case of luma filtering, the filter in Equation 8-79 is also applied.

$$Q_2 = (2*q_3 + 3*q_2 + q_1 + q_0 + p_0 + 4) \gg 3 \quad (8-79)$$

Otherwise, if the condition of 8-76 does not hold, the filter in Equation 8-80 is applied:

$$Q_0 = (2*q_1 + q_0 + p_1 + 2) \gg 2 \quad (8-80)$$

9 Entropy Coding

9.1 Variable Length Coding

9.1.1 Exp-Golomb entropy coding

The table of Exp-Golomb codewords is written in the following compressed form.

```

1
0 1 x0
0 0 1 x1 x0
0 0 0 1 x2 x1 x0
0 0 0 0 1 x3 x2 x1 x0
.....

```

where x_n take values 0 or 1. A codeword can be referred by its length in bits ($L = 2n - 1$) and $INFO = x_n, \dots, x_1, x_0$. Notice that the number of bits in $INFO$ is $n - 1$ bits. The codewords are numbered from 0 and upwards. The definition of the numbering is:

$Code_num = 2^{L/2} + INFO - 1$ ($L/2$ denotes division with truncation and $INFO = 0$ when $L = 1$). The first 10 code numbers and codewords are specified explicitly in Table 9-1. As an example, for the code number 5, $L = 5$ and $INFO = 10$ (binary) = 2 (decimal).

Table 9-1 – Code number and Exp-Golomb codewords in explicit form and used as $ue(v)$

Code_num	Code word
0	1
1	0 1 0
2	0 1 1
3	0 0 1 0 0
4	0 0 1 0 1
5	0 0 1 1 0
6	0 0 1 1 1
7	0 0 0 1 0 0 0
8	0 0 0 1 0 0 1
9	0 0 0 1 0 1 0

When L ($L = 2N - 1$) and $INFO$ is known, the regular structure of the table makes it possible to create a codeword using the structure of the table. A decoder shall decode a codeword by reading in N bit prefix followed by $N - 1$ $INFO$. L and

INFO are then available. For each parameter to be coded, there is a conversion rule from the parameter value to the code number (or L and INFO).

9.1.2 Unsigned Exp-Golomb entropy coding

The value of syntax elements that are represented by unsigned Exp-Golomb entropy coding directly corresponds to the code_num value of Table 9-1. This type of entropy coding is indicated via ue(v).

9.1.3 Signed Exp-Golomb entropy coding

The syntax elements that are represented by signed Exp-Golomb entropy coding are assigned to the code_num by ordering using their absolute values in increasing order and representing the positive value with the lower code_num. Table 9-2 provides the assignment rule.

Table 9-2 – Assignment of symbol values and code_nums for signed Exp-Golomb entropy coding se(v)

Code number	Symbol value
0	0
1	1
2	-1
3	2
4	-2
5	3
6	-3
7	4
8	-4
9	5
10	-5
k	$(-1)^{k+1} \text{Ceil}(k/2)$

This type of entropy coding is denoted as se(v).

9.1.4 Mapped Exp-Golomb entropy coding

Table 9-3 specifies the assignment of all mapped Exp-Golomb-coded slice data symbols. This type of entropy coding is indicated via me(v). These symbols are decoded differently when entropy_coding_mode == 1.

If adaptive_block_size_transform_flag == 1, additional syntax elements are mapped to the Exp-Golomb code as specified in Table 12-5.

Table 9-3 – Assignment of codeword number and parameter values for mapped Exp-Golomb-coded symbols

Code number	coded_block_pattern assignment to macroblock prediction types		Tcoeff_chroma_DC1		Tcoeff_chroma_AC1	
	Intra, SIntra	Pred, SPred	Level	Run	Tcoeff_luma1 Zig-zag scan	
0	47	0	EOB	-	EOB	-
1	31	16	1	0	1	0
2	15	1	-1	0	-1	0
3	0	2	2	0	1	1

4	23	4	-2	0	-1	1
5	27	8	1	1	1	2
6	29	32	-1	1	-1	2
7	30	3	3	0	2	0
8	7	5	-3	0	-2	0
9	11	10	2	1	1	3
10	13	12	-2	1	-1	3
11	14	15	1	2	1	4
12	39	47	-1	2	-1	4
13	43	7	1	3	1	5
14	45	11	-1	3	-1	5
15	46	13	4	0	3	0
16	16	14	-4	0	-3	0
17	3	6	3	1	2	1
18	5	9	-3	1	-2	1
19	10	31	2	2	2	2
20	12	35	-2	2	-2	2
21	19	37	2	3	1	6
22	21	42	-2	3	-1	6
23	26	44	5	0	1	7
24	28	33	-5	0	-1	7
25	35	34	4	1	1	8
26	37	36	-4	1	-1	8
27	42	40	3	2	1	9
28	44	39	-3	2	-1	9
29	1	43	3	3	4	0
30	2	45	-3	3	-4	0
31	4	46	6	0	5	0
32	8	17	-6	0	-5	0
33	17	18	5	1	3	1
34	18	20	-5	1	-3	1
35	20	24	4	2	3	2
36	24	19	-4	2	-3	2
37	6	21	4	3	2	3
38	9	26	-4	3	-2	3
39	22	28	7	0	2	4
40	25	23	-7	0	-2	4

41	32	27	6	1	2	5
42	33	29	-6	1	-2	5
43	34	30	5	2	2	6
44	36	22	-5	2	-2	6
45	40	25	5	3	2	7
46	38	38	-5	3	-2	7
47	41	41	8	0	2	8
K	-	-	see below	see below	see below	see below

For the entries above the horizontal line, the table is needed for relation between code number and Level/Run/EOB. For the remaining Level/Run combination there is a simple rule. The Level/Run combinations are assigned a code number according to the following priority: 1) sign of Level (+ -) 2) Run (ascending) 3) absolute value of Level (ascending).

9.1.5 Entropy coding for Intra

In intra mode, prediction is always used for each sub block in a macroblock.

9.1.5.1 Coding of Intra 4x4 and SIIntra 4x4 prediction modes

The chosen intra-prediction mode (`intra_pred_mode`) of a 4x4 block is highly correlated with the prediction modes of adjacent blocks. This is illustrated in Figure 9-1. When the prediction modes of A and B are known (including the case that A or B or both are outside the slice) the most probable mode (`most_probable_mode`) of C is given. If one of the blocks A or B is "outside" the most probable mode is equal to prediction mode 2. Otherwise it is equal to the minimum of modes used for blocks A and B. When an adjacent block is coded by 16x16 intra mode, prediction mode is "mode 2: DC prediction"; when it is coded a non-intra macroblock, prediction mode is "mode 2: DC prediction" in the usual case and "outside" in the case of constrained intra update.

To signal prediction mode number for a 4x4 block first parameter `use_most_probable_mode` is transmitted. This parameter is represented by 1 bit codeword and can take values 0 or 1. If `use_most_probable_mode` is equal to 1 the most probable mode is used. Otherwise an additional parameter `remaining_mode_selector`, which can take value from 0 to 7 is sent as 3 bit codeword. The codeword is a binary representation of `remaining_mode_selector` value. The prediction mode number is calculated as:

if (`remaining_mode_selector < most_probable_mode`)

`intra_pred_mode = remaining_mode_selector;`

else

`intra_pred_mode = remaining_mode_selector+1;`

The ordering of prediction modes assigned to blocks C is therefore the most probable mode followed by the remaining modes in the ascending order.

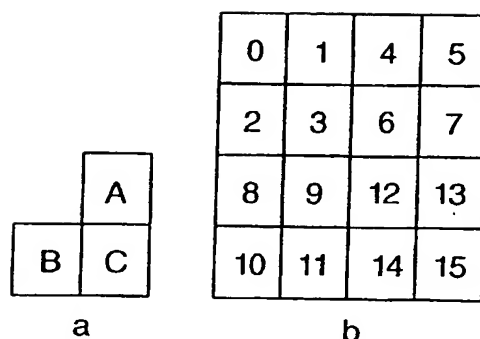


Figure 9-1 – a) Prediction mode of block C to be established, where A and B are adjacent blocks. b) order of intra prediction information in the bitstream

9.1.5.2 Coding of mode information for Intra-16x16 mode

Three numbers are specified at the end of the names of Intra-16x16 modes as defined in Table 7-10 as a function of *mb_type*. The first of these numbers is termed *Imode* and ranges from 0 to 3, inclusive. The second is termed *nc* and contains the coded_block_pattern bits for chroma as specified in subclause 9.2.1.6. The third and final of these numbers is termed *ac_flag*. *ac_flag* equal to zero indicates that there are no AC coefficients in the 16x16 block. *ac_flag* equal to 1 indicates that at least one AC coefficient is present for the 16x16 block, requiring scanning of AC coefficient values for all 16 of the 4x4 blocks in the 16x16 block.

9.1.6 Context-based adaptive variable length coding (CAVLC) of transform coefficients

CAVLC (Context-based Adaptive VLC) is the method used for decoding of transform coefficients. The following coding elements are used:

1. If there are non-zero coefficients, it is typically observed that there is a string of coefficients at the highest frequencies that are ± 1 . The coding element *coeff_token* gives the total number of coefficients (from now referred to as *TotalCoeffs*) and also contains the number of "Trailing 1s" (from now referred to as *T1s*).
2. For *T1s* the sign is decoded from *trailing_ones_sign* and the level magnitude is 1.
3. For coefficients other than the *T1s*, level information is decoded from *coeff_level*.
4. The Run information is decoded. Since the number of coefficients is already known, this limits possible values for Run. Run is split into the Total number of zeros before all coefficients and Run before each non-zero coefficient, given by *total_zeros* and *run_before*.

Zig-zag scanning as described in subclause 9.4.1 is used, but in the decoding of coefficient data, both levels and runs, the scanning is done in reverse order. Therefore the signs of *T1s* are decoded first (in reverse order), then the Level information of the last coefficient in the zig-zag scan order not included in the *T1s*, and so on. Run information is decoded similarly. First Total number of zeros in Runs is decoded, followed by Run before the last nonzero coefficient in the zig-zag scan order, and so on.

If *adaptive_block_size_transform_flag* == 1, the VLC method for decoding 4x4, 4x8, 8x4, and 8x8 luma coefficient blocks is specified in subclause 12.5.1.

9.1.6.1 Entropy decoding of the number of coefficients and trailing ones: *coeff_token*

The syntax element *coeff_token* is decoded using the VLC specified in Tables 9-4 to 9-7.

Four VLC tables are used for combined decoding of number of coefficients and *T1s*, i.e. one codeword signals both parameters. VLCs are listed in the tables below. *T1s* is clipped to 3. Any remaining trailing 1s are decoded as normal levels. The variable *TotalCoeff* is the value returned by the function *total_coeff()*; the variable *T1s* is the value returned by the function *trailing_ones()*; and the variable *NumCoeff* related to these quantities by *TotalCoeff*-*T1s*.

Table 9-4 – *coeff_token*: *total_coeff()* / *trailing_ones()*: Num-VLC0

<i>trailing_ones()</i>	0	1	2	3

total_coeff()				
0	1	-	-	-
1	000101	01	-	-
2	00000111	000100	001	-
3	000000111	00000110	0000101	00011
4	0000000111	000000110	00000101	000011
5	00000000111	0000000110	000000101	0000100
6	0000000001111	00000000110	0000000101	00000100
7	0000000001011	0000000001110	00000000101	000000100
8	0000000001000	0000000001010	0000000001101	0000000100
9	00000000001111	00000000001110	0000000001001	00000000100
10	00000000001011	00000000001010	00000000001101	0000000001100
11	000000000001111	000000000001110	00000000001001	00000000001100
12	000000000001011	000000000001010	000000000001101	00000000001000
13	0000000000001111	0000000000000001	000000000001001	000000000001100
14	0000000000001011	0000000000001110	0000000000001101	000000000001000
15	0000000000000111	0000000000001010	0000000000001001	0000000000001100
16	0000000000000100	000000000000110	000000000000101	0000000000001000

Table 9-5 – coeff_token: total_coeff() / trailing_ones(): Num-VLC1

trailing_ones()	0	1	2	3
total_coeff()				
0	11	-	-	-
1	001011	10	-	-
2	000111	00111	011	-
3	0000111	001010	001001	0101
4	00000111	000110	000101	0100
5	00000100	0000110	0000101	00110
6	000000111	00000110	00000101	001000
7	0000000111	000000110	000000101	000100
8	00000001011	00000001110	00000001101	0000100
9	000000001111	000000001010	000000001001	000000100
10	000000001011	000000001110	000000001101	00000001100
11	000000001000	000000001010	000000001001	00000001000
12	0000000001111	0000000001110	0000000001101	000000001100
13	0000000001011	0000000001010	0000000001001	0000000001100

14	0000000000111	00000000001011	0000000000110	0000000001000
15	00000000001001	00000000001000	00000000001010	00000000000001
16	00000000000111	00000000000110	00000000000101	00000000000100

Table 9-6 – coeff_token: total_coeff() / trailing_ones(): Num-VLC2

trailing_ones()	0	1	2	3
total_coeff()				
0	1111	-	-	-
1	001111	1110	-	-
2	001011	01111	1101	-
3	001000	01100	01110	1100
4	0001111	01010	01011	1011
5	0001011	01000	01001	1010
6	0001001	001110	001101	1001
7	0001000	001010	001001	1000
8	00001111	0001110	0001101	01101
9	00001011	00001110	0001010	001100
10	000001111	00001010	00001101	0001100
11	000001011	000001110	00001001	00001100
12	000001000	000001010	000001101	00001000
13	0000001101	000000111	000001001	000001100
14	0000001001	0000001100	0000001011	0000001010
15	0000000101	0000001000	0000000111	0000000110
16	0000000001	0000000100	0000000011	0000000010

Table 9-7 – coeff_token: total_coeff() / trailing_ones(): Num-VLC_Chroma_DC

trailing_ones()	0	1	2	3
total_coeff()				
0	01	-	-	-
1	000111	1	-	-
2	000100	000110	001	-
3	000011	0000011	0000010	000101

9.1.6.2 Table selection

For all elements, except chroma DC, a choice between three tables and one FLC is made. N is a value used for Table selection. Selection is done as follows: N is calculated based on the number of coefficients in the block above and to the left of the current block: N_U and N_L . In the table below, X means that the block is available in the same slice. The block's coding mode is not taken into account when determining availability. When finding the block above and to the left for a block of Intra16x16 DC coefficients, the location of the block is assumed to be (0,0), i.e. the upper left corner of the macroblock.

Tabl 9-8 – Calculation of N for Num-VLCN

Upper block (N_U)	Left block (N_L)	N
X	X	$(N_L + N_U)/2$
X		N_U
	X	N_L
		0

$0 \leq N < 2$: Num-VLC0

$2 \leq N < 4$: Num-VLC1

$4 \leq N < 8$: Num-VLC2

$N \geq 8$: 6 bit FLC xxxxyy, as follows:

As a part of the coeff_token, TotalCoeff-1 is transmitted in the first 4 bits (xxxx) and T1s is transmitted as the last 2 bits (yy). There is one exception: the codeword 000011 represents TotalCoeff=0.

For chroma DC, Num-VLC_Chroma_DC is used.

9.1.6.3 Decoding of level information: coeff_level

First, the sign of T1s are decoded from 1 bit each of trailing_ones_sign. A maximum of 3 bits are read.

For the remaining level information, seven structured VLCs are used to decode levels. The structured level tables are explained in Tables 9-9 to 9-15. Lev-VLC0 has its own structure while the other tables, Lev-VLCN, $N = 1$ to 6, share a common structure.

Table 9-9 – Level tables

Lev-VLC0		
Code no	Code	LevelCode ($\pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$)
0	1	1
1	01	-1
2	001	2
3	0001	-2
..
13	00000000000001	-7
14-29	00000000000001xxxx	± 8 to ± 15
30->	000000000000001xxxxxxxxxxxxx	± 16 ->

For Lev-VLCN, $N = 1$ to 6, the following structure is used:

let level_code be the level information to be decoded from the VLC tables,

if $(|level_code|-1) < (15 \ll (N-1))$,

Code: 0...01x...xs,

where number of 0's = $(|level_code|-1) \gg (N-1)$,

number of x's = $N-1$,

value of x's = $(|level_code|-1) \% 2^{(N-1)}$,

s = sign bit (0 – positive, 1 – negative)

else,

28-bit escape code: 0000 0000 0000 0001 xxxx xxxx xxxs,
 where value of x's = $(|level_code|-1) - (15 < (N-1))$,
 s = sign bit (0 – positive, 1 – negative)

Table 9-10 – Level VLC1

Lev-VLC1		
Code no	Code	LevelCode ($\pm 1, \pm 2..$)
0-1	1s	± 1
2-3	01s	± 2
..
28-43	000000000000001s	± 15
44 ->	0000000000000001xxxxxxxxxxxs	$\pm 16 ->$

Table 9-11 – Level VLC2

Lev-VLC2		
Code no	Code	LevelCode ($\pm 1, \pm 2..$)
0-3	1xs	± 1 to ± 2
4-7	01xs	± 3 to ± 4
..	..s	..
56-71	0000000000000001xs	± 29 to ± 30
72 ->	00000000000000001xxxxxxxxxxxs	$\pm 31 ->$

Table 9-12 – Level VLC3

Lev-VLC3		
Code no	Code	LevelCode ($\pm 1, \pm 2..$)
0-7	1xxs	± 1 to ± 4
8-16	01xxs	± 5 to ± 8
..
112-127	0000000000000001xxs	± 57 to ± 60
128 ->	00000000000000001xxxxxxxxxxxs	$\pm 61 ->$

Table 9-13 – Level VLC4

Lev-VLC4		
Code no	Code	LevelCode ($\pm 1, \pm 2..$)
0-7	1xxxxs	± 1 to ± 8
8-16	01xxxxs	± 9 to ± 16
..
112-127	000000000000001xxxxs	± 113 to ± 120
128 ->	0000000000000001xxxxxxxxxxxxxs	± 121 ->

Table 9-14 – Level VLC5

Lev-VLC5		
Code no	Code	LevelCode ($\pm 1, \pm 2..$)
0-7	1xxxxxs	± 1 to ± 16
8-16	01xxxxxs	± 17 to ± 32
..
112-127	0000000000000001xxxxxs	± 225 to ± 240
128 ->	00000000000000001xxxxxxxxxxxxxs	± 241 ->

Table 9-15 – Level VLC6

Lev-VLC6		
Code no	Code no	LevelCode ($\pm 1, \pm 2..$)
0-15	1xxxxxs	± 1 to ± 32
8-16	01 xxxxs	± 33 to ± 64
..
112-127	0000000000000001xxxxxs	± 449 to ± 480
128 ->	00000000000000001xxxxxxxxxxxxxs	± 481 ->

Normally all coefficient levels (coeff_level) are equal to the decoded LevelCode value given in Tables 9-9 to 9-15. However, when T1s is less than 3, the level of the first coefficient (after T1s) is equal to the decoded LevelCode plus 1:

```

If (first coefficient && trailing_ones() < 3)
    coeff_level = (|level_code| + 1) * sign(level_code)
else
    coeff_level = level_code

```

The last two entries in Lev-VLC0 table are escape codes. The first escape code with 19 bits, four “x”’s, is used to decode the 8 levels above the last regularly coded level. The next escape code with 28-bits, 12 “x”’s, is used to decode all remaining levels. For Lev-VLC1 to Lev-VLC6 tables, only the 28-bit escape code is used.

9.1.6.3 Table selection

Selections of the tables are changed during the decoding process based on number of coefficients, number of trailing ones, and the size of the previously decoded level value (coeff_level).

Let VLC denote the Lev-VLCN (N=0-6) to be used. After each level is decoded, the VLCN is updated according to the following method, where Level is the absolute value of the previously decoded level (coeff_level).

```
// VLC initialization for decoding first level
if (total_coeff(coeff_token) > 10 && trailing_ones(coeff_token) < 3)
    VLC = 1          // use Lev-VLC1 for first level
else
    VLC = 0          // use Lev-VLC0 for first level
// Assign FirstCoeff
// Decode level_code here and assign coeff_level and Level
// VLC update after decoding each level

vlc_inc table[7] = {0, 3, 6, 12, 24, 48, 215}
if (Level > vlc_inc[VLC])
    VLC ++
if (FirstCoeffand Level > 3)
    VLC = 2
```

The first coefficient is always decoded with Lev-VLC0 or Lev-VLC1 while the rest of the coefficients are always decoded with Lev-VLC1 to Lev-VLC6.

The same procedure is used for chroma AC and DC coefficient levels.

9.1.6.4 Decoding of run information

Run decoding is separated in total number of Zeros (i.e. the number of zeros located before the last non-zero coefficient in the zig-zag scan) and Run (of zeros) before each coefficient.

9.1.6.4.1 Entropy Decoding of the total number of zeros: total_zeros

The variable TotalZeros as given by total_zeros, is the sum of all zeros located before the last non-zero coefficient in a zig-zag scan. For example, given the string of coefficients 0 0 3 0 0 4 0 0 0 2 0 1 0 0 0, TotalZeros will be 2+2+4+1=9. Since TotalCoeff is already known, it determines the maximum possible value of TotalZeros. One out of 15 VLC tables is chosen based on TotalCoeff.

If TotalCoeff indicates that all coefficients are non-zero, TotalZeros is not decoded since it is known to be zero

Table 9-16 – total_zeros tables for all 4x4 blocks

TotalCoeff TotalZeros	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
0	1	111	0101	00011	0101	000001	000001	
1	011	110	111	111	0100	00001	00001	
2	010	101	110	0101	0011	111	101	
3	0011	100	101	0100	111	110	100	
4	0010	011	0100	110	110	101	011	
5	00011	0101	0011	101	101	100	11	
6	00010	0100	100	100	100	011	010	
7	000011	0011	011	0011	011	010	0001	

8	000010	0010	0010	011	0010	0001	001	
9	0000011	00011	00011	0010	00001	001	000000	
10	0000010	00010	00010	00010	0001	000000	-	
11	00000011	000011	000001	00001	00000	-	-	
12	00000010	000010	00001	00000	-	-	-	
13	000000011	000001	000000	-	-	-	-	
14	000000010	000000	-	-	-	-	-	
15	000000001	-	-	-	-	-	-	
TotalCoeff TotalZeros	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
0	000001	000001	00001	0000	0000	000	00	0
1	0001	000000	00000	0001	0001	001	01	1
2	00001	0001	001	001	01	1	1	-
3	011	11	11	010	1	01	-	-
4	11	10	10	1	001	-	-	-
5	10	001	01	011	-	-	-	-
6	010	01	0001	-	-	-	-	-
7	001	00001	-	-	-	-	-	-
8	000000	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
10	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
11	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
12	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
13	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Table 9-17 – TotalZeros table for chroma DC 2x2 blocks

NumCoeff TotalZeros	1	2	3
0	1	1	1
1	01	01	0
2	001	00	-
3	000	-	-

9.1.6.4.2 Run before each coefficient

At this stage it is known how many zeros are left to distribute (call this ZerosLeft). When decoding a run_before for the first time, ZerosLeft begins at TotalZeros, and decreases as more run_before elements are decoded.

For example, if there is only 1 zero left, the run before the next coefficient must be either of length 0 or 1, and only one bit is needed.

The number of preceding zeros before each non-zero coefficient (called RunBefore) needs to be decoded to properly locate that coefficient. Before decoding the next RunBefore, ZerosLeft is updated and used to select one out of 7 tables. RunBefore does not need to be decoded in the following two situations:

- If the total number of zeros has been reached ($\text{ZerosLeft} = 0$)
- For the last coefficient in the reverse zig-zag scan. Then the value is known to be ZerosLeft . This also means that the maximum value to be decoded is 14.

Table 9-18 – Tables for run_before

TotalZeros Run Before	1	2	3	4	5	6	>6
0	1	1	11	11	11	11	111
1	0	01	10	10	10	000	110
2	-	00	01	01	011	001	101
3	-	-	00	001	010	011	100
4	-	-	-	000	001	010	011
5	-	-	-	-	000	101	010
6	-	-	-	-	-	100	001
7	-	-	-	-	-	-	0001
8	-	-	-	-	-	-	00001
9	-	-	-	-	-	-	000001
10	-	-	-	-	-	-	0000001
11	-	-	-	-	-	-	00000001
12	-	-	-	-	-	-	000000001
13	-	-	-	-	-	-	0000000001
14	-	-	-	-	-	-	00000000001

9.2 Context-based adaptive binary arithmetic coding (CABAC)

9.2.1 Decoding flow and binarization

A binarization scheme provides a mapping of a non-binary valued alphabet of symbols onto a set of sequences of binary decisions, so-called bins. In subclauses 9.2.1.1 - 9.2.1.4 the elementary types of binarization schemes for CABAC are specified.

A specification of the decoding flow and the assignment of binarization schemes for all syntax elements is given in subclauses 9.2.1.5 - 9.2.1.9.

9.2.1.1 Unary binarization

Table 9-19 shows the first five codewords of the unary code used for binarization of code symbols. For a code symbol C it consists of $|C|$ '1' bits followed by the last bit with value '0'. The first bin number corresponds to the first bit of the unary codeword with increasing bin numbers towards the last bit, as shown in Table 9-19.

Table 9-19 – Binarization by means of the unary code tree

Code symbol	Binarization						
0	0						
1	1	0					
2	1	1	0				

3	1	1	1	0			
4	1	1	1	1	0		
5	1	1	1	1	1	0	
bin_num	1	2	3	4	5	6	

9.2.1.2 Truncated unary (TU) binarization

The truncated unary (TU) binarization is defined for a finite alphabet $\{0, \dots, C_{max}\}$ by applying the unary binarization of subclause 9.2.1.1 to all code symbols C with $C < C_{max}$; the binarization of the symbol $C = C_{max}$ is defined by a code word consisting of C_{max} '1's (without the last bit of value '0'). Numbering of the bins is the same as for unary binarization.

9.2.1.3 Concatenated unary/ k^{th} -order Exp-Golomb (UEGk) binarization

Concatenated unary/ k^{th} -order Exp-Golomb (UEGk) binarization consists of a concatenation of a prefix code word and a suffix code word. The prefix is formed by using a truncated unary binarization with $C_{max} = UCoff$, where $UCoff$ denotes the cut-off parameter. For all code symbols C with $C < UCoff$, the suffix code word is void; for code symbols C with $C \geq UCoff$, the suffix consists of an Exp-Golomb code of order k for the symbol $C - UCoff$. For a given symbol S the Exp-Golomb code of order k is constructed as follows:

```
while(1) {
    //first unary part of EGk
    if (symbol >= (unsigned int) (1<<k)) {
        put('1');
        S = S - (1<<k);
        k++;
    }
    else
    {
        put('0');          //now terminating zero of unary part of EGk
        while (k--)        //finally binary part of EGk
            put( (S>>k) & 0x01 );
        break;
    }
}
```

The numbering of bins is such that bin number $bin_num = 1$ relates to the first binary decision in the unary prefix code with increasing numbers towards the least significant bits of the binary part of the Exp-Golomb suffix.

9.2.1.4 Fixed-length (FL) binarization

Fixed-length (FL) binarization is applied to a finite alphabet $\{0, \dots, C_{max}\}$ of code symbols. It is constructed by using a L -bit binary representation of a code symbol, where $L = \log_2 C_{max} + 1$. The numbering of bins for the fixed-length binarization is such that the $bin_num = 1$ relates to the least significant bit with increasing bin numbers towards the most significant bit.

9.2.1.5 Binarization schemes for macroblock type and sub macroblock type

The binarization scheme for decoding of macroblock type in I slices is specified in Table 9-20. If $adaptive_block_size_transform_flag == 1$, the binarization for decoding of macroblock type in I slices is specified in Table 12-10.

For macroblock types in SI slices the binarization consists of a prefix and a suffix part. The prefix consists of a single bit $b_1 = ((mb_type == Sintra_4x4) ? 0 : 1)$. The suffix part for mb_type $Sintra_4x4$ is void, while the suffix parts for all other macroblock types are given by the corresponding binarization pattern specified in Table 9-20.

The binarization schemes for P, SP, and B slices are specified in Table 9-21. The binarization for intra macroblock types in P and SP slices corresponding to mb_type values 7 to 30 consists of a prefix as specified in Table 9-21 and a suffix as specified in Table 9-20 for the corresponding intra mb_type . For intra macroblock types in B slices (mb_type values 23 to 47) the binarization consists of a prefix as specified in Table 9-21 and a suffix as specified in Table 9-20 for the corresponding intra mb_type . If $adaptive_block_size_transform_flag == 1$, the same prefix is used as specified in Table 9-21 for intra macroblock types of the corresponding slice type. However, the corresponding suffix parts are specified in Table 12-10.

For P, SP, and B slices the specification of the binarization for sub_mb_type is given in Table 9-22.

Table 9-20 – Binarization for macroblock types for I slices

Value (name) of mb_type	Binarization					
0 (Intra_4x4)	0					
1 (Intra_16x16_0_0_0)	1	0	0	0	0	
2 (Intra_16x16_1_0_0)	1	0	0	0	1	
3 (Intra_16x16_2_0_0)	1	0	0	1	0	
4 (Intra_16x16_3_0_0)	1	0	0	1	1	
5 (Intra_16x16_0_1_0)	1	0	1	0	0	0
6 (Intra_16x16_1_1_0)	1	0	1	0	0	1
7 (Intra_16x16_2_1_0)	1	0	1	0	1	0
8 (Intra_16x16_3_1_0)	1	0	1	0	1	1
9 (Intra_16x16_0_2_0)	1	0	1	1	0	0
10 (Intra_16x16_1_2_0)	1	0	1	1	0	1
11 (Intra_16x16_2_2_0)	1	0	1	1	1	0
12 (Intra_16x16_3_2_0)	1	0	1	1	1	1
13 (Intra_16x16_0_0_1)	1	1	0	0	0	
14 (Intra_16x16_1_0_1)	1	1	0	0	1	
15 (Intra_16x16_2_0_1)	1	1	0	1	0	
16 (Intra_16x16_3_0_1)	1	1	0	1	1	
17 (Intra_16x16_0_1_1)	1	1	1	0	0	0
18 (Intra_16x16_1_1_1)	1	1	1	0	0	1
19 (Intra_16x16_2_1_1)	1	1	1	0	1	0
20 (Intra_16x16_3_1_1)	1	1	1	0	1	1
21 (Intra_16x16_0_2_1)	1	1	1	1	0	0
22 (Intra_16x16_1_2_1)	1	1	1	1	0	1
23 (Intra_16x16_2_2_1)	1	1	1	1	1	0
24 (Intra_16x16_3_2_1)	1	1	1	1	1	1
bin_num	1	2	3	4	5	6

Table 9-21 – Binarization for macroblock types for P, SP, and B slices

Slice type	Value (name) of mb_type	Binarization					
P, SP slices	0 (Pred_L0_16x16)	0	0	0			
	1 (Pred_L0_L0_16x8)	0	1	1			
	2 (Pred_L0_L0_8x16)	0	1	0			
	4 (Pred_8x8)	0	0	1			
	6 (Pred_8x8ref0)	na					
	7 to 30 (Intra, prefix only)	1					

B slices	0 (Direct_16x16)	0						
	1 (Pred_L0_16x16)	1	0	0				
	2 (BiPred_L1_16x16)	1	0	1				
	3 (BiPred_Bi_16x16)	1	1	0	0	0	0	
	4 (Pred_L0_L0_16x8)	1	1	0	0	0	1	
	5 (Pred_L0_L0_8x16)	1	1	0	0	1	0	
	6 (BiPred_L1_L1_16x8)	1	1	0	0	1	1	
	7 (BiPred_L1_L1_8x16)	1	1	0	1	0	0	
	8 (BiPred_L0_L1_16x8)	1	1	0	1	0	1	
	9 (BiPred_L0_L1_8x16)	1	1	0	1	1	0	
	10 (BiPred_L1_L0_16x8)	1	1	0	1	1	1	
	11 (BiPred_L1_L0_8x16)	1	1	1	1	1	0	
	12 (BiPred_L0_Bi_16x8)	1	1	1	0	0	0	0
	13 (BiPred_L0_Bi_8x16)	1	1	1	0	0	0	1
	14 (BiPred_L1_Bi_16x8)	1	1	1	0	0	1	0
	15 (BiPred_L1_Bi_8x16)	1	1	1	0	0	1	1
	16 (BiPred_Bi_L0_16x8)	1	1	1	0	1	0	0
	17 (BiPred_Bi_L0_8x16)	1	1	1	0	1	0	1
	18 (BiPred_Bi_L1_16x8)	1	1	1	0	1	1	0
	19 (BiPred_Bi_L1_8x16)	1	1	1	0	1	1	1
	20 (BiPred_Bi_Bi_16x8)	1	1	1	1	0	0	0
	21 (BiPred_Bi_Bi_8x16)	1	1	1	1	0	0	1
	22 (BiPred_8x8)	1	1	1	1	1	1	
	23 to 47 (Intra, prefix only)	1	1	1	1	0	1	
bin_num		1	2	3	4	5	6	7

Table 9-22 – Binarization for sub macroblock types in P and B slices

Slice type	Value (name) of sub_mb_type	Binarization					
P slices	0 (Pred_L0_8x8)	1					
	1 (Pred_L0_8x4)	0	0	0			
	2 (Pred_L0_4x8)	0	0	1	1		
	3 (Pred_L0_4x4)	0	0	1	0		
	4 (Intra_8x8)	0	1				
B slices	0 (Direct_8x8)	0					
	1 (Pred_L0_8x8)	1	0	0			
	2 (BiPred_L1_8x8)	1	0	1			

3 (BiPred_Bi_8x8)	1	1	0	0	0	
4 (Pred_L0_8x4)	1	1	0	0	1	
5 (Pred_L0_4x8)	1	1	0	1	0	
6 (BiPred_L1_8x4)	1	1	0	1	1	
7 (BiPred_L1_4x8)	1	1	1	0	0	0
8 (BiPred_Bi_8x4)	1	1	1	0	0	1
9 (BiPred_Bi_4x8)	1	1	1	0	1	0
10 (Pred_L0_4x4)	1	1	1	0	1	1
11 (BiPred_L1_4x4)	1	1	1	1	0	0
12 (BiPred_Bi_4x4)	1	1	1	1	0	1
13 (Intra_8x8)	1	1	1	1	1	
bin_num	1	2	3	4	5	6

9.2.1.6 Decoding flow and assignment of binarization schemes

In this subclause, the binarization schemes used for decoding of coded_block_pattern, delta_qp, the syntax elements of reference picture index, motion vector data, Intra4x4 prediction modes and are specified.

The coded block pattern information is decoded using the relationship as given in subclause 7.4.6: coded_block_pattern = coded_block_patternY + 16*nc. In a first step, the luma part coded_block_patternY of coded_block_pattern is decoded using the fixed-length (FL) binarization with $C_{\max} = 15$ and $L = 4$. Then, the chroma part nc is decoded using TU binarization with $C_{\max} = 2$.

Decoding of the delta_qp parameter is a two-step process. First, an unsigned code value *wrapped_delta_qp* ≥ 0 is decoded using the unary binarization. Then, *wrapped_delta_qp* is mapped to the signed value of the delta_qp parameter according to the relationship given in Table 9-2.

The decoding process for spatial intra prediction modes associated with luma of macroblock type Intra_4x4 and Sintra_4x4 is as follows. First, a parameter *intra_pred_indicator* is decoded using the truncated unary (TU) binarization with $C_{\max} = 8$. If *intra_pred_indicator* = 0, *use_most_probable_mode* is set to 1. If *intra_pred_indicator* ≥ 1 , *remaining_mode_selector* = *intra_pred_indicator* - 1. Given the parameters *most_probable_mode* and *remaining_mode_selector*, the intra prediction mode *intra_pred_mode* is obtained in the same way as specified in subclause 9.1.5.1. The decoding order of the prediction modes is the same as shown in Figure 9-1 b). For decoding of the spatial intra prediction mode for chroma *intra_chroma_pred_mode*, the truncated unary (TU) binarization with $C_{\max} = 3$ is used.

The reference picture index parameter is decoded using the unary binarization as given in subclause 9.2.1.1.

Each component of the motion vector data is decoded separately starting with the horizontal (h) component. First the absolute value *abs_mvd_comp* and then the sign *sign_mvd_comp* of each component (*comp*=h,v) shall be decoded. The binarization scheme applied to *abs_mvd_comp* is given by the concatenated unary/3rd-order Exp-Golomb (UEG3) binarization with cut-off parameter *Ucoeff* = 9. Note that for decoding the Exp-Golomb suffix the decoder bypass *Decode_eq_prob* as specified in subclause 9.2.4.3.5 is used.

9.2.1.7 Decoding flow and binarization of transform coefficients

Decoding of transform coefficients is a three-step process. First, the one-bit coded_block_flag is decoded for each block of transform coefficients unless the coded_block_pattern symbol on macroblock level indicates that the regarded block has no non-zero coefficients. If the coded_block_flag symbol is zero, no further information has to be decoded for the block. Otherwise, it is indicated that there are significant coefficients inside the block. The latter case implies that, in a second decoding step, for each scanning position *i* except the last position in a block the binary-valued *significant_coeff_flag[i]* has to be decoded. If *significant_coeff_flag[i]* has the value of one, the corresponding position *i* in the block contains a significant coefficient and a further binary-valued *last_significant_coeff_flag[i]* is decoded. If *last_significant_coeff_flag[i]* is zero, there is at least one further significant coefficient to be decoded; otherwise, the last significant coefficient along the scanning path is reached. If this is the case, the absolute value minus 1 *coeff_absolute_value_minus_1* and then the sign of the coefficient *coeff_sign* is decoded for each significant transform coefficient by traversing the block in reverse scanning order. *coeff_absolute_value_minus_1* is decoded using the

concatenated unary/zero-order Exp-Golomb (UEG0) binarization with UCoff=14. Similar to the decoding of absolute values of the motion vector components, the Exp-Golomb suffix is decoded by using the decoder bypass Decode_eq_prob.

9.2.1.8 Decoding of sign information related to motion vector data and transform coefficients

Decoding of the sign information *sign_mvd_comp* of the motion vector components and *coeff_sign* of the levels corresponding to significant transform coefficients is performed as follows. Using the decoder bypass Decode_eq_prob as specified in subclause 9.2.4.3.5 first a binary indicator *sign_ind* is decoded. Then the sign information *sign_info* is recovered by $\text{sign_info} = ((\text{sign_ind} == 0) ? 1 : -1)$.

9.2.1.9 Decoding of macroblock skip flag and end-of-slice flag

Decoding of the *mb_skip_flag* is as follows: First, a binary-valued *mb_skip_flag_decoded* is decoded using the context model as specified in subclause 9.2.2.2. In a second step, the actual value of *mb_skip_flag* is obtained by inverting *mb_skip_flag_decoded*, i.e., $\text{mb_skip_flag} = \text{mb_skip_flag_decoded} \wedge 0x01$.

The *end_of_slice_flag* is decoded using a fixed, non-adaptive model by choosing State = 63 and MPS = 0. The following mechanism guarantees a fixed model, although the coding engine uses a probability estimator after each decoding step as further specified in subclause 9.2.4.2. By observing a sequence of *end_of_slice* values '0' meaning that the end of a slice has not been reached, the initial chosen state will not be altered, since for the observation of a MPS symbol the state variable State = 63 will be mapped onto itself in the probability estimation. However, as soon as a LPS value of '1' is decoded for *end_of_slice_flag*, the probability estimation for the LPS will not affect the subsequent decoding process, because the end of a slice is reached, and all context models are refreshed using the initial states.

9.2.2 Context definition and assignment

For each bin number, a *context variable* is defined by a conditioning term containing prior decoded symbols or parts thereof. The possible numerical values of a context variable specify the different *context models* associated with a specific bin number. Typically, there are several possible values or *context labels* for each bin number *bin_num*. However, in some cases the context variable may simply be a constant label, in which case there is only one fixed context model.

This subclause defines first a variety of generic types of context variables, so-called *context templates*, for conditional coding of syntax elements. Then, for each bin number of a syntax element, the specification of the corresponding context variable is given. For the different bin numbers associated with the binarization of a given syntax element or parts thereof, a unique *context identifier* *context_id* is chosen such that the context variable associated to bin number *k* is given by *context_id[k]*. Since there is always a maximum bin number *N* with a context variable *context_id[N]* that is different from the corresponding context variable *context_id[N-1]* for the preceding bin number *N-1*, it is sufficient to specify a context identifier for each index *k* with $1 \leq k \leq N$, where *N* is called the maximum index of the context identifier *max_idx_ctx_id*.

Table 9-23 provides an overview of the context identifiers associated to each category of syntax elements. A detailed description of the corresponding context variables is given in the subsequent subclauses. Note that each context identifier corresponds to a unique range of context labels, which, in the case of macroblock type, may overlap for the different slice types I, SI, P, SP, and B.

If *adaptive_block_size_transform_flag* == 1, the context identifiers related to decoding of transform coefficients utilize an additional set of ranges as further specified in Table 12-12.

Table 9-23 – Syntax elements and associated context identifiers

Syntax element	Context identifier	Type of Binarization	max_idx_ctx_id	Range of context label
<i>mb_skip_flag</i>	<i>ctx_mb_skip</i>	-/-	1	0 – 2
<i>mb_type</i>	<i>ctx_mb_type_I</i>	Table 9-14	5	0 – 7
	<i>ctx_mb_type_SI_pref</i>	-/-	1	0 – 2
	<i>ctx_mb_type_SI_suf</i>	Table 9-14	5	3 – 10
	<i>ctx_mb_type_P</i>	Table	3	3 – 6

	ctx_mb_type_B	9-15	4	3 – 8
	ctx_mb_type_P_suf	Table 9-14	5	6 – 9
	ctx_mb_type_B_suf		5	8 – 11
	ctx_b8_mode_P	Table 9-16	4	12 – 15
	ctx_b8_mode_B		4	12 – 15
mvd_l0 and mvd_l1	ctx_abs_mvd_h	UEG3, UCoff=9	5	16 – 22
	ctx_abs_mvd_v	UEG3, UCoff=9	5	23 – 29
ref_idx_l0 and ref_idx_l1	ctx_ref_idx	Unary	3	30 – 35
delta_qp	ctx_delta_qp	Unary	3	36 – 39
chroma_pred_mode	ctx_ipred_chroma	TU, C _{max} =3	3	40 – 44
intra_pred_mode	ctx_ipred_luma	TU, C _{max} =8	2	45 – 62
coded_block_pattern	ctx_cbp_luma	FL, C _{max} =15	4	63 – 66
	ctx_cbp_chroma	TU, C _{max} =2	2	67 – 74
coded_block_flag	ctx_cbp4	-/-	-/-	75 – 94
significant_coeff	ctx_sig	-/-	-/-	95 – 155
last_coeff	ctx_last	-/-	-/-	156 – 216
coeff_absolute_value_minus_1	ctx_abs_level	UEG0, UCoff=14	2	217 – 266
end_of_slice_flag	ctx_eos	Fixed, non-adaptive model with State(ctx_eos) = 63, MPS(ctx_eos) = 0		

9.2.2.1 Overview of assignment of context labels

Tables 9-24 and 9-25 contain all context identifiers along with their corresponding range of context labels. The association of context labels (modulo some offset) and bin numbers shows which context variable uses a fixed model and which one implies a choice of different models. The latter are characterized by those entries where a set of different context labels are given for a specific bin number bin_num (Table 9-24) or block type dependent context_category (Table 9-25). These context variables are specified in the following subclauses.

Table 9-24 – Overview of context identifiers and associated context labels

Context identifier	Range of context label	Offset context label for	max_idx_ctx_id	bin_num				
				1	2	3	4	≥ 5
ctx_mb_skip	0 – 2	0	1	0,1,2	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-
ctx_mb_type_I	0 – 7	0	5	0,1,2	3	4	5,6	6,7
ctx_mb_type_SI_pref	0 – 2	0	1	0,1,2	-/-	-/-	-/-	-/-
ctx_mb_type_SI_suf	3 – 10	3	5	0,1,2	3	4	5,6	6,7
ctx_mb_type_P	3 – 6	3	3	0	1	2,3	-/-	-/-
ctx_mb_type_P_suf	6 – 9	6	5	0	1	2	2,3	3

ctx_mb_type_B	3 – 8	3	4	0,1,2	3	4,5	5	5
ctx_mb_type_B_suf	8 – 11	8	5	0	1	2	2,3	3
ctx_b8_mode_P	12 – 15	12	4	0	1	2	3	-/-
ctx_b8_mode_B	12 – 15	12	4	0	1	2,3	3	3
ctx_abs_mvd_h	16 – 22	16	5	0,1,2	3	4	5	6
ctx_abs_mvd_v	23 – 29	23	5	0,1,2	3	4	5	6
ctx_ref_idx	30 – 35	30	3	0,1,2,3	4	5	5	5
ctx_delta_qp	36 – 39	36	3	0,1	2	3	3	3
ctx_ipred_chroma	40 – 44	36	3	0,1,2	3	4	-/-	-/-
ctx_ipred_luma	45 – 62	42	2	0,...,8	9,...,17	9,...,17	9,...,17	9,...,17
ctx_cbp_luma	63 – 66	60	4	0,1,2,3	0,1,2,3	0,1,2,3	0,1,2,3	-/-
ctx_cbp_chroma	67 – 74	64	2	0,1,2,3	4,5,6,7	-/-	-/-	-/-
ctx_abs_level	217 – 266	217+ 10*context_category	2	0,...,4	5,...,9	5,...,9	5,...,9	5,...,9

Table 9-25 – Overview of context identifiers and associated context labels (continued)

Context identifier	Offset (range) of context label	context_category (as specified in Table 9-22)				
		0	1	2	3	4
ctx_cbp4	75 (75 – 94)	0 – 3	4 – 7	8 – 11	12 – 15	16 – 19
ctx_sig	95 (95 – 155)	0 – 14	15 – 28	29 – 43	44 – 46	47 – 60
ctx_last	156 (156 – 216)	0 – 14	15 – 28	29 – 43	44 – 46	47 – 60

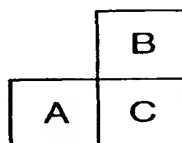


Figure 9-2 – Illustration of the generic context template using two neighbouring symbols A and B for conditional coding of a current symbol C

9.2.2.2 Context templates using two neighbouring symbols

The generic design of this type of context variable is shown in Figure 9-2. It involves two previously decoded symbols or bins of the same syntax element that correspond to the spatially neighbouring blocks to the left (A) and on the top (B) of the regarded block C. The generic form of the equation defining this type of context is given by

$$ctx_var_spat = cond_term(A, B), \quad (9-1)$$

where the conditioning term $cond_term(A, B)$ describes the functional relationship between the spatially neighbouring symbols A and B, on the one hand, and the values of the context variable, on the other hand. Three special cases of this template are specified as follows:

$$ctx_var_spat1 = cond_term(A) + cond_term(B), \quad (9-2)$$

$$ctx_var_spat2 = cond_term(A) + 2 * cond_term(B), \quad (9-3)$$

$$ctx_var_spat3 = cond_term(A). \quad (9-4)$$

Table 9-26 contains the specification of context variables relying on templates using two neighbouring symbols. The conditioning term of the context variable *ctx_cbp4* depends on six block types as given in Table 9-28 (Luma-DC, Luma-AC, Chroma-U-DC, Chroma-V-DC, Chroma-U-AC, Chroma-V-AC).

Table 9-26 – Specification of context variables using context templates according to Equations (9-2) – (9-4)

Context variable	Context template	cond_term(X), semantics of X	cond_term(X), if X not available
<i>ctx_mb_skip</i>	<i>ctx_var_spat1</i>	(<i>mb_skip_flag</i> (X) == 0) ? 1: 0 X: neighbouring macroblock	0
<i>ctx_mb_type_I</i> [1]	<i>ctx_var_spat1</i>	(<i>mb_type</i> (X) != Intra_4x4) ? 1: 0 X: neighbouring macroblock	0
<i>ctx_mb_type_SI_pref</i> [1]	<i>ctx_var_spat1</i>	(<i>mb_type</i> (X) != Sintra_4x4) ? 1: 0 X: neighbouring macroblock	0
<i>ctx_mb_type_SI_suff</i> [1]	<i>ctx_var_spat1</i>	(<i>mb_type</i> (X) != Intra_4x4) ? 1: 0 X: neighbouring macroblock	0
<i>ctx_mb_type_B</i> [1]	<i>ctx_var_spat1</i>	((<i>mb_type</i> (X) != Direct) ? 1: 0) X: neighbouring macroblock	0
<i>ctx_ipred_chroma</i> [1]	<i>ctx_var_spat1</i>	((<i>intra_chroma_pred_mode</i> (X) != 0) ? 1: 0) X: neighbouring macroblock	0
<i>ctx_ref_idx</i> [1]	<i>ctx_var_spat2</i>	(<i>ref_idx_l0/ref_idx_l1</i> (X) != 0) ? 1: 0 X: neighbouring block	0
<i>ctx_ipred_luma</i> [i], i=1,2	<i>ctx_var_spat3</i>	9*(i-1) + <i>intra_pred_mode</i> (X) X: neighbouring block	0
<i>ctx_cbp_luma</i> [i], i=1,...,4	<i>ctx_var_spat2</i>	i-th bit of <i>coded_block_patternY</i> (X) X: neighbouring 8x8 block of i-th block	0
<i>ctx_cbp_chroma</i> [1]	<i>ctx_var_spat2</i>	(<i>nc</i> (X) != 0) ? 1: 0 X: neighbouring macroblock	0
<i>ctx_cbp_chroma</i> [2]	<i>ctx_var_spat2</i>	4 + (<i>nc</i> (X) == 2) ? 1: 0 X: neighbouring macroblock	0
<i>ctx_cbp4</i>	<i>ctx_var_spat2</i>	<i>coded_block_pattern_4</i> (X) X: neighbouring block of same block type	1, if X is INTRA; 0, otherwise
<i>ctx_delta_qp</i>	<i>ctx_var_spat3</i>	(<i>delta_qp</i> (X) != 0) ? 1: 0 X: neighbouring macroblock	0

The specification of the context variables *ctx_abs_mvd_h*[1] and *ctx_abs_mvd_v*[1] is given as follows.

$$ctx_abs_mvd_comp[1] = \begin{cases} 0, & (|mvd_comp(A)| + |mvd_comp(B)|) < 3, \\ 2, & (|mvd_comp(A)| + |mvd_comp(B)|) > 32, \\ 1, & otherwise, \end{cases} \quad (9-5)$$

where *comp* denotes the component *h* (horizontal) or *v* (vertical) and *A*, *B* denote the neighbouring blocks of the block to decode as shown in Figure 9-2. Since the neighbouring blocks *A* and *B* may belong to different macroblock partitions, the following principle for identifying the proper neighbouring blocks that are used in Equation (9-5) is established. First, the motion vector data is assumed to be given in oversampled form such that each 4x4 block has its own *motion vector* (*MV*). That means, on the one hand, that in case of a neighbouring block having a coarser partition, the related 4x4 sub-blocks are assumed to inherit the *MV* from the corresponding parent block(s) in the quadtree partition. On the other hand, if the current block *C* represents a larger block than a 4x4 block, it is assumed to be represented by the corresponding

leftmost 4x4 sub-block in the top row of 4x4 sub-blocks. Then, given a block C , the neighbouring 4x4 sub-blocks B on top and A to the left of the representing 4x4 sub-block of C are chosen for evaluation of Equation (9-5).

9.2.2.3 Context templates using preceding bin values

Let (b_1, \dots, b_N) denote the binarization of a given symbol C . Then, a generic type of context variable associated with the k -th bin of C is specified as

$$ctx_var_bin[k] = cond_term(b_1, \dots, b_{k-1}), \quad (9-6)$$

where $1 < k \leq N$. In Table 9-27, the specification of context variables using this type of context template is given.

Table 9-27 – Definition of context variables using the context template according to Equation (9-6)

Context variable	$cond_term(b_1, \dots, b_{k-1})$
$ctx_mb_type_I[4]$	$(b_3 == 0) ? 5 : 6$
$ctx_mb_type_I[5]$	$(b_3 == 0) ? 6 : 7$
$ctx_mb_type_SI_suff[4]$	$(b_3 == 0) ? 5 : 6$
$ctx_mb_type_SI_suff[5]$	$(b_3 == 0) ? 6 : 7$
$ctx_mb_type_P[3]$	$(b_2 == 0) ? 2 : 3$
$ctx_mb_type_P_suff[4]$	$(b_3 == 0) ? 2 : 3$
$ctx_mb_type_B[3]$	$(b_2 == 1) ? 4 : 5$
$ctx_mb_type_B_suff[4]$	$(b_3 == 0) ? 2 : 3$
$ctx_b8_mode_B[3]$	$(b_2 == 1) ? 2 : 3$

9.2.2.4 Additional context definitions for information related to transform coefficients

Three different additional context identifiers are used for conditioning of information related to transform coefficients. All these three types depend on context categories of different block types denoted by the variable *context_category*. The definition of these context categories is given in Table 9-28.

Table 9-28 – Context categories for the different block types

block_type	MaxNumCoeff	context_category
Luma DC block for INTRA16x16 mode	16	0:Luma-Intra16-DC
Luma AC block for INTRA16x16 mode	15	1:Luma-Intra16-AC
Luma block for INTRA 4x4 mode	16	2:Luma-4x4
Luma block for INTER 4x4 mode	16	
U-Chroma DC block for INTRA mode	4	3:Chroma-DC
V-Chroma DC block for INTRA mode	4	
U-Chroma DC block for INTER mode	4	
V-Chroma DC block for INTER mode	4	
U-Chroma AC block for INTRA mode	15	4:Chroma-AC
V-Chroma AC block for INTRA mode	15	
U-Chroma AC block for INTER mode	15	
V-Chroma AC block for INTER mode	15	

Additional context categories are used in the case of `adaptive_block_size_transform_flag == 1` as specified in subclause 12.5.2. The context identifiers `ctx_sig` and `ctx_last` are related to the binary valued information of SIG and LAST; the related context variables includes an additional dependency on the scanning position `scanning_pos` within the regarded block:

$$ctx_sig[scanning_pos] = Map_sig(scanning_pos), \quad (9-7)$$

$$ctx_last[scanning_pos] = Map_last(scanning_pos). \quad (9-8)$$

The specification of `Map_sig` and `Map_last` in Equations (9-7) and (9-8) depends on the block type. For context_category 0 – 4 the corresponding maps are given by the identity, i.e.,

$$Map_sig(scanning_pos) = Map_last(scanning_pos) = scanning_pos, \text{ if } context_category = 0, \dots, 4,$$

where `scanning_pos` denotes the position related to the zig-zag scan. For the additional context categories 5 – 7, which are only in use if `adaptive_block_size_transform_flag == 1`, the specification of `Map_sig` and `Map_last` is given in subclause 12.5.2.

For decoding of `abs_level_m1`, the absolute values of significant transform coefficients minus 1, the context identifier `ctx_abs_level` consisting of the two context variables `ctx_abs_level[1]` and `ctx_abs_level[2]` is used, which are defined as follows:

$$ctx_abs_lev[1] = ((num_decod_abs_lev_gt1 \neq 0) ? 4 : min(3, num_decod_abs_lev_eq1)), \quad (9-9)$$

$$ctx_abs_lev[2] = min(4, num_decod_abs_lev_gt1), \quad (9-10)$$

where `num_decod_abs_lev_eq1` denotes the number of decoded coefficients with magnitude equal to 1, and `num_decod_abs_lev_gt1` denotes the number of decoded coefficients with magnitude greater than 1. Both numbers are related to the same transform coefficient block, where the current decoding takes place, which means that no additional information outside the regarded transform coefficient block is used for the context variables `ctx_abs_level[k]`, $k=1,2$.

9.2.3 Initialisation of context models

9.2.3.1 Initialisation procedure

At the beginning of each slice, each context model is initialised with an initial state, which consists of a state number and the meaning of the most probable symbol (MPS) as further described in subclause 9.2.4.2. The actual initial state of a context model depends linearly on the (initial) quantization parameter QP of the given slice, such that for each context model a pair of table entries {m, n} is given, from which the initial state is computed in the following way

1. Compute $pre_state = ((m * (QP - 12)) >> 4) + n$;
2. Limit `pre_state` to the range of [0,101] for P- and B-slices and to the range of [27,74] for I-slices, i.e.,
 $pre_state = \min(101, \max(0, pre_state))$ for P- and B-slices and
 $pre_state = \min(74, \max(27, pre_state))$ for I-slices;
3. Map `pre_state` to {state, MPS} pair according to the following rule:
if (`pre_state` <= 50) then {state = 50 - `pre_state`, MPS = 0} else {state = `pre_state` - 51, MPS = 1}

9.2.3.2 Initialisation procedure

Tables 9-29 – 9-34 contain the initialisation parameters related to the context variables of all syntax elements, from which the initial states can be obtained by using the rules given in subclause 9.2.3.1.

Table 9-29 – Initialisation parameters for context identifiers `ctx_mb_type_I`, `ctx_mb_type_SI_pref`, `ctx_mb_type_SI_suf`, `ctx_mb_skip`, `ctx_mb_type_P`, `ctx_mb_type_B`

Context label	<code>ctx_mb_type_I</code>		<code>ctx_mb_type_SI_pref</code>		<code>ctx_mb_skip</code>					
	m	n	m	n	m	n	m	n	m	n

0	7	25	7	25	-23	66				
1	8	35	8	35	-14	77				
2	-2	63	-2	63	-9	88				
			ctx_mb_type_SI_suf				ctx_mb_type_P		ctx_mb_type_B	
3	-9	68	7	25			2	13	9	49
4	-15	74	8	35			14	24	3	65
5	-3	36	-2	63			-21	69	0	78
6	-1	51	-9	68			-1	52	-13	81
7	0	50	-15	74					-14	73
8			-3	36					-8	64
9			-1	51						
10			0	50						

Tabl 9-30 – Initialisation parameters for context identifiers *ctx_b8_mode_P*, *ctx_b8_mode_B*, *ctx_mb_type_P_suf*, *ctx_mb_type_B_suf*

Context label	ctx_mb_type_P_suf ctx_mb_type_B_suf		Context label	ctx_b8_mode_P		ctx_b8_mode_B	
	m	n		m	n	m	n
9	-9	55	12	8	46	-9	62
10	-7	50	13	12	11	-12	66
11	2	47	14	-4	62	-9	56
			15	18	48	3	47

Table 9-31 – Initialisation parameters for context identifiers *ctx_abs_mvd_h*, *ctx_abs_mvd_v*, *ctx_ref_idx*

Context label	ctx_abs_mvd_h		Context label	ctx_abs_mvd_v		Context label	ctx_ref_idx	
	m	n		m	n		m	n
16	1	48	23	-1	45	30	3	27
17	-5	60	24	-5	59	31	-1	47
18	-8	70	25	-9	71	32	0	45
19	2	52	26	0	50	33	-2	60
20	2	62	27	3	61	34	-1	57
21	-3	64	28	-3	63	35	0	48
22	-2	80	29	1	80			

Table 9-32 – Initialisation parameters for context identifiers *ctx_delta_qp*, *ctx_ipred_chroma*, *ctx_ipred_luma*

Context label	ctx_delta_qp		Context label	ctx_ipred_luma		Context label	ctx_ipred_luma	
	m	n		m	n		m	n
36	0	28	45	-5	49	54	-4	61

37	0	50	46	-3	58	55	-6	64
38	0	50	47	-5	58	56	-6	63
39	0	50	48	-4	58	57	-3	75
	ctx_ipred_chroma		49	-5	59	58	-4	63
40	-5	50	50	-4	60	59	-7	65
41	0	50	51	-6	61	60	-1	63
42	0	50	52	-5	62	61	-18	66
43	0	50	53	-4	60	62	-9	67
44	0	50						

Table 9-33 – Initialisation parameters for context identifiers *ctx_cbp_luma*, *ctx_cbp_chroma*

Context label	ctx_cbp_luma				Context label	ctx_cbp_chroma				Context label	ctx_cbp_chroma			
	I slices		P, B slices			I slices		P, B slices			I slices		P, B slices	
	m	n	m	n		m	n	m	n		m	n	m	n
63	-3	75	-21	81	67	-7	65	-23	58	71	-18	66	-11	46
64	-4	63	-15	60	68	-1	63	-18	64	72	-9	67	-6	56
65	-4	70	-14	61	69	-9	77	-16	63	73	-13	70	-8	59
66	-5	56	-15	47	70	-4	76	-18	73	74	-7	74	-18	74

Table 9-34 – Initialisation parameters for context identifiers *ctx_cbp4*, *ctx_sig*, *ctx_last*, *ctx_abs_level* for context category 0 – 4

Context label	Context category 0		Context label	Context category 1		Context label	Context category 2				Context label	Context category 3		Context label	Context category 4	
	m	n		I slices			P, B slices		m	n		m	n		m	n
				m	n		m	n								
ctx_cbp4																
75	-4	72	79	-4	37	83	-2	52	-4	57	87	0	55	91	-3	41
76	-4	68	80	-3	50	84	-7	68	-9	66	88	-3	70	92	-4	62
77	-6	75	81	-6	49	85	-5	61	-7	64	89	-4	68	93	-6	58
78	-6	75	82	-3	61	86	-8	77	-17	80	90	-4	75	94	-8	73
ctx_sig																
95	-6	68				124	-7	67	4	46	139	-3	71			
96	-11	66	110	0	44	125	-11	64	1	43	140	-9	69	142	-6	60
97	-5	63	111	2	53	126	-8	66	2	45	141	0	70	143	0	63
98	-5	56	112	0	49	127	-11	63	-4	46				144	-3	54
99	2	43	113	1	43	128	-9	63	-1	45				145	-4	54
100	1	47	114	4	45	129	-8	60	3	43				146	4	52
101	-8	58	115	-2	40	130	-11	55	-6	44				147	-5	44

102	-3	46	116	-1	45	131	-10	61	1	45				148	-1	48
103	4	38	117	0	50	132	-7	63	2	46				149	-7	57
104	0	58	118	2	55	133	-7	60	0	46				150	11	51
105	1	51	119	-7	52	134	-16	61	-12	49				151	-13	51
106	-7	57	120	-2	57	135	-2	62	3	50				152	7	55
107	-1	53	121	7	50	136	-1	58	11	46				153	5	57
108	2	47	122	2	52	137	-8	61	4	50				154	2	51
109	-1	59	123	4	66	138	-3	68	9	64				155	4	68
ctx_last																
156	0	5				185	11	25	16	27	200	12	27			
157	1	1	171	4	42	186	9	24	21	19	201	12	28	203	10	28
158	2	2	172	5	46	187	12	24	20	23	202	16	38	204	14	30
159	3	6	173	9	40	188	14	23	21	22				205	17	30
160	4	3	174	7	41	189	13	23	21	23				206	20	30
161	5	4	175	6	46	190	16	22	24	23				207	15	37
162	6	4	176	10	40	191	19	20	25	24				208	21	39
163	7	3	177	14	33	192	18	21	23	27				209	22	33
164	8	4	178	10	43	193	21	21	25	29				210	21	39
165	9	5	179	12	48	194	23	25	23	35				211	15	52
166	10	9	180	13	39	195	20	23	19	36				212	8	49
167	11	2	181	13	41	196	24	25	21	40				213	13	52
168	12	3	182	16	43	197	25	29	23	45				214	8	60
169	13	1	183	21	35	198	24	33	15	53				215	15	56
170	14	6	184	11	55	199	14	53	8	70				216	3	71
ctx_abs_level																
217	-5	55	227	-10	57	237	-10	63	-6	51	247	-9	70	257	-7	58
218	-3	36	228	-1	30	238	-5	37	-5	24	248	-14	55	258	0	33
219	-1	35	229	0	32	239	-7	43	-7	32	249	-10	57	259	-1	40
220	-2	40	230	-1	35	240	-6	46	-4	34	250	-5	56	260	-2	45
221	-6	50	231	0	40	241	-5	49	-5	39	251	-4	57	261	-3	49
222	-3	44	232	-5	39	242	-8	50	-12	43	252	-14	63	262	-7	48
223	-4	51	233	-4	47	243	-7	56	-7	50	253	-11	67	263	-9	58
224	-3	53	234	-9	55	244	-9	62	0	48	254	-5	68	264	-16	66
225	-4	55	235	-6	58	245	-9	64	-3	53	255	-9	71	265	-12	65
226	-11	63	236	-4	56	246	-11	70	-8	60	256	0	50	266	-12	68

9.2.4 Table-based arithmetic coding

NOTE - Arithmetic coding is based on the principle of recursive interval subdivision. Given a probability estimation $p('0')$ and $p('1')=1-p('0')$ of a binary decision ('0', '1'), an initially given interval with range R will be subdivided into two sub-intervals having range $p('0') \times R$ and $R - p('0') \times R$, respectively. Depending on the decision, which has been observed, the corresponding sub-interval will be chosen as the new code interval, and a binary code string pointing into that interval will represent the sequence of observed binary decisions. It is useful to distinguish between the *most probable symbol* (MPS) and the *least probable symbol* (LPS), so that binary decisions have to be identified as either MPS or LPS, rather than '0' or '1'. Given this terminology, each context model CTX is defined by the probability p_{LPS} of the LPS and the value of MPS, which is either '0' or '1'.

The arithmetic core engine in this Recommendation | International Standard has three distinct properties:

- The probability estimation is performed by means of a finite-state machine with a table-based transition process between 64 different representative probability states $\{P_k \mid 0 \leq k < 64\}$ for the LPS probability p_{LPS} .
- The range R representing the state of the coding engine is quantized to a small set $\{Q_1, \dots, Q_4\}$ of pre-defined quantization values prior to the calculation of the new interval range. Storing a table containing all 64×4 pre-computed product values of $Q_i \times P_k$ allows a multiplication-free approximation of the product $R \times P_k$.
- For syntax elements or parts thereof with an approximately uniform probability distribution a separate simplified encoding and decoding path is used.

9.2.4.2 Probability estimation

The probability estimator is realized by a finite-state machine (FSM) consisting of a set of representative probabilities $\{P_k \mid 0 \leq k < 64\}$ for the LPS together with some appropriately defined state transition rules. Table 9-35 shows the transition rules for adapting to a given MPS or LPS decision. For transition from one state to another each state is only addressed by its index $State$, which will be appropriately changed to a new index $Next_State_MPS(State)$ or $Next_State_LPS(State)$ after the encoding/decoding of a MPS or LPS symbol, respectively.

The numbering of the states is arranged in such a way that the state with index $State=0$ corresponds to a LPS probability value of 0.5, with decreasing LPS probability towards higher states. However, for I-slices it is of advantage to restrict the number of states to the first 24 state indices. Therefore, Table 9-35 contains a separate column containing the transition rule $Next_State_MPS_INTRA$ that is used for decoding the syntax elements of an I-slice only. Note, that $Next_State_MPS_INTRA$ differs from $Next_State_MPS$ only by one entry. To prevent the FSM from switching to states higher than $State=23$, we set $Next_State_MPS(35)=23$ for I-slice decoding. For the clarity of presentation, a separate table entry for I-slice decoding is shown in Table 9-35.

After encoding or decoding a decision, an update of the probability estimate is obtained by switching the state index $State$ to a new index, such that for I-slice coding

```
if(decision == MPS)
    State ← Next_State_MPS_INTRA(State)
else
    State ← Next_State_LPS(State)
```

and all other slice types

```
if(decision == MPS)
    State ← Next_State_MPS(State)
else
    State ← Next_State_LPS(State).
```

In the case, where the current state corresponds to a probability value of 0.5, which corresponds to the $State$ index of 0, and a LPS symbol is observed, the sense of MPS and LPS has to be interchanged.

Table 9-35 – Probability transition

State	Next_State_MPS_INTRA	Next_State_MPS	Next_State_LPS	State	Next_State_MPS	Next_State_LPS
0	1	1	0	32	33	22
1	2	2	0	33	34	22
2	3	3	1	34	35	23
3	4	4	2	35	36	23
4	5	5	2	36	37	24
5	6	6	3	37	38	24
6	7	7	4	38	39	25

7	8	8	5	39	40	25
8	9	9	6	40	41	26
9	10	10	7	41	42	26
10	11	11	8	42	43	27
11	12	12	8	43	44	27
12	13	13	10	44	45	28
13	14	14	10	45	46	28
14	15	15	10	46	47	29
15	16	16	11	47	48	29
16	17	17	12	48	49	30
17	18	18	13	49	50	30
18	19	19	14	50	51	30
19	20	20	14	51	52	31
20	21	21	14	52	53	32
21	22	22	14	53	54	33
22	23	23	15	54	55	33
23	23	24	16	55	56	34
24	-/-	25	17	56	57	34
25	-/-	26	18	57	58	35
26	-/-	27	19	58	59	35
27	-/-	28	19	59	60	36
28	-/-	29	20	60	61	37
29	-/-	30	20	61	62	37
30	-/-	31	21	62	63	38
31	-/-	32	21	63	63	38

Table 9-36 – RTAB[State][Q] table for interval subdivision

State	0	1	2	3	State	0	1	2	3
0	9216	11264	13312	15360	32	896	1152	1344	1536
1	8832	10816	12800	14720	33	896	1088	1280	1472
2	8512	10368	12288	14144	34	832	1024	1216	1408
3	8128	9920	11712	13504	35	832	960	1152	1344
4	7680	9344	11072	12736	36	768	960	1088	1280
5	7168	8768	10368	11968	37	768	896	1088	1216
6	6912	8448	9984	11520	38	704	896	1024	1152
7	6336	7808	9216	10624	39	704	832	960	1152

8	5888	7232	8512	9856	40	640	832	960	1088
9	5440	6656	7872	9088	41	640	768	896	1088
10	5120	6208	7360	8512	42	640	768	896	1024
11	4608	5632	6656	7680	43	576	704	832	960
12	4224	5184	6144	7104	44	576	704	832	960
13	3968	4800	5696	6592	45	576	704	832	960
14	3712	4480	5312	6144	46	512	640	768	896
15	3456	4224	4992	5760	47	512	640	768	896
16	3072	3776	4416	5120	48	512	640	768	832
17	2816	3456	4096	4736	49	512	640	704	832
18	2624	3200	3776	4416	50	512	576	704	832
19	2432	3008	3520	4096	51	448	576	704	768
20	2304	2816	3328	3840	52	448	576	640	768
21	2048	2496	2944	3392	53	448	512	640	704
22	1856	2240	2688	3072	54	448	512	640	704
23	1664	2048	2432	2816	55	448	512	576	704
24	1536	1856	2240	2560	56	384	512	576	704
25	1408	1728	2048	2368	57	384	512	576	640
26	1344	1600	1920	2176	58	384	448	576	640
27	1216	1472	1792	2048	59	384	448	576	640
28	1152	1408	1664	1920	60	384	448	512	640
29	1088	1344	1536	1792	61	384	448	512	640
30	1024	1280	1472	1728	62	384	448	512	576
31	960	1216	1408	1600	63	384	448	512	576

9.2.4.3 Description of the arithmetic decoding engine

The status of the arithmetic decoding engine is represented by a value V pointing into the code sub-interval and the corresponding range R of that sub-interval. Figure 9-3 gives an illustration of the whole decoding process. Performing the InitDecoder procedure, which is further specified in subclause 9.2.4.3.1, appropriately initialises V and R . For decoding of each single decision S , the following two-step operation is employed: First, the related context model CTX is determined according to the rules specified in subclauses 9.2.2. Given the context model CTX , the decoding operation Decode(CTX) then delivers the decoded symbol S as is described in detail in subclause 9.2.4.3.2.

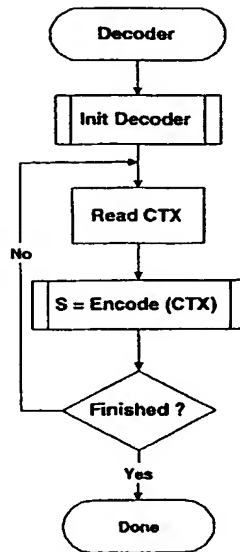


Figure 9-3 - Overview of the Decoding Process

9.2.4.3.1 Initialisation of the decoding engine

In the initialisation procedure of the decoder, as illustrated in Figure 9-4, *V* is first filled with two bytes of the compressed data using the GetByte routine as specified in subclause 9.2.4.3.4, and then the range *R* is set to 0x8000.

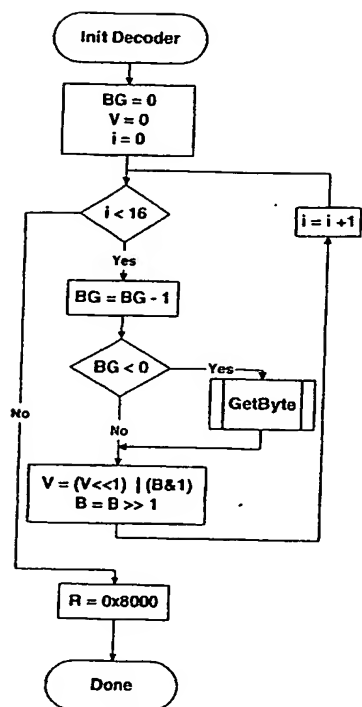


Figure 9-4 – Flowchart of initialisation of the decoding engine

9.2.4.3.2 Decoding a decision

Figure 9-5 shows the flowchart for decoding a single decision. In a first step, the estimation of the sub-interval ranges R_{LPS} and R_{MPS} corresponding to the LPS and the MPS decision is performed as follows.

Given the interval range R , we first map R to a quantized value Q using

$$Q = (R - 0x4001) \gg 12, \quad (9-11)$$

such that the state index $State$ and Q are used as an entry in the look-up table RTAB to determine R_{LPS} :

$$R_{LPS} = RTAB[State][Q]. \quad (9-12)$$

Table 9-36 specifies the corresponding values of RTAB in 16-bit representation. The tabulated values are actually given in 8-bit accuracy; the maximum value of RTAB corresponds to 14 bits and all values have been left-shifted by 6 bits for a better access in a 16-bit architecture.

In a second step, the current value of V is compared to the size of the MPS sub-interval R_{MPS} . If V is greater than or equal to R_{MPS} a LPS is decoded, V is decremented by R_{MPS} and the new range R is set to R_{LPS} ; otherwise a MPS is decoded and the new range R is determined to be R_{MPS} . Given the decoded decision, the probability update is performed accordingly as specified in subclause 9.2.4.2. Depending on the current value of the new range R , renormalization will be performed as described in more detail in subclause 9.2.4.3.3.

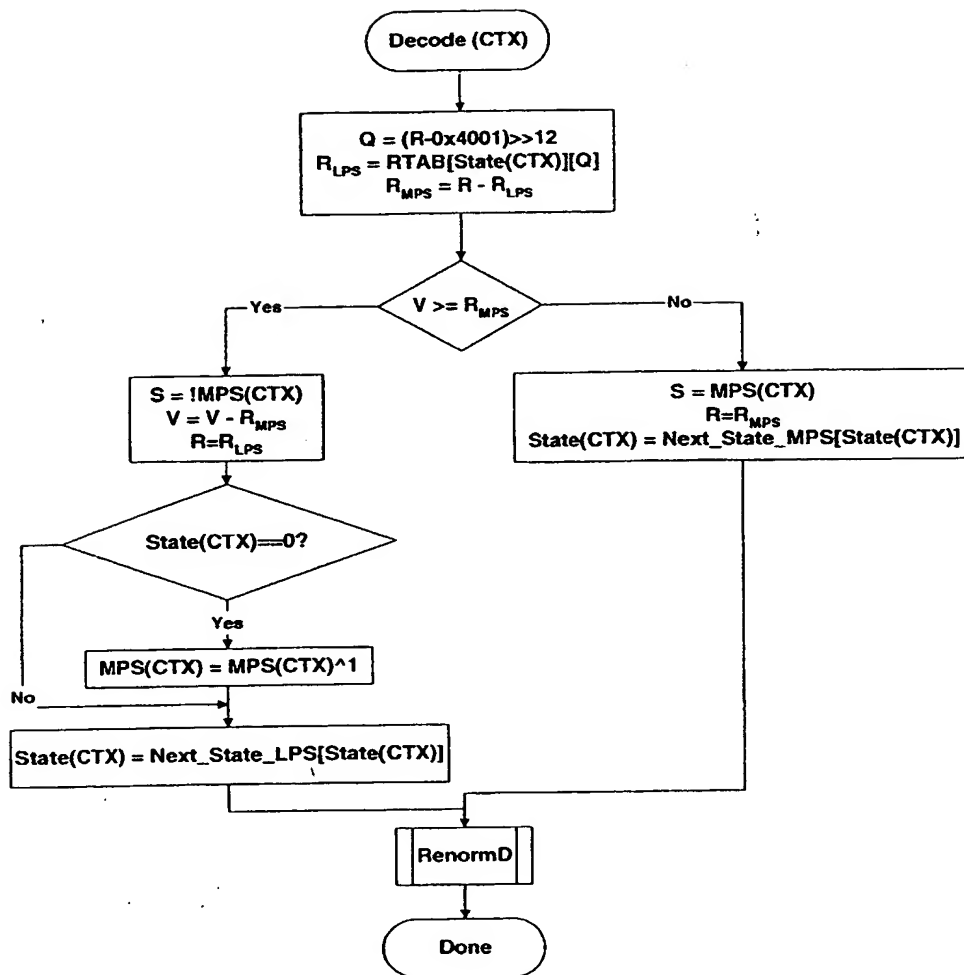


Figure 9-5 – Flowchart for decoding a decision

9.2.4.3.3 Renormalization in the decoding engine (RenormD)

Renormalization is illustrated in Figure 9-6. The current range R is first logically compared to $0x4000$: If it is greater than that value, no renormalization is needed and RenormD is finished; otherwise the renormalization loop is entered. Within this loop, the range R is doubled, i.e. left-shifted by 1 and the bit-counter BG is decremented by 1. In the case, that the condition $BG < 0$ holds, a new byte of compressed is inserted into B by calling the GetByte routine. Finally, the next bit of B is shifted into V .

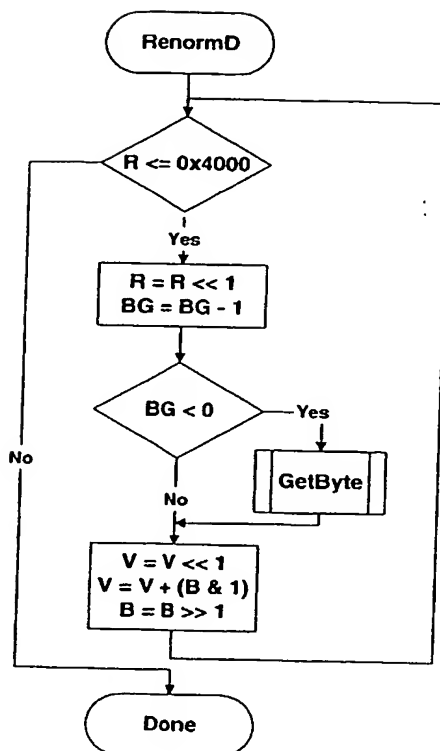


Figure 9-6 – Flowchart of renormalization

9.2.4.3.4 Input of compressed bytes (GetByte)

Figure 9-7 shows how the input of compressed data is performed. At the initialisation stage of the whole decoding process or in case a renormalization occurs and the bit-counter BG has a negative value, this procedure will be invoked. First, a new byte of compressed data is read out of the bitstream C ; then the index CL pointing to the current position of the bitstream C is incremented by 1 and the bit-counter is set to 7.

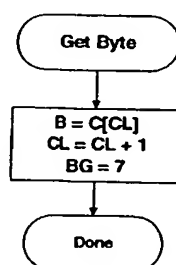


Figure 9-7 – Flowchart for Input of Compressed Bytes

9.2.4.3.5 Decoder bypass for decisions with uniform pdf (Decode_eq_pr b)

This special decoding routine applies to decoding of the sign information of motion vector data and the sign of the levels of significant transform coefficients, which are assumed to have a uniform probability distribution. Consequently omitting the probability estimation in this special case reduces the decoding process to a single comparison ($V \geq R_{half}$?) in order to determine the right subinterval and its corresponding decoded symbol value S . The subsequent renormalization process is similar to that performed in the renormalization procedure RenormD , as depicted in Figure 9-

8 with two modifications. Firstly, the rescaling operation $R \leftarrow (R < 1)$ is unnecessary and secondly, the initial comparison ($R <= 0x4000?$) can be omitted.

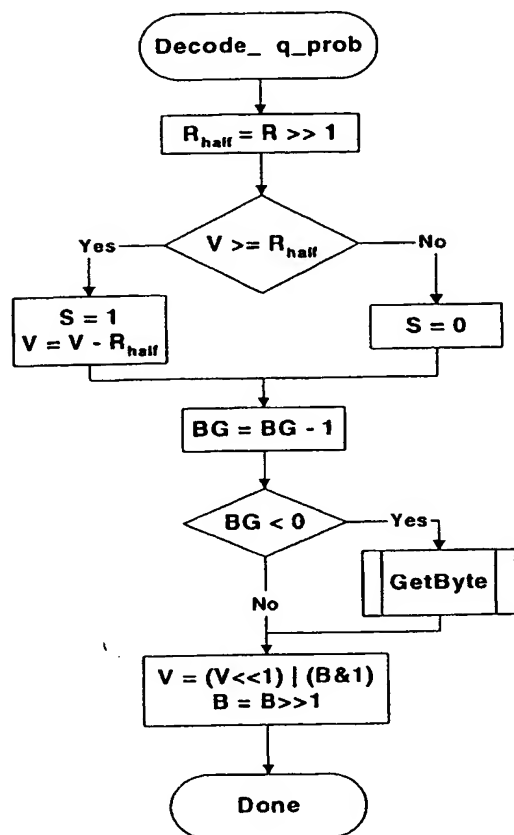


Figure 9-8 – Flowchart of decoding bypass

10 Decoding process for B slices

10.1 Introduction

The use of B (bi-predictive) slices is indicated in the `nal_unit_type`. A B slice is an inter predicted slice. The major difference between a B slice and P slice is that B slices are coded in a manner in which some macroblocks or blocks may use a weighted average of two distinct inter prediction values for building the prediction signal. Generally, B slices utilize two distinct reference index lists. Each of these index lists refer to pictures in the reference picture buffer.

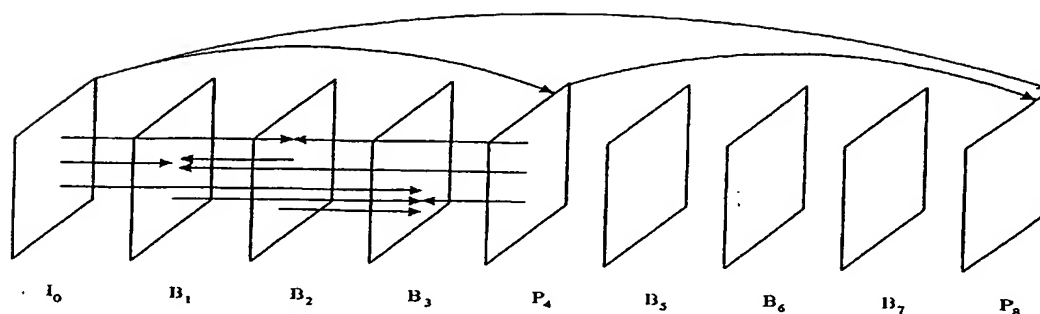


Figure 10-1 – Illustration of B picture concept

NOTE - The location of pictures in the bitstream is in a decoding order. Pictures that are dependent on other pictures shall occur in the bitstream after the pictures on which they depend. Figure 10-1 shows one hypothetical example, where three B pictures are inserted in output order between an I and a P picture and the subscripts indicate the output order. The P picture P_4 only depends on the first Intra picture I_0 . The B picture B_2 , which is temporally located between I_0 and P_4 , depends on both of these pictures. The B picture B_1 depends on I_0 , P_4 , and B_2 ; the B picture B_3 additionally depends on B_1 . While the output order for this example is given by I_0 , B_1 , B_2 , B_3 , P_4 , the decoding order is I_0 , P_4 , B_2 , B_1 , B_3 .

10.2 Decoding process for macroblock types and sub macroblock types

There are five different prediction modes supported by B pictures. They are the list 0, list 1, bi-predictive, direct, and intra prediction modes. In bi-predictive mode, the prediction signal is formed by a weighted average of list 0 and list 1 prediction values. The direct mode can result in prediction modes list 0, list 1, or bi-predictive. Prediction using the direct mode is derived from a combination of the motion vectors and macroblock type used in the co-located macroblock of the first picture (the picture at index 0) in list 1.

Coded macroblocks in B pictures utilize a similar tree-structured macroblock partitioning to P pictures. Depending on the number of elements in the two reference picture lists, up to two reference picture indices are coded for each bi-predicted region. Additionally, for each luma block of 16x16, 16x8, 8x16 samples and the associated chroma blocks, and each sub macroblock, the prediction mode (list 0, list 1, bi-predictive, direct, intra) can be chosen separately. In order to avoid a separate codeword to specify the prediction mode, the indication of the prediction direction is incorporated into the codewords for macroblock type and sub macroblock type, respectively, as shown in the Table 7-12 and Table 7-17. A sub macroblock of a B picture macroblock can also be coded in direct mode.

When `mb_adaptive_frame_field_flag` == 1, the current direct-mode macroblock shall follow the same frame/field coding mode as its co-located macroblock.

10.3 Decoding process for motion vectors

10.3.1 Differential motion vectors

In the following, the terms *temporal ordering* and *temporal distance* refer to ordering and distance according to the picture order counter described in subclause 8.3.2. This is also the decoder output order and the intended display order.

Motion vectors for list 0, list 1, or bi-predictive blocks are differentially encoded. A prediction has to be added to the motion vector differences in order to reconstruct motion vectors for the current macroblock.

As a special case of bi-predictive blocks, if the two reference pictures used for the bi-prediction both occur temporally earlier or both occur temporally later than the current picture being decoded, then the motion vector decoding is performed as described in subclause 10.3.2.

Otherwise, the predictions for bi-predictive blocks are formed from the motion vectors of spatially neighbouring blocks in a way similar to that described in subclause 8.4.1, but with a few important distinctions.

First, a list i , where $i = 0$ or 1 , motion vector MV_i from the current block is predicted only from neighbouring blocks that contain motion vectors with the same temporal direction (earlier or later in time) as MV_i . If a neighbouring block does not have a motion vector with the same temporal direction, the predictor for that block is set to zero and the neighbouring block shall be considered as belonging to a *different reference picture* for purposes of computing the median prediction of subclause 8.4.1.1.

Second, if a neighbouring bi-predicted block has both motion vectors pointing in the same temporal direction as MV_i , and both motion vectors point to the same reference picture, then the list 0 motion vector from that block is used as a

prediction. Otherwise, if a neighbouring bi-predicted block has both motion vectors pointing in the same temporal direction as MV_i but they point to different reference pictures, then the motion vector that points to the temporally closest reference picture is used.

Third, reconstructed motion vectors in direct mode neighbouring blocks shall be used as predictions for the current block motion vectors.

If a direct mode neighbouring block has two motion vectors, then this block is treated as if it were a bi-predictive neighbouring block.

If a direct mode neighbouring block has only one motion vector, then this block is considered as a list 0 or list 1 block.

In the case that the co-located block in such a direct mode block is intra coded and the `direct_spatial_mv_pred_flag` is 0, the direct mode block is treated as belonging to a *different reference picture* for purposes of computing the median prediction of subclause 8.4.1.1.

10.3.2 Motion vector decoding with scaled MV

If both reference pictures (`ref_idx_10` & `ref_idx_11`) occur temporally earlier or both occur temporally later than the current picture being decoded, then the following process is followed for decoding the motion vectors MV_1 and MV_2 for bi-predictive modes. The motion vector decoding process is illustrated in Figure 10-2. The motion vector MV_1 for the first reference picture (`ref_idx_10`) is differentially decoded using motion vector prediction as described in 10.3.1. However, the method used for decoding the motion vector MV_2 for the second reference picture (`ref_idx_11`) is as follows:

The scaled motion vector (smv) is first calculated from the motion vector MV_1 as:

$$Z = (TD_2 \times 256) / TD_1 \quad smv = (Z \times MV_1 + 128) \gg 8$$

where TD_1 is the temporal distance between the current picture and the reference picture indicated by `ref_idx_10`, and TD_2 is the temporal distance between the current picture and the reference picture indicated by `ref_idx_11`.

Then, MV_2 is differentially coded with respect to smv .

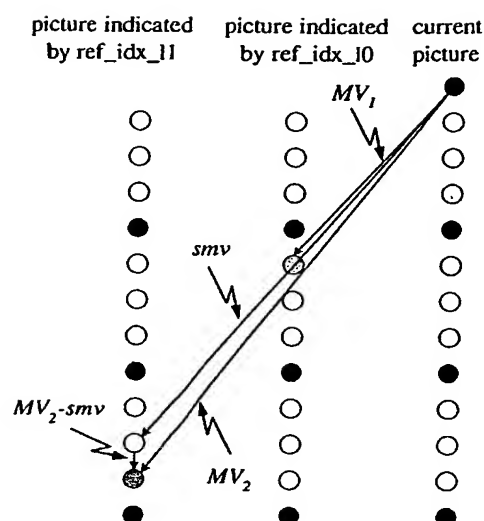


Figure 10-2 – Differential motion vector decoding with scaled motion vector

10.3.3 Motion vectors in direct mode

The `direct_spatial_mv_pred_flag` identifies for the current slice whether the direct mode motion vectors are calculated using a spatial or temporal technique. If this indicator is set to 1 then the spatial technique is used. Otherwise, if this indicator is set to 0, then direct mode motion vectors are calculated using the temporal technique.

10.3.3.1 Spatial technique of obtaining the direct mode motion parameters

The first step in the spatial technique for direct mode prediction is the determination of a candidate reference picture index for each list (list 0 and list 1).

The reference picture indices for the neighbouring blocks A, B, C, and D within the current slice for the 16x16 current luma block E, as described in subclause 8.4.1.1 and shown in Figure 8-4, shall be used to determine a preliminary candidate reference picture index for each list (list 0 and list 1) shall be the minimum reference picture index among the reference picture indices used from the same list for the prediction or bi-prediction of the neighbouring blocks. If no neighbouring blocks are present within the current slice that use prediction from the same list, either for prediction or bi-prediction, the preliminary candidate reference index for that list shall be interpreted as not existing.

If a preliminary candidate reference index exists for either list, decision of the final candidate reference indices and associated motion vector values for that list for each 4x4 block of the current macroblock depends on the coded parameters of the co-located 4x4 blocks in the first picture in list 1. If the first picture in list 1 is a short-term picture and if all lines of the co-located 4x4 block were predicted using list 0 prediction with reference picture index 0 and motion vector components in the range of -1 to 1 inclusive, then the final candidate reference picture index for the list of the current 4x4 block shall be 0 and shall be associated with a candidate motion vector value of (0, 0). Otherwise, the final candidate reference picture index for the list shall be the preliminary candidate reference picture index for the list and the associated candidate motion vector shall be obtained, using the 16x16 block motion vector prediction, as described in subclause 8.4.1 by using the final reference picture index.

If both candidate reference picture indices exist, then the block is predicted as a bi-prediction block using the final candidate reference picture index and motion vector for each list. Otherwise, if a candidate reference picture index exists for only one of the two lists, the block shall be predicted by single-list prediction using the final candidate reference picture index and associated motion vector for the existing candidate. Finally, if neither candidate reference picture index exists, bi-prediction shall be used with reference picture index zero and associated motion vector (0, 0) for both lists.

10.3.3.2 Temporal technique of obtaining the direct mode motion parameters

In the temporal technique direct mode, the same block structure as for the co-located macroblock of the first picture (the picture at index 0) in list 1 is used. For each block of the current macroblock, the list 0 and list 1 motion vectors are computed as scaled versions of the list 0 motion vector of the co-located block in the list 1 reference picture as described below.

The list 0 reference picture for the direct mode current block is the same as the list 0 reference picture used for the co-located block in the list 1 reference picture. The list 0 and list 1 motion vectors for direct mode macroblocks are calculated differently depending on whether picture_struct and the reference indicate fields or frames. Also if the list 1 co-located macroblock is an intra-coded block, the motion vectors are set to zero, and the list 0 reference picture for the direct mode is the most recent temporally preceding stored picture.

With possible adaptive switching of frame/field coding at picture level, a B frame or its list 1 reference frame can be coded in either frame structure or field structure. Hence, there are four possible combinations of frame or field coding for a pair of a macroblock in the current B picture and its co-located macroblock in the list 1 reference picture. Calculations of the two motion vectors in direct mode are slightly different for the four cases.

Case 1: Both the current macroblock and its co-located in the list 1 reference picture are in frame mode, as shown in Figure 10-3. The list 0 reference for each block within the current macroblock is the same as the list 0 reference of the co-located block in the list 1 reference picture. Two motion vectors (MV_F , MV_B) are calculated by

$$Z = (TD_B \times 256) / TD_D \quad MV_F = (Z \times MV + 128) \gg 8$$

$$W = Z - 256 \quad MV_B = (W \times MV + 128) \gg 8$$

where TD_B is the temporal distance between the current B frame and the list 0 reference frame, and TD_D is the temporal distance between the list 1 reference frame and the list 0 reference frame (see Figure 10-3).

In the case that the co-located block in the list 1 reference frame has a list 0 motion vector pointing to a long-term frame, the list 0 and list 1 motion vectors for the direct mode current block are calculated by

$$MV_F = MV$$

$$MV_B = 0$$

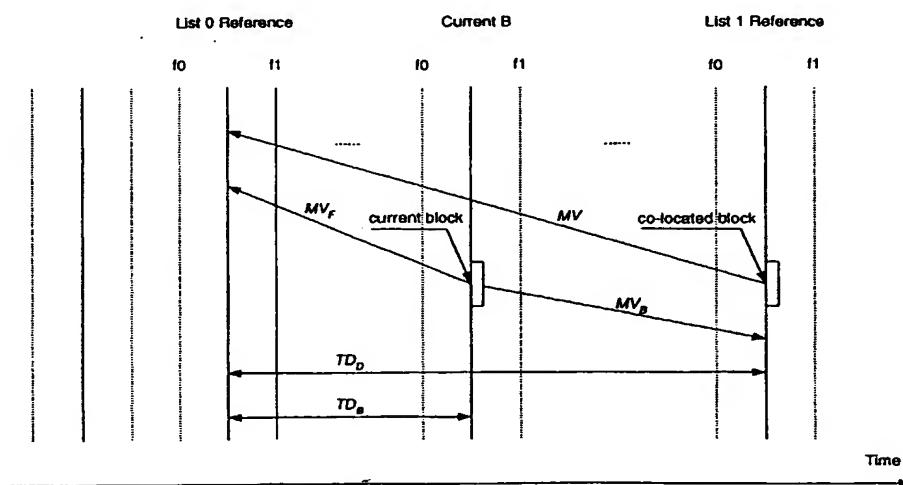


Figure 10-3 – Both the current block and its co-located block in the list 1 reference picture are in frame mode (f0 and f1 indicate the corresponding fields)

Case 2: Both the current macroblock and its co-located macroblock in the list 1 reference picture are in field mode. Two motion vectors for each block within the current macroblock are calculated from the list 0 motion vector of the co-located block in the list 1 reference field of the same parity.

For field 0, the list 0 motion vector of the co-located block will always point to one of the previously coded list 0 fields, as shown in Figure 10-4. The list 0 reference field for the direct mode block will be the same as the list 0 field of the co-located list 1 block, and the list 1 reference field will be field 0 of the list 1 reference frame. The list 0 and list 1 motion vectors ($MV_{F,i}$, $MV_{B,i}$) for the direct mode block are calculated as follows:

$$Z = TD_{B,i} \times 256 / TD_{D,i} \quad MV_{F,i} = (Z \times MV_i + 128) \gg 8$$

$$W = Z - 256$$

$$MV_{B,i} = (W \times MV_i + 128) \gg 8$$

where the subscript i is the field index (0 for the 1st field and 1 for the 2nd field), and MV_i is the list 0 motion vector of the co-located block in field i of the list 1 reference frame. $TD_{B,i}$ is the temporal distance between the current B field and the list 0 reference field. $TD_{D,i}$ is the temporal distance between the list 1 reference field and the list 0 reference field.

For field 1, the list 0 motion vector of the co-located list 1 block may point to one of the temporally previous coded fields, in which case calculation of the list 0 and list 1 motion vectors follows the same equations as above.

However, it is also possible that the list 0 motion vector of the co-located block in field 1 of the list 1 reference frame points to field 0 of the same frame, as shown in Figure 10-5. In this case, the two motion vectors for field 1 of the direct mode current block are calculated as follows:

$$Z = -TD_{B,1} \times 256 / TD_{D,1} \quad MV_{F,1} = (Z \times MV_1 + 128) \gg 8$$

$$W = Z - 256$$

$$MV_{B,1} = (W \times MV_1 + 128) \gg 8$$

Note that both motion vectors are now pointing to field 0 and field 1 of the list 1 reference frame respectively.

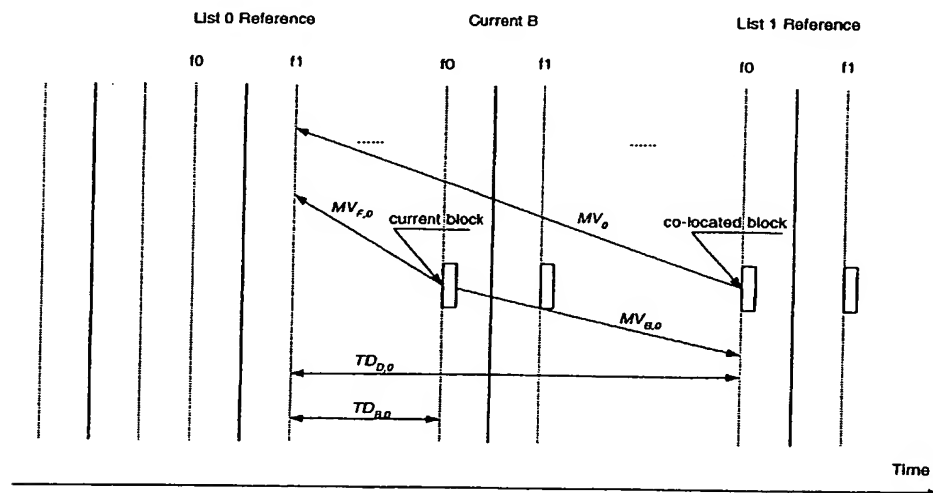


Figure 10-4 – Both the current macroblock and its co-located macroblock in the temporally subsequent picture are in field mode.

In the case that the co-located block in the list 1 reference field has a list 0 motion vector pointing to a long-term field, the list 0 and list 1 motion vectors for the direct mode are calculated by

$$MV_{F,i} = MV_i$$

$$MV_{B,i} = 0$$

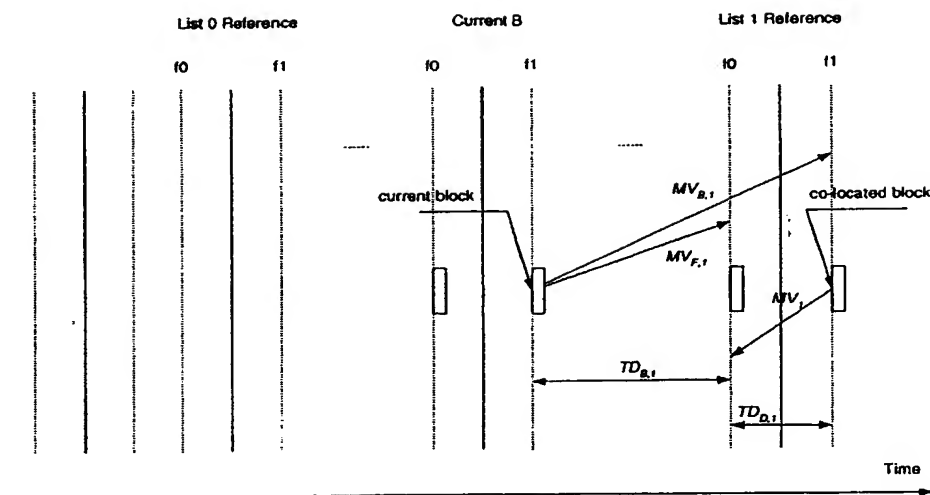


Figure 10-5 – The list 0 motion vector of the co-located block in field 1 of the list 1 reference frame may point to field 0 of the same frame.

Case 3: The current macroblock is in field mode and its co-located macroblock in the list 1 reference picture is in frame mode, as shown in Figure 10-6. Let $y_{current}$ and $y_{co-located}$ be the vertical indices of the blocks in the current macroblock and in its co-located macroblock respectively. Then, $y_{co-located} = 2 \times y_{current}$. The blocks in the current macroblock and its co-located macroblock have the same horizontal indices. The list 0 reference field is the same-parity field of the list 0 frame, and the list 1 reference field will be the same-parity field of the list 1 reference frame as shown in Figure 10-6.

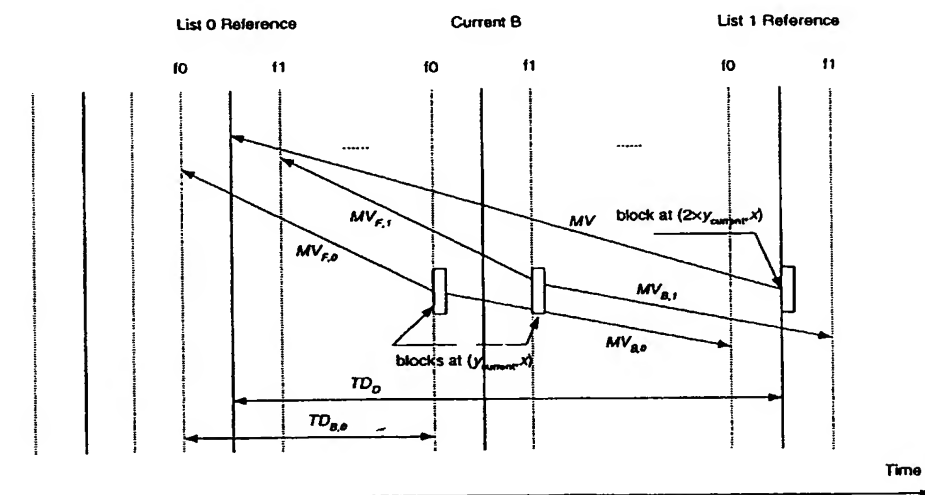


Figure 10-6 – The current macroblock is in field mode and its co-located macroblock in the list 1 reference picture is in frame mode

The motion vectors of a direct mode block are calculated from the list 0 motion vector of the co-located block in the list 1 reference frame as follows:

$$Z = TD_{B,i} \times 256 / TD_D \quad MV_{F,i} = (Z \times MV + 128) \gg 8$$

$$W = Z - 256 \quad MV_{B,i} = (W \times MV + 128) \gg 8$$

In the case that the block in the list 1 reference frame used for the direct mode motion vector calculation has a list 0 motion vector pointing to a long-term picture, the list 0 and list 1 motion vectors for the direct mode are calculated by

$$MV_{F,i} = MV$$

$$MV_{B,i} = 0$$

Case 4: The current macroblock is in frame mode while its co-located macroblock in the list 1 reference picture is in field mode, as shown in Figure 10-7. Let $y_{current}$ and $y_{co-located}$ be the vertical indices of the blocks in the current macroblock and in its co-located macroblock respectively. Then, $y_{co-located} = y_{current} / 2$. The blocks in the current macroblock and in its co-located macroblock have the same horizontal indices. The two fields of the co-located block in the list 1 reference may be coded in different modes. Since field 0 of the list 1 reference is temporally close to the current B picture, it is used in calculating the motion vectors and determining the references for direct mode current blocks as shown in Figure 10-7.

Two frame-based motion vectors of direct mode block are calculated as follows:

$$Z = TD_B \times 256 / TD_{D,0}$$

$$MV_F = (Z \times MV_0 + 128) \gg 8$$

$$W = Z - 256$$

$$MV_B = (W \times MV_0 + 128) \gg 8$$

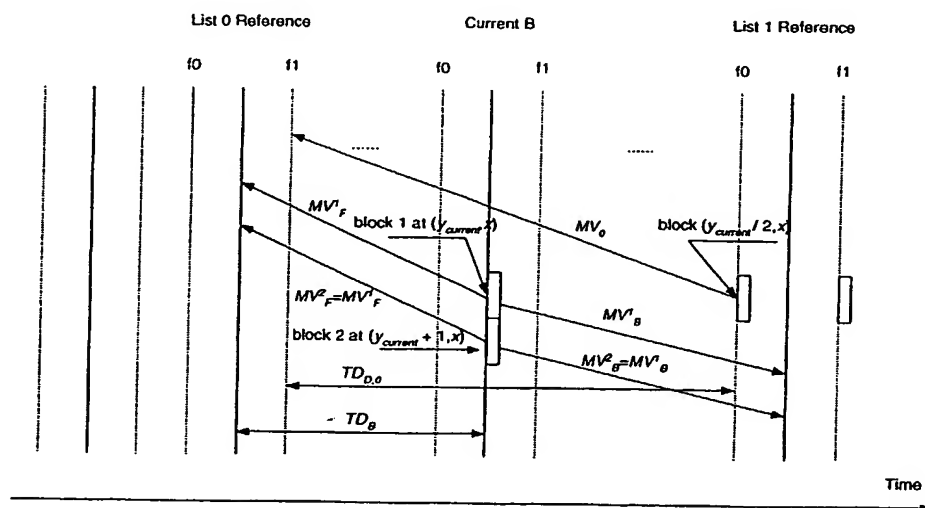


Figure 10-7 – The current macroblock is in frame mode while its co-located macroblock in the list 1 reference picture is in field mode.

In the case that the block in the list 1 reference field used for the direct mode motion vector calculation has a list 0 motion vector pointing to a long-term picture, the list 0 and list 1 motion vectors for the direct mode are calculated by

$$MV_F = MV_0$$

$$MV_B = 0$$

Ed.Note: I don't understand the following sentence. More explanation maybe needed here. This appears to indicate that if the co-located macroblock is in field, then also field mode should be used for the current macroblock/block.

Considering though that AFF is done in pairs of macroblocks, is somehow the whole group forced to be in the same mode as its co-located? This is what this seems to indicate.] When `mb_frame_field_adaptive_flag == 1`, the current direct-mode macroblock is in the same frame/field coding mode as its co-located macroblock.

10.4 Weighted prediction signal generation procedure

If `weighted_pred_flag` is equal to one, explicit weighted prediction is applied to P and SP slices. If `weighted_pred_explicit_flag` is equal to one, explicit weighted bi-prediction is applied to B slices. If `weighted_bipred_implicit_flag` is equal to one, implicit weighted bi-prediction is applied to B slices.

10.4.1 Weighted prediction in P and SP slices

In P and SP slices, when `weighted_pred_flag` is equal to one, weighted prediction is applied for predicted macroblocks. When $0 \leq \text{mb_type} \leq 4$, the luma prediction is generated as

$$P = \text{clip1}((P_0 \times W_0 + 2^{LWD-1}) \gg LWD + O_0)$$

and the chroma prediction block is generated as

$$P = \text{clip1}(128 + ((CP_0 - 128) \times CW_0 + 2^{CWD-1}) \gg CWD + CO_0)$$

where

P_0 = reference prediction block

LWD = luma_log_weight_denom

W_0 = luma_weight_l0[ref_idx_l0]

O_0 = luma_offset_l0[ref_idx_l0]

$j = 0$ for Cb and 1 for Cr

CP_0 = chroma reference prediction block

CWD = chroma_log_weight_denom

CW_0 = chroma_weight_l0[ref_idx_l0][j]

CO_0 = chroma_offset_l0[ref_idx_l0][j]

To limit the calculation to 16-bit precision, the following conditions shall be met:

$$-128 \leq W_0 \leq 127$$

$$-128 \leq CW_0 \leq 127$$

10.4.2 Explicit weighted bi-prediction in B slices

In B slices, when `weighted_bipred_explicit_flag` is equal to one, weighted prediction is applied for predicted macroblocks. For reference list 0 prediction, the luma prediction is generated as

$$P = \text{clip1}((P_0 \times W_0 + 2^{LWD-1}) \gg LWD + O_0)$$

For reference list 1 prediction, the luma prediction block is generated as:

$$P = \text{clip1}((P_1 \times W_1 + 2^{LWD-1}) \gg LWD + O_1)$$

where

P_0 = reference prediction block from list 0

P_1 = reference prediction block from list 1

$LWD = \text{luma_log_weight_denom}$
 $W_0 = \text{luma_weight_l0}[\text{ref_idx_l0}]$
 $W_1 = \text{luma_weight_l1}[\text{ref_idx_l1}]$
 $O_0 = \text{luma_offset_l0}[\text{ref_idx_l0}]$
 $O_1 = \text{luma_offset_l1}[\text{ref_idx_l1}]$

When bi-prediction is used, the luma prediction block is generated as:

$$P = \text{clip1}((P_0 \times BDW_0 + P_1 \times BDW_1 + 2^{LWD}) \gg (LWD + 1) + BDO)$$

where

$BDW_0 = \text{luma_weight_bipred_l0}[\text{ref_idx_l0}][\text{ref_idx_l1}]$
 $BDW_1 = \text{luma_weight_bipred_l1}[\text{ref_idx_l0}][\text{ref_idx_l1}]$
 $BDO = \text{luma_offset_bipred}[\text{ref_idx_l0}][\text{ref_idx_l1}]$

For reference list 0 prediction, the chroma prediction block is generated as

$$P = \text{clip1}(128 + ((CP_0 - 128) \times CW_0 + 2^{CWD-1}) \gg CWD + CO_0).$$

For reference list 1 prediction, the chroma prediction block is generated as:

$$P = \text{clip1}(128 + ((CP_1 - 128) \times CW_1 + 2^{CWD-1}) \gg CWD + CO_1).$$

When bi-prediction is used, the chroma prediction block is generated as

$$P = \text{clip1}(128 + ((CP_0 - 128) \times CBDW_0 + (CP_1 - 128) \times CBDW_1 + 2^{CWD}) \gg (CWD + 1) + CBDO)$$

where

$j = 0$ for Cb and 1 for Cr
 CP_0 = chroma reference prediction block from list 0
 CP_1 = chroma reference prediction block from list 1
 CWD = chroma_log_weight_denom
 $CW_0 = \text{chroma_weight_l0}[\text{ref_idx_l0}][j]$
 $CW_1 = \text{chroma_weight_l1}[\text{ref_idx_l1}][j]$
 $CO_0 = \text{chroma_offset_l0}[\text{ref_idx_l0}][j]$
 $CO_1 = \text{chroma_offset_l1}[\text{ref_idx_l1}][j]$
 $CBDW_0 = \text{chroma_weight_bipred_l0}[\text{ref_idx_l0}][\text{ref_idx_l1}][j]$
 $CBDW_1 = \text{chroma_weight_bipred_l1}[\text{ref_idx_l0}][\text{ref_idx_l1}][j]$
 $CBDO = \text{chroma_offset_bipred}[\text{ref_idx_l0}][\text{ref_idx_l1}][j]$

To limit the calculation to 16-bit precision, the following conditions shall be met:

$$-128 \leq W_0 \leq 127$$

$$-128 \leq W_1 \leq 127$$

$$-128 \leq W_0 + W_1 \leq 127$$

$$-128 \leq CW_0 \leq 127$$

$$-128 \leq CW_1 \leq 127$$

$$-128 \leq CW_0 + CW_1 \leq 127$$

$$-128 \leq BDW_0 + BDW_1 \leq 127$$

$$-128 \leq CBDW_0 + CBDW_1 \leq 127$$

10.4.3 Implicit bi-predictive weighting

When `weighted_bipred_implicit_flag` is equal to 1, the prediction weighting factors are not sent explicitly and the luma and chroma predictions are generated as follows.

If the decoding order of the reference picture indicated by `ref_idx_10` is previous to or the same as that indicated by `ref_idx_11`, or for skipped macroblocks or direct mode, the prediction signals are generated as follows:

$$P = \text{clip1}(P_0 \times 2 - P_1)$$

where

P_0 = reference prediction block from list 0

P_1 = reference prediction block from list 1;

otherwise, the prediction signals are generated as follows

$$P = (P_0 + P_1 + 1) >> 1$$

where

P_0 = reference prediction block from list 0

P_1 = reference prediction block from list 1.

11 Decoding process for SP and SI slices

11.1 General

SP slices make use of motion-compensated predictive coding to exploit temporal redundancy in the sequence, in a similar manner to P slices. SI slices make use of spatial prediction, in a similar manner to I slices. Unlike P slices, however, SP slice coding allows identical reconstruction of a slice even when different reference pictures are being used. SI slice coding allows identical reconstruction to a corresponding SP slice.

NOTE - Above mentioned properties of SP and SI slices provide functionalities for bitstream switching, splicing, random access, VCR functionalities such as fast-forward, and error resilience/recovery.

An SP slice consists of macroblocks coded either as Intra type (Intra_4x4 or Intra_16x16) or Pred type (MbSkip, Pred_L0_16x16, Pred_L0_L0_16x8, Pred_L0_L0_8x16, Pred_8x8 or Pred_8x8ref0). An SI slice consists of macroblocks coded either as Intra type or SIIntra4x4 type.

Intra macroblocks in SP slices shall be decoded as described in subclause 8.3. All other macroblocks, including MbSkip, are decoded as described below.

The Intra_8x8 sub-partition mode shall not be present in SP slices.

Intra macroblocks in SI slices are decoded as described in subclause 8.3, with the addition that the prediction mode of a neighbouring SIIntra_4x4 block is considered to be “mode 2: DC prediction”. SIIntra_4x4 macroblocks are decoded as described below.

11.2 SP decoding process for non-switching pictures

This subclause applies to all macroblocks in SP slices in which $sp_for_switch_flag == 0$, except those with $slice_type()$ equal to Intra_4x4 or Intra_16x16. It does not apply to SI slices.

Figure 11-1 depicts generic decoding for non-intra coded macroblocks in SP slices. The prediction $P(x,y)$ for the current macroblock of the slice being decoded is formed by the motion compensated prediction block using the same process as is used in P slice decoding. After forming the predicted block $P(x,y)$, decoding is performed as follows.

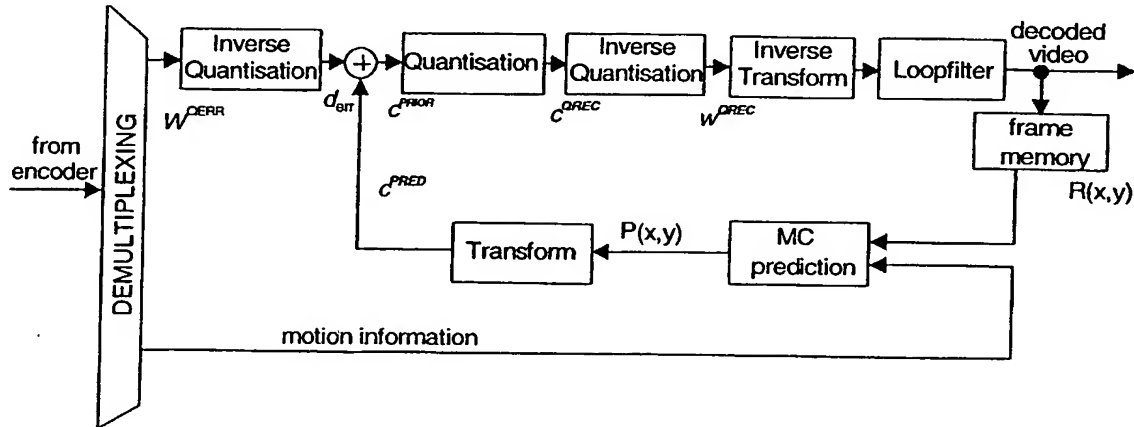


Figure 11-1 – A block diagram of a conceptual decoder for non-intra coded macroblocks in SP slices in which $sp_for_switch_flag == 0$.

11.2.1 Luma transform coefficient decoding

The predicted block, $P(x,y)$, where $P(x,y) = \{p_{00} \dots p_{33}\}$, is transformed according to Equation 11-1 to produce transform coefficients c^{PRED} .

$$c^{PRED} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 & -2 \\ 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 & 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} P_{00} & P_{01} & P_{02} & P_{03} \\ P_{10} & P_{11} & P_{12} & P_{13} \\ P_{20} & P_{21} & P_{22} & P_{23} \\ P_{30} & P_{31} & P_{32} & P_{33} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 & -2 \\ 1 & -1 & -1 & 2 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (11-1)$$

The received prediction residual coefficients, w^{QERR} , are scaled using quantisation parameter QP, and added to the transform coefficients of the prediction block, as in Equation 11-2.

$$c_{ij}^{PRIOR} = c_{ij}^{PRED} + (((w_{ij}^{QERR} * R_{ij}^{(QP\%6)} * A_{ij}) \ll (QP/6)) \gg 6) \quad i, j = 0, \dots, 3 \quad (11-2)$$

where R is defined in Equation 8-40, and where A is defined as:

$$A_{ij}^{(m)} = 16 \text{ for } (i,j) = \{(0,0), (0,2), (2,0), (2,2)\},$$

$$A_{ij}^{(m)} = 25 \text{ for } (i,j) = \{(1,1), (1,3), (3,1), (3,3)\},$$

$$A_{ij}^{(m)} = 20 \text{ otherwise};$$

For luma, $QP = QP_Y$, as defined in Equation 7-7 and 7-9.

The coefficients $Q_{ij}^{(m)}$, used in the formulas below, are defined as:

$$Q_{ij}^{(m)} = M_{m,0} \text{ for } (i,j) = \{(0,0),(0,2),(2,0),(2,2)\},$$

$$Q_{ij}^{(m)} = M_{m,1} \text{ for } (i,j) = \{(1,1),(1,3),(3,1),(3,3)\},$$

$$Q_{ij}^{(m)} = M_{m,2} \text{ otherwise;}$$

where the first and second subscripts of M are row and column indices, respectively, of the matrix defined as:

$$M = \begin{bmatrix} 13107 & 5243 & 8066 \\ 11916 & 4660 & 7490 \\ 10082 & 4194 & 6554 \\ 9362 & 3647 & 5825 \\ 8192 & 3355 & 5243 \\ 7282 & 2893 & 4559 \end{bmatrix}$$

The resulting sum, c^{PRIOR} , is quantised with a quantisation parameter QS , as in Equation 11-3.

For luma, $QS = QS_Y$, which is defined in Equation 7-8.

$$c_{ij}^{QREC} = \{ \text{Sign}(c_{ij}^{PRIOR}) * [\text{Abs}(c_{ij}^{PRIOR}) * Q_{ij}^{(QS\%6)} + (1 << (15 + QS/6))] \} >> (16 + QS/6) \quad i, j = 0, \dots, 3 \quad (11-3)$$

These quantised levels, c^{QREC} , are scaled as in Equation 11-4.

$$w_{ij}^{QREC} = (c_{ij}^{QREC} * R_{ij}^{(QS\%6)}) << (QS/6) \quad i, j = 0, \dots, 3 \quad (11-4)$$

where R is defined in Equation 8-40.

The transform and reconstruction processes are performed for these scaled levels, as defined in Equations 8-48 through 8-59. Finally, after the reconstruction of a macroblock, filtering takes place as described in subclause 8.7.

11.2.2 Chroma transform coefficient decoding

The decoding of chroma components for non-intra coded macroblocks in SP slices is similar to the decoding of luma components.

The predicted block, $P(x,y)$, where $P(x,y) = \{p_{00} \dots p_{33}\}$, is transformed according to Equation 11-1 to produce transform coefficients c^{PRED} . An additional 2x2 transform is applied to the DC coefficients of these blocks. The 2 dimensional 2x2 transform procedure is defined in Equation 11-5:

$$c^{PRED} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} DC_{00} & DC_{01} \\ DC_{10} & DC_{11} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (11-5)$$

The received DC prediction residual coefficients, w^{QERR} , are scaled using quantisation parameter QP , and added to the DC transform coefficients of the prediction block, as in Equation 11-6.

$$c_{ij}^{PRIOR} = c_{ij}^{PRED} + (((w_{ij}^{QERR} * R_{ij}^{(QP\%6)} * A_{ij}) << (QP/6)) >> 5) \quad i, j = 0, \dots, 3 \quad (11-6)$$

The resulting sum, c^{PRIOR} , is quantised with a quantisation parameter QS , as in Equation 11-7.

$$c_{ij}^{QREC} = \{ \text{Sign}(c_{ij}^{PRIOR}) * [\text{Abs}(c_{ij}^{PRIOR}) * Q_{ij}^{(QS\%6)} + (1 << (16 + QS/6))] \} >> (17 + QS/6) \quad i, j = 0, \dots, 3 \quad (11-7)$$

These quantised levels, c_{ij}^{QREC} , are scaled as in Equation 11-4.

AC coefficients are decoded in an identical process to that used for luma.

The value of QP to be used for chroma data, denoted QP_C , is obtained from QP_Y using the relationship specified in Table 9-1. Similarly, the value of QS to be used for chroma data, denoted QS_C , is obtained from QS_Y using the relationship specified in Table 9-1.

11.3 SP and SI slice decoding process for switching pictures

This subclause applies to all macroblocks in SP slices in which `sp_for_switch_flag == 1`, except those with `slice_type()` equal to `Intra_4x4` or `Intra_16x16`; and to all macroblocks in SI slices, except those with `slice_type()` equal to `Intra_4x4` or `Intra_16x16`.

Figure 11-2 depicts generic decoding for macroblocks in SI and SP slices that are not Intra coded. In SP slices, the prediction $P(x,y)$ for the current coded macroblock of the slice being decoded is formed by the inter prediction block using the same process as is used in P slice decoding. In SI slices, the prediction $P(x,y)$ is formed by intra prediction using the same process as is used in I slice decoding. After forming the predicted block $P(x,y)$, the decoding of SI and non-intra coded macroblocks in SP slices follows the same steps.

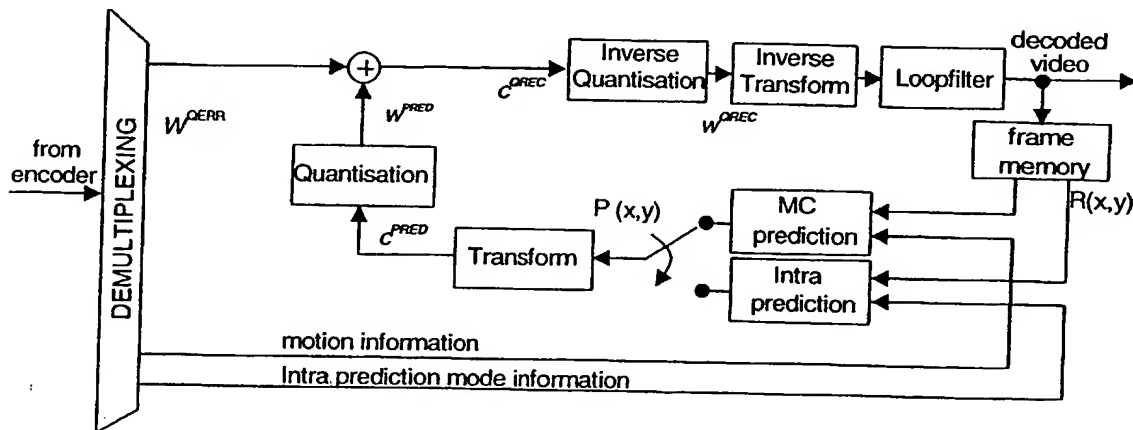


Figure 11-2 – A block diagram of a conceptual decoder for non-intra macroblocks in SI slices; and for non-intra coded macroblocks in SP slices in which `sp_for_switch_flag == 1`.

When decoding `SIIntra_4x4` macroblocks, the intra prediction modes of the neighbouring `SIIntra_4x4` and `Intra_4x4` blocks are taken into account as described in subclause 8.5.

When decoding `Intra_4x4` macroblocks, the intra prediction modes of the neighbouring `Intra_4x4` blocks are taken into account as described in subclause 8.5, but the prediction mode of the neighbouring `SIIntra_4x4` blocks are considered to be “mode 2: DC prediction”.

11.3.1 Luma transform coefficient decoding

The predicted block, $P(x,y)$, where $P(x,y) = \{p_{00} \dots p_{33}\}$, is transformed according to Equation 11-1 to produce transform coefficients c^{PRED} . These transform coefficients are then quantised with a quantisation parameter QS , as in Equation 11-8.

$$w_{ij}^{PRED} = \{ \text{Sign}(c_{ij}^{PRED}) * [\text{Abs}(c_{ij}^{PRED}) * Q_{ij}^{(QS\%6)} + (1 < (15 + QS/6))] \} >> (16 + QS/6) \quad i, j = 0, \dots, 3 \quad (11-8)$$

Note: Equation 11-8 is the same as Equation 11-3 except for the change of name of input and output variables.

For luma, $QS = QS_Y$, which is defined in Equation 7-8.

The received prediction residual coefficients, w^{QERR} , are added to these quantised transform coefficients of the prediction block, as in Equation 11-9.

$$c_{ij}^{QREC} = w_{ij}^{PRED} + w_{ij}^{QERR} \quad i, j = 0, \dots, 3 \quad (11-9)$$

These quantised levels, c^{QREC} , are decoded as in subclause 11.1.1

11.3.1.2 Chroma transform coefficient decoding

The decoding of chroma components for SP and SI non-intra macroblocks is similar to the decoding of luma components.

The predicted block, $P(x,y)$, where $P(x,y) = \{p_{00} \dots p_{33}\}$, is transformed according to Equation 11-1 to produce transform coefficients c^{PRED} . An additional 2x2 transform is applied to the DC coefficients of these blocks as in Equation 11-5:

The DC transform coefficients are then quantised with a quantisation parameter QS , as in Equation 11-10.

$$w_{ij}^{PRED} = \{ \text{Sign}(c_{ij}^{PRED}) * [\text{Abs}(c_{ij}^{PRED}) * Q_{ij}^{(QS*6)} + (1 < (16 + QS/6))] \} \gg (17 + QS/6) \quad (11-10)$$

$i, j = 0, \dots, 3$

NOTE - Equation 11-10 is the same as Equation 11-7 except for the change of name of input and output variables.

The received prediction residual DC coefficients, w^{QERR} , are added to these quantised DC transform coefficients of the prediction block, as in Equation 11-9.

AC coefficients are decoded in an identical process to that used for luma.

The value of QP to be used for chroma data, denoted QP_C , is obtained from QP_Y using the relationship specified in Table 9-1. Similarly, the value of QS to be used for chroma data, denoted QS_C , is obtained from QS_Y using the relationship specified in Table 9-1.

12 Adaptive block size transforms

12.1 Introduction

In this clause, the modifications to the syntax and semantics in clause 7 and the changes to the decoding process in clause 8 and to entropy coding in clause 9 for adaptive block size transforms are described.

If `adaptive_block_size_transform_flag` == 1, additional transforms of size 4x8, 8x4, and 8x8 are specified for the luma residual. The chroma residual decoding process remains unchanged. Adaptive block size transforms are used for all macroblocks with $QP_Y \geq 12$. In inter predicted macroblocks, the transform block size is indicated by the block size used for inter prediction. For intra macroblocks, the block size used for intra prediction is connected to the block size of the transformation. For intra macroblocks in inter slices, the block size is indicated by the syntax element `intra_block_typeABT`. For intra slices, the intra block size is indicated by the macroblock block mode.

Figure 12-1 shows the order of the assignments of syntax elements for luma resulting from coding a macroblock to sub-blocks of the macroblock if the ABT features is used. The assignment of blocks and `coded_block_patternY` is specified in Figure 12-1. An 8x8 block may contain 1, 2, or 4 transform blocks. An indication that an 8x8 block contains coefficients means that the 8x8 transform blocks or one or more of the 2, or 4 transform blocks within the 8x8 block contains coefficients. The chroma 4x4 residual blocks are ordered after the luma blocks as indicated in Figure 6-6.

CBPY 8x8 block order

0	1
2	3

Luma residual coding ABT block order for one CBBY 8x8 block

8x8	8x4	4x8	4x4
0	0 1	0 1	0 1 2 3

Figure 12-1 – Ordering of blocks for CBBY and luma residual coding of ABT blocks

12.2 ABT Syntax

12.2.1 Macroblock layer syntax

macroblock_layer_abt() {	Category	Descriptor
mb_type ;	4	ue(v) ae(v)
if(num_mb_partition[mb_type] == 4)		
sub_mb_pred_abt(mb_type)	4	
else		
mb_pred_abt(mb_type)	4	
SendResidual = 0		
if(mb_partition_pred_mode(, 1) == Intra && mb_type != Intra_4x4) { /* Intra_16x16_X_Y_Z mb_type */		
coded_block_pattern	4	me(v) ae(v)
if(coded_block_pattern > 0)		
SendResidual = 1		
} else {		
coded_block_pattern	4	me(v) ae(v)
if(coded_block_pattern > 0)		
SendResidual = 1		
}		
if(SendResidual) {		
if(!mb_frame_field_adaptive_flag (mb_frame_field_adaptive_flag && (pic_structure == 0 pic_structure == 3 pic_structure == 4) && first_non_skip_mb_in_pair())		
delta_qp	4	se(v) ae(v)
residual_abt()	5 6	
}		
}		

12.2.1.1 Macroblock prediction syntax

mb_pred_abt(mb_type) {	Category	Descriptor
if(mb_partition_pred_mode(, 1) == Intra) {		
if(mb_type == Intra_4x4 mb_type == ABTIntra_4x4 mb_type == ABTIntra_4x8 mb_type == ABTIntra_8x4 mb_type == ABTIntra_8x8) {		
if(MbABTFlag && (slice_type() == Pred slice_type() == BiPred))		
intra_block_typeABT	4	me(v) ae(v)
for(i = 0; i < num_mb_intra_partition(); i++) /* for each luma block */		
intra_pred_mode	4	ce(v) ae(v)
}		
intra_chroma_pred_mode	4	ue(v) ae(v)
} else if(mb_type != Direct_16x16) {		
for(i = 0; i < num_mb_partition(mb_type, i); i++)		
if(num_ref_idx_l0_active_minus1 > 0 && mb_partition_pred_mode(mb_type, i) != Pred_L1)		
ref_idx_l0	4	ue(v) ae(v)
for(i = 0; i < num_mb_partition(mb_type, i); i++) {		
if(num_ref_idx_l1_active_minus1 > 0 && mb_partition_pred_mode(mb_type, i) != Pred_L0)		
ref_idx_l1	4	ue(v) ae(v)
for(i = 0; i < num_mb_partition(mb_type); i++) {		
if(mb_partition_pred_mode(mb_type, i) != Pred_L1)		
for(j = 0; j < 2; j++)		
mvd_l0[i][j]	4	se(v) ae(v)
for(i = 0; i < num_mb_partition(mb_type); i++) {		
if(mb_partition_pred_mode(mb_type, i) != Pred_L0)		
for(j = 0; j < 2; j++)		
mvd_l1[i][j]	4	se(v) ae(v)
}		
}		

12.2.1.2 Sub macroblock prediction syntax

sub_mb_pred_abt(mb_type) {	Category	Descriptor
for(i = 0; i < 4; i++) /* for each sub macroblock */		
sub_mb_type[i]	4	ue(v) ae(v)
IntraChromaPredModeFlag = 0		
for(i = 0; i < 4; i++) /* for each sub macroblock */		
if(sub_mb_type[i] == Intra_8x8) {		
if(MbABTFlag) {		
intra_block_typeABT	4	me(v) ae(v)
for(j = 0; j < num_sub_mb_intra_partition(); j++) {		
intra_pred_mode	4	ce(v) ae(v)
IntraChromaPredModeFlag = 1		
}		
}		
if(IntraChromaPredModeFlag)		
intra_chroma_pred_mode	4	ue(v) ae(v)
for(i = 0; i < 4; i++) /* for each sub macroblock */		
if(num_ref_idx_l0_active_minus1 > 0 && mb_type != Pred_8x8ref0 && sub_mb_type[i] != Intra_8x8 && sub_mb_type[i] != Direct_8x8 && sub_mb_pred_mode(sub_mb_type[i]) != Pred_L1)		
ref_idx_l0	4	ue(v) ae(v)
for(i = 0; i < 4; i++) /* for each sub macroblock */		
if(num_ref_idx_l1_active_minus1 > 0 && (sub_mb_type[i] != Intra_8x8 && sub_mb_type[i] != Direct_8x8 && sub_mb_pred_mode(sub_mb_type[i]) != Pred_L0)		
ref_idx_l1	4	ue(v) ae(v)
for(i = 0; i < 4; i++) /* for each sub macroblock */		
if(sub_mb_type[i] != Intra_8x8 && sub_mb_type[i] != Direct_8x8 && sub_mb_pred_mode(sub_mb_type[i]) != Pred_L1)		
for(j = 0; j < num_sub_mb_partition(sub_mb_type[i]); j++)		
for(k = 0; k < 2; k++)		
mvd_l0[i][j][k]	4	se(v) ae(v)
for(i = 0; i < 4; i++) /* for each sub macroblock */		
if(sub_mb_type[i] != Intra_8x8 && sub_mb_type[i] != Direct_8x8 && sub_mb_pred_mode(sub_mb_type[i]) != Pred_L0)		
for(j = 0; j < num_sub_mb_partition(sub_mb_type[i]); j++)		
for(k = 0; k < 2; k++)		
mvd_l1[i][j][k]	4	se(v) ae(v)
}		

12.2.1.3 Residual data syntax

residual_abt(mb_type) {	Category	Descriptor
if(entropy_coding_mode == 1) {		
residual_4x4block = residual_4x4block_cabac() /* function pointer */	5 6	
residual_subblock = residual_subblock_cabac() /* function pointer */	5 6	
} else {		
residual_4x4block = residual_4x4block_cavlc() /* function pointer */	5 6	
residual_subblock = residual_subblock_cavlc() /* function pointer */	5 6	
}		
if(mb_type == Intra_16x16)		
residual_4x4block(intra16x16DC, 16)	5	
for(i8x8 = 0; i8x8 < 4; i8x8++) /* each luma 8x8 block */		
for(i4x4 = 0; i4x4 < num_sub_blocks(); i4x4++) /* each sub-block of block */		
if(coded_block_pattern & (1 << i8x8))		
if(mb_type == Intra_16x16)		
residual_4x4block(intra16x16AC, 16)	5	
else		
if(MbABTFlag && (slice_type() == Intra mb_type == Intra_4x4)		
residual_subblock(IntraABT, sub_block_type)	5 6	
else		
residual_subblock(InterABT, sub_block_type)	5 6	
if(coded_block_pattern & 0x30) /* chroma DC residual coded */		
for(iCbCr = 0; iCbCr < 2; iCbCr++)		
residual_4x4block(chromaDC, 4)	5 6	
if(coded_block_pattern & 0x20) /* chroma AC residual coded */		
for(iCbCr = 0; iCbCr < 2; iCbCr++)		
For(i4x4 = 0; i4x4 < 4; i4x4++)		
residual_4x4block(chromaAC, 16)	5 6	
}		

12.2.1.3.1 Residual sub block CAVLC syntax

residual_subblock_cavlc(block_coding_type, sub_block_type) {		
if(! MbABTFlag)		
residual_4x4block_cavlc(luma, 16)	5 6	
else {		
if(block_coding_type == IntraABT) {		
num_coeff_abt	5 6	ce(v)
for (i=0; i<num_coeff_abt; i++) {		
code_number	5 6	ce(v)
if(code_number != escape) {		
level[i] = code_number2level_intra(code_number, sub_block_type)		
run[i] = code_number2run_intra(code_number, sub_block_type)		
} else {		
code_number	5 6	ce(v)
level[i] = escape_level[code_number]		
code_number	5 6	ce(v)
run[i] = escape_run[code_number]		
}		
}		
} else {		
for(i=0; i<max_numcoeffABT(sub_block_type); i++) {		
code_number	5 6	ce(v)
if(code_number == 0)		
break;		
if(code_number != escape) {		
run[i] = code_number2run_inter(code_number, sub_block_type)		
level[i] = code_number2level_inter(code_number, sub_block_type)		
} else {		
code_number	5 6	ce(v)
level[i] = escape_level[code_number]		
code_number	5 6	ce(v)
run[i] = escape_run[code_number]		
}		
}		
}		
}		
}		

12.2.1.3.2 Residual sub block CABAC syntax

residual_subblock_cabac(block_coding_type, sub_block_type) {	Cat e g r y	Descriptor
if(! MbABTFlag)		
residual_4x4block_cabac(luma, 16)	5 6	
else {		
if(sub_block_type != 8x8)		
cbp4	5 6	ae(v)
if(cbp4 sub_block_type == 8x8) {		
max_numcoeff = max_num_coeff_abt(sub_block_type)		
significant_coeff[max_numcoeff - 1] = 1		
for(i = 0; i < max_numcoeff; i++) {		
significant_coeff[i]	5 6	ae(v)
if(significant_coeff[i] && i < max_numcoeff-1) {		
last_significant_coeff[i]	5 6	ae(v)
if(last_significant_coeff[i])		
max_numcoeff = i + 1		
}		
}		
}		
for(i = max_numcoeff-1; i >= 0; i--)		
if(significant_coeff[i]) {		
coeff_absolute_value_minus1[i]	5 6	ae(v)
coeff_sign[i]	5 6	ae(v)
}		
}		
}		

12.3 ABT Semantics

12.3.1 Macroblock layer semantics

MbABTFlag indicates the usage of ABT for the macroblock. If adaptive_block_transform_flag is equal 1 and $QP_Y \geq 12$ MbABTFlag = 1 else MbABTFlag = 0.

The meaning of mb_type 'Intra_4x4' in Inter slices is modified for ABT. If MbABTFlag is equal 1, this macroblock type indicates application of ABT Intra prediction and transformation. In Inter slices, the block size used for prediction and transform is indicated by the syntax element intra_block_typeABT. For I slices, the prediction and transform block size is derived from the macroblock mode. The modified macroblock types for I slices are specified in Table 12-1 below.

Table 12-1 – Modified macroblock types for I slices

Value of mb_type	Name of mb_type in I slices if MbABTFlag == 1	mb_partition_pred_mode(, 1)
0	ABTIntra_4x4	Intra
1	ABTIntra_4x8	Intra
2	ABTIntra_8x4	Intra
3	ABTIntra_8x8	Intra

12.3.1.1 Macroblock prediction semantics

`num_mb_intra_partition()` depends on `mb_type` in I slices and on `intra_block_typeABT` in P slices. The assignment of `num_mb_intra_partition()` is specified in Table 12-2.

`intra_block_typeABT` indicates the blocksize used for ABT intra decoding in Inter slices. Blocks of size 4x4, 4x8, 8x4 and 8x8 samples may be used for ABT intra prediction. Table 12-2 provides `num_mb_intra_partition` and `num_sub_mb_intra_partition` specifying the number of `intra_pred_mode` syntax elements to be decoded.

Table 12-2 – ABT intra partitions

<code>mb_type</code>	<code>intra_block_typeABT</code>	<code>num_mb_intra_partition()</code>	<code>num_sub_mb_intra_partition()</code>
ABTIntra_4x4	4x4	16	4
ABTIntra_4x8	4x8	8	2
ABTIntra_8x4	8x4	8	2
ABTIntra_8x8	8x8	4	1

12.3.1.2 Sub macroblock prediction semantics

If `MbABTFlag` is equal 1, the number of decoded intra prediction modes is indicated by `num_sub_mb_intra_partition()` as specified in Table 12-2.

12.3.1.3 Residual data semantics

`num_sub_blocks()` indicates the number of partitions in a luma 8x8 block. If `MbABTFlag` is equal 0 `num_sub_blocks` is 4. If `MbABTFlag` equals 1, `num_sub_blocks` may be 1, 2, or 4 depending on `sub_block_type` as specified in Table 12-3.

Table 12-3 – ABT Intra Block Types

<code>sub_block_type</code>	<code>num_sub_blocks()</code>	<code>max_num_coeff_abt()</code>
4x4	4	16
4x8	2	32
8x4	2	32
8x8	1	64

`sub_block_type` indicates the block type used for decoding of an 8x8 block. The decoded blocks may be of size 4x4, 4x8, 8x4, or 8x8 samples. For intra slices with `MbABTFlag` == 1, `sub_block_type` for macroblock type `ABTIntra_NxM` is NxM. For intra macroblocks and intra sub macroblocks in inter slices `sub_block_type` is equal to `intra_block_typeABT`. For inter macroblocks with macroblock type `Pred_x_NxM` or `Pred_x_y_NxM` or `BiPred_x_NxM` or `BiPred_x_y_NxM`, `x, y = L0, L1, Bi`, `sub_block_type` is `N'xM'`. `N'` and `M'` are derived from `N` and `M` by clipping:

$$N' = \text{Clip3}(4, 8, N) \quad (12-1)$$

$$M' = \text{Clip3}(4, 8, M) \quad (12-2)$$

For sub macroblocks with sub macroblock type `Pred_x_NxM` or `Pred_x_y_NxM` or `BiPred_x_NxM` or `BiPred_x_y_NxM`, `x, y = L0, L1, Bi`, `sub_block_type` is NxM.

For macroblocks and sub macroblocks that are predicted in direct mode, `sub_block_type` is derived from the co-located macroblock or sub macroblock. If `MbABTFlag` is equal 1 for the co-located macroblock, `sub_block_type` for the current macroblock is derived from the co-located macroblock type or sub macroblock type as specified above. If `MbABTFlag` is equal 0 for the co-located macroblock and the type of the co-located macroblock is not `Intra_16x16`, `sub_block_type` is equal 4x4. If `MbABTFlag` is equal 0 for the co-located macroblock and the type of the co-located macroblock is `Intra_16x16`, `sub_block_type` is equal 8x8. If the co-located macroblock type is `MbSkip`, `sub_block_type` is equal 8x8.

`block_coding_type` indicates if an Inter or an Intra block is decoded. Inter blocks are indicated by `block_coding_type = 'InterABT'`; intra blocks are indicated by `block_coding_type = 'IntraABT'`.

12.3.1.3.1 Residual sub block CAVLC semantics

`num_coeff_abt` indicates the number of coefficients to be decoded. `num_coeff_abt` is bound by `max_num_coeff_abt()` specified in Table 12-3.

`cod_number` indicates the number of the decoded codeword. The code structure of the codewords depending on the syntax element to be decoded is specified in subclause 12.4.1.

`code_number2run_intra()` retrieves run from Table 12-9 for Intra blocks dependent on QP_Y .

`code_number2run_inter()` retrieves run from Table 12-9 for Inter blocks.

`code_number2level_intra()` retrieves level from Table 12-9 for Intra blocks dependent on QP_Y .

`code_number2level_inter()` retrieves level from Table 12-9 for Inter blocks.

`escape` indicates separate() decoding of level and run. The value of escape is specified in subclause 12.5.1.2.2.

`escape_level()` retrieve level symbol after escape as specified in Table 12-8.

`escape_run()` retrieve run symbol after escape as specified in Table 12-6.

12.3.1.3.2 Residual sub block CABAC semantics

The syntax elements of `residual_subblock_cabac()` are specified in subclause 7.4.5.3.2.

12.4 ABT decoding process

12.4.1 Intra Prediction for 4x8, 8x4, and 8x8 luma blocks

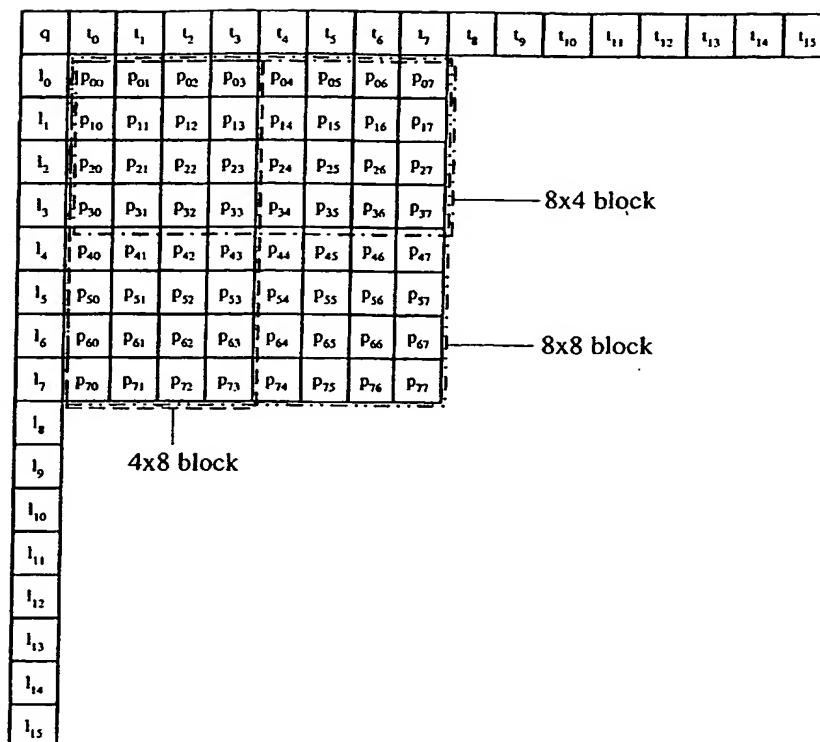


Figure 12-2 – Identification of samples used for ABT intra spatial prediction for 4x8, 8x4, and 8x8 luma blocks

Figure 12-2 illustrates the intra prediction for 4x8, 8x4, and 8x8 blocks that may be used in addition to the 4x4 intra prediction specified in subclause 8.5. The samples p_{mn} , with $m=0$ to $M-1$ and $n=0$ to $N-1$, $M, N = \{4, 8\}$, are predicted using samples t_k , $k=0$ to $(N+M-1)$, q , and l_k , $k=0$ to $(N+M-1)$, from neighbouring blocks.

Samples t_k , $k=0$ to $(N+M-1)$ or samples l_k , $k=0$ to $(N+M-1)$ shall be considered not available under the following circumstances:

- if they are outside the picture or outside the current slice,
- if they belong to a macroblock that is subsequent to the current macroblock in raster scan order,
- if they are sent later than the current block in the order shown in Figure 12-1, or
- if they are in a non-intra macroblock and `constrained_intra_pred` is 1.

When samples t_k , $k=N$ to $(N+M-1)$ are not available the sample value of t_{N-1} is substituted for the samples t_k , $k=N$ to $(N+M-1)$. When samples l_k , $k=M$ to $(N+M-1)$ are not available the sample value of l_{M-1} is substituted for the samples l_k , $k=N$ to $(N+M-1)$.

12.4.1.1 Mode 0: vertical prediction

t_k , $k = 0$ to $(N-1)$ shall be available. Prediction sample q is denoted as t_1 . If q is not in the slice, t_0 substitutes q .

block size		samples	predicted by
4x8	$k = 0$ to 7, $i = 0$ to 3	p_{ki}	$(t_{i-1} + t_i < 1 + t_{i+1} + 2) >> 2$
8x4	$k = 0$ to 3, $i = 0$ to 7		
8x8	$k = 0$ to 7, $i = 0$ to 7		

12.4.1.2 Mode 1: horizontal prediction

l_k , $k = 0$ to $(M-1)$ shall be available. Prediction sample q is denoted as l_1 . If q is not in the slice, l_0 substitutes q .

block size		samples	predicted by
4x8	$k = 0$ to 7, $i = 0$ to 3	p_{ki}	$(l_{i-1} + l_i < 1 + l_{i+1} + 2) >> 2$

8x4	k = 0 to 3, i = 0 to 7		
8x8	k = 0 to 7, i = 0 to 7		

12.4.1.3 Mode 2: DC prediction

For DC prediction, all samples p_{ki} are predicted by the same value p .

a) If l_k , $k = 0$ to $(M-1)$ are available and t_k , $k = 0$ to $(N-1)$ are available

block size	p
4x8	$((t_0 + t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + 2) \gg 2 + (l_0 + l_1 + l_2 + l_3 + l_4 + l_5 + l_6 + l_7 + 4) \gg 3) \gg 1$
8x4	$((t_0 + t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + t_4 + t_5 + t_6 + t_7 + 4) \gg 3 + (l_0 + l_1 + l_2 + l_3 + 2) \gg 2) \gg 1$
8x8	$(l_0 + t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + t_4 + t_5 + t_6 + t_7 + l_0 + l_1 + l_2 + l_3 + l_4 + l_5 + l_6 + l_7 + 8) \gg 4$

b) If l_k , $k = 0$ to $(M-1)$ are available and t_k , $k = 0$ to $(N-1)$ are not available

block size	p
4x8	$(l_0 + l_1 + l_2 + l_3 + l_4 + l_5 + l_6 + l_7 + 4) \gg 3$
8x4	$(l_0 + l_1 + l_2 + l_3 + 2) \gg 2$
8x8	$(l_0 + l_1 + l_2 + l_3 + l_4 + l_5 + l_6 + l_7 + 4) \gg 3$

c) If l_k , $k = 0$ to $(M-1)$ are not available and t_k , $k = 0$ to $(N-1)$ are available

block size	p
4x8	$(t_0 + t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + 2) \gg 2$
8x4	$(t_0 + t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + t_4 + t_5 + t_6 + t_7 + 4) \gg 3$
8x8	$(t_0 + t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + t_4 + t_5 + t_6 + t_7 + 4) \gg 3$

d) If l_k , $k = 0$ to $(M-1)$ are not available and t_k , $k = 0$ to $(N-1)$ are not available

block size	p
4x8	128
8x4	128
8x8	128

12.4.1.4 Mode 3: diagonal down/left prediction

t_k , $k = 0$ to $(N-1)$ shall be available, and l_k , $k = 0$ to $(M-1)$ shall be available.

4x8 block samples	8x4 block samples	8x8 block samples	predicted by
p_{00}	p_{00}	p_{00}	$((l_2 + l_1 \ll 1 + l_0 + 2) \gg 2 + (t_0 + t_1 \ll 1 + t_2 + 2) \gg 2) \gg 1$
p_{01}, p_{10}	p_{01}, p_{10}	p_{01}, p_{10}	$((l_3 + l_2 \ll 1 + l_1 + 2) \gg 2 + (t_1 + t_2 \ll 1 + t_3 + 2) \gg 2) \gg 1$
p_{02}, p_{11}, p_{20}	p_{02}, p_{11}, p_{20}	p_{02}, p_{11}, p_{20}	$((l_4 + l_3 \ll 1 + l_2 + 2) \gg 2 + (t_2 + t_3 \ll 1 + t_4 + 2) \gg 2) \gg 1$
$p_{03}, p_{12}, p_{21}, p_{30}$	$p_{03}, p_{12}, p_{21}, p_{30}$	$p_{03}, p_{12}, p_{21}, p_{30}$	$((l_5 + l_4 \ll 1 + l_3 + 2) \gg 2 + (t_3 + t_4 \ll 1 + t_5 + 2) \gg 2) \gg 1$
$p_{13}, p_{22}, p_{31}, p_{40}$	$p_{04}, p_{13}, p_{22}, p_{31}$	$p_{04}, p_{13}, p_{22}, p_{31}, p_{40}$	$((l_6 + l_5 \ll 1 + l_4 + 2) \gg 2 + (t_4 + t_5 \ll 1 + t_6 + 2) \gg 2) \gg 1$
$p_{23}, p_{32}, p_{41}, p_{50}$	$p_{05}, p_{14}, p_{23}, p_{32}$	$p_{05}, p_{14}, p_{23}, p_{32}, p_{41}, p_{50}$	$((l_7 + l_6 \ll 1 + l_5 + 2) \gg 2 + (t_5 + t_6 \ll 1 + t_7 + 2) \gg 2) \gg 1$
$p_{33}, p_{42}, p_{51}, p_{60}$	$p_{06}, p_{15}, p_{24}, p_{33}$	$p_{06}, p_{15}, p_{24}, p_{33}, p_{42}, p_{51}, p_{60}$	$((l_8 + l_7 \ll 1 + l_6 + 2) \gg 2 + (t_6 + t_7 \ll 1 + t_8 + 2) \gg 2) \gg 1$

P43, P52, P61, P70	P07, P16, P25, P34	P07, P16, P25, P34, P43, P52, P61, P70	$((l_9 + l_8 < 1 + l_7 + 2) >> 2 + (t_7 + t_8 < 1 + t_9 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
P53, P62, P71	P17, P26, P35	P17, P26, P35, P44, P53, P62, P71	$((l_{10} + l_9 < 1 + l_8 + 2) >> 2 + (t_8 + t_9 < 1 + t_{10} + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
P63, P72	P27, P36	P27, P36, P45, P54, P63, P72	$((l_{11} + l_{10} < 1 + l_9 + 2) >> 2 + (t_9 + t_{10} < 1 + t_{11} + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
P73	P37	P37, P46, P55, P64, P73	$((l_{12} + l_{11} < 1 + l_{10} + 2) >> 2 + (t_{10} + t_{11} < 1 + t_{12} + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
-	-	P47, P56, P65, P74	$((l_{13} + l_{12} < 1 + l_{11} + 2) >> 2 + (t_{11} + t_{12} < 1 + t_{13} + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
-	-	P57, P66, P75	$((l_{14} + l_{13} < 1 + l_{12} + 2) >> 2 + (t_{12} + t_{13} < 1 + t_{14} + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
-	-	P67, P76	$((l_{15} + l_{14} < 1 + l_{13} + 2) >> 2 + (t_{13} + t_{14} < 1 + t_{15} + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
-	-	P77	$((l_{15} + l_{15} < 1 + l_{14} + 2) >> 2 + (t_{14} + t_{15} < 1 + t_{15} + 2) >> 2) >> 1$

12.4.1.5 Mode 4: diagonal down/right prediction

t_k , $k = 0$ to $(N-1)$ shall be available, and q , and l_k , $k = 0$ to $(M-1)$ shall be available.

4x8 block samples	8x4 block samples	8x8 block samples	predicted by
-	P07	P07	$(t_5 + t_6 < 1 + t_7 + 2) >> 2$
-	P06, P17	P06, P17	$(t_4 + t_5 < 1 + t_6 + 2) >> 2$
-	P05, P16, P27	P05, P16, P27	$(t_3 + t_4 < 1 + t_5 + 2) >> 2$
-	P04, P15, P26, P37	P04, P15, P26, P37	$(t_2 + t_3 < 1 + t_4 + 2) >> 2$
P03	P03, P14, P25, P36	P03, P14, P25, P36, P47	$(t_1 + t_2 < 1 + t_3 + 2) >> 2$
P02, P13	P02, P13, P24, P35	P02, P13, P24, P35, P46, P57	$(t_0 + t_1 < 1 + t_2 + 2) >> 2$
P01, P12, P23	P01, P12, P23, P34	P01, P12, P23, P34, P45, P56, P67	$(q + t_0 < 1 + t_1 + 2) >> 2$
P00, P11, P22, P33	P00, P11, P22, P33	P00, P11, P22, P33, P44, P55, P66, P77	$(l_0 + q < 1 + t_0 + 2) >> 2$
P10, P21, P32, P43	P10, P21, P32	P10, P21, P32, P43, P54, P65, P76	$(l_1 + l_0 < 1 + q + 2) >> 2$
P20, P31, P42, P53	P20, P31	P20, P31, P42, P53, P64, P75	$(l_2 + l_1 < 1 + l_0 + 2) >> 2$
P30, P41, P52, P63	P30	P30, P41, P52, P63, P74	$(l_3 + l_2 < 1 + l_1 + 2) >> 2$
P40, P51, P62, P73	-	P40, P51, P62, P73	$(l_4 + l_3 < 1 + l_2 + 2) >> 2$
P50, P61, P72	-	P50, P61, P72	$(l_5 + l_4 < 1 + l_3 + 2) >> 2$
P60, P71	-	P60, P71	$(l_6 + l_5 < 1 + l_4 + 2) >> 2$
P70	-	P70	$(l_7 + l_6 < 1 + l_5 + 2) >> 2$

12.4.1.6 Mode 5: vertical-left prediction

t_k , $k = 0$ to $(N-1)$ shall be available, and q , and l_k , $k = 0$ to $(M-1)$ shall be available.

4x8 block samples	8x4 block samples	8x8 block samples	predicted by
-	P07	P07	$((t_6 + t_7 < 1 + t_8 + 2) >> 2 + (t_7 + t_8 < 1 + t_9 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
-	P17	P17	$(t_6 + t_7 < 1 + t_8 + 2) >> 2$
-	P06, P27	P06, P27	$((t_5 + t_6 < 1 + t_7 + 2) >> 2 + (t_6 + t_7 < 1 + t_8 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
-	P16, P37	P16, P37	$(t_5 + t_6 < 1 + t_7 + 2) >> 2$
-	P05, P26	P05, P26, P47	$((t_4 + t_5 < 1 + t_6 + 2) >> 2 + (t_5 + t_6 < 1 + t_7 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
-	P15, P36	P15, P36, P57	$(t_4 + t_5 < 1 + t_6 + 2) >> 2$
-	P04, P25	P04, P25, P46, P67	$((t_3 + t_4 < 1 + t_5 + 2) >> 2 + (t_4 + t_5 < 1 + t_6 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$

-	p14, p35	p14, p35, p56, p77	$(t_3 + t_4 < 1 + t_5 + 2) >> 2$
p03	p03, p24	p03, p24, p45, p66	$((t_2 + t_3 < 1 + t_4 + 2) >> 2 + (t_3 + t_4 < 1 + t_5 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p13	p13, p34	p13, p34, p55, p76	$(t_2 + t_3 < 1 + t_4 + 2) >> 2$
p02, p23	p02, p23	p02, p23, p44, p65	$((t_1 + t_2 < 1 + t_3 + 2) >> 2 + (t_2 + t_3 < 1 + t_4 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p12, p33	p12, p33	p12, p33, p54, p75	$(t_1 + t_2 < 1 + t_3 + 2) >> 2$
p01, p22, p43	p01, p22	p01, p22, p43, p64	$((t_0 + t_1 < 1 + t_2 + 2) >> 2 + (t_1 + t_2 < 1 + t_3 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p11, p32, p53	p11, p32	p11, p32, p53, p74	$(t_0 + t_1 < 1 + t_2 + 2) >> 2$
p00, p21, p42, p63	p00, p21	p00, p21, p42, p63	$((t_0 + q < 1 + t_0 + 2) >> 2 + (t_0 + t_1 < 1 + t_2 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p10, p31, p52, p73	p10, p31	p10, p31, p52, p73	$(t_0 + q < 1 + t_0 + 2) >> 2$
p20, p41, p62	p20	p20, p41, p62	$(t_2 + t_1 < 1 + t_0 + 2) >> 2$
p30, p51, p72	p30	p30, p51, p72	$(t_3 + t_2 < 1 + t_1 + 2) >> 2$
p40, p61	-	p40, p61	$(t_4 + t_3 < 1 + t_2 + 2) >> 2$
p50, p71	-	p50, p71	$(t_5 + t_4 < 1 + t_3 + 2) >> 2$
p60	-	p60	$(t_6 + t_5 < 1 + t_4 + 2) >> 2$
p70	-	p70	$(t_7 + t_6 < 1 + t_5 + 2) >> 2$

12.4.1.7 Mode 6: horizontal-down prediction

t_k , $k = 0$ to $(N-1)$ shall be available, and q , and l_k , $k = 0$ to $(M-1)$ shall be available.

4x8 block samples	8x4 block samples	8x8 block samples	predicted by
-	p07	p07	$(t_5 + t_6 < 1 + t_7 + 2) >> 2$
-	p06	p06	$(t_4 + t_5 < 1 + t_6 + 2) >> 2$
-	p05, p17	p05, p17	$(t_3 + t_4 < 1 + t_5 + 2) >> 2$
-	p04, p16	p04, p16	$(t_2 + t_3 < 1 + t_4 + 2) >> 2$
p03	p03, p15, p27	p03, p15, p27	$(t_1 + t_2 < 1 + t_3 + 2) >> 2$
p02	p02, p14, p26	p02, p14, p26	$(t_0 + t_1 < 1 + t_2 + 2) >> 2$
p01, p13	p01, p13, p25, p37	p01, p13, p25, p37	$(q + t_0 < 1 + t_1 + 2) >> 2$
p00, p12	p00, p12, p24, p36	p00, p12, p24, p36	$((t_0 + q < 1 + t_0 + 2) >> 2 + (q + t_0 < 1 + t_1 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p10, p22	p10, p22, p34	p10, p22, p34, p46	$((q + t_0 < 1 + t_1 + 2) >> 2 + (t_0 + t_1 < 1 + t_2 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p11, p23	p11, p23, p35	p11, p23, p35, p47	$(q + t_0 < 1 + t_1 + 2) >> 2$
p20, p32	p20, p32	p20, p32, p44, p56	$((t_0 + t_1 < 1 + t_2 + 2) >> 2 + (t_1 + t_2 < 1 + t_3 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p21, p33	p21, p33	p21, p33, p45, p57	$(t_0 + t_1 < 1 + t_2 + 2) >> 2$
p30, p42	p30	p30, p42, p54, p66	$((t_1 + t_2 < 1 + t_3 + 2) >> 2 + (t_2 + t_3 < 1 + t_4 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p31, p43	p31	p31, p43, p55, p67	$(t_1 + t_2 < 1 + t_3 + 2) >> 2$
p40, p52	-	p40, p52, p64, p76	$((t_2 + t_3 < 1 + t_4 + 2) >> 2 + (t_3 + t_4 < 1 + t_5 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p41, p53	-	p41, p53, p65, p77	$(t_2 + t_3 < 1 + t_4 + 2) >> 2$
p50, p62	-	p50, p62, p74	$((t_3 + t_4 < 1 + t_5 + 2) >> 2 + (t_4 + t_5 < 1 + t_6 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p51, p63	-	p51, p63, p75	$(t_3 + t_4 < 1 + t_5 + 2) >> 2$

p ₆₀ , p ₇₂	-	p ₆₀ , p ₇₂	$((l_4 + l_5 < 1 + l_6 + 2) >> 2 + (l_5 + l_6 < 1 + l_7 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p ₆₁ , p ₇₃	-	p ₆₁ , p ₇₃	$(l_4 + l_5 < 1 + l_6 + 2) >> 2$
p ₇₀	-	p ₇₀	$((l_5 + l_6 < 1 + l_7 + 2) >> 2 + (l_6 + l_7 < 1 + l_8 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p ₇₁	-	p ₇₁	$(l_5 + l_6 < 1 + l_7 + 2) >> 2$

12.4.1.8 Mode 7: vertical-right prediction

t_k , $k = 0$ to $(N-1)$ shall be available.

4x8 block samples	8x4 block samples	8x8 block samples	predicted by
p ₀₀	p ₀₀	p ₀₀	$((t_0 + t_1 < 1 + t_2 + 2) >> 2 + (t_1 + t_2 < 1 + t_3 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p ₁₀	p ₁₀	p ₁₀	$(t_1 + t_2 < 1 + t_3 + 2) >> 2$
p ₀₁ , p ₂₀	p ₀₁ , p ₂₀	p ₀₁ , p ₂₀	$((t_1 + t_2 < 1 + t_3 + 2) >> 2 + (t_2 + t_3 < 1 + t_4 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p ₁₁ , p ₃₀	p ₁₁ , p ₃₀	p ₁₁ , p ₃₀	$(t_2 + t_3 < 1 + t_4 + 2) >> 2$
p ₀₂ , p ₂₁ , p ₄₀	p ₀₂ , p ₂₁	p ₀₂ , p ₂₁ , p ₄₀	$((t_2 + t_3 < 1 + t_4 + 2) >> 2 + (t_3 + t_4 < 1 + t_5 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p ₁₂ , p ₃₁ , p ₅₀	p ₁₂ , p ₃₁	p ₁₂ , p ₃₁ , p ₅₀	$(t_3 + t_4 < 1 + t_5 + 2) >> 2$
p ₀₃ , p ₂₂ , p ₄₁ , p ₆₀	p ₀₃ , p ₂₂	p ₀₃ , p ₂₂ , p ₄₁ , p ₆₀	$((t_3 + t_4 < 1 + t_5 + 2) >> 2 + (t_4 + t_5 < 1 + t_6 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p ₁₃ , p ₃₂ , p ₅₁ , p ₇₀	p ₁₃ , p ₃₂	p ₁₃ , p ₃₂ , p ₅₁ , p ₇₀	$(t_4 + t_5 < 1 + t_6 + 2) >> 2$
p ₂₃ , p ₄₂ , p ₆₁	p ₀₄ , p ₂₃	p ₀₄ , p ₂₃ , p ₄₂ , p ₆₁	$((t_0 + t_1 < 1 + t_2 + 2) >> 2 + (t_1 + t_2 < 1 + t_3 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p ₃₃ , p ₅₂ , p ₇₁	p ₁₄ , p ₃₃	p ₁₄ , p ₃₃ , p ₅₂ , p ₇₁	$(t_5 + t_6 < 1 + t_7 + 2) >> 2$
p ₄₃ , p ₆₂	p ₀₅ , p ₂₄	p ₀₅ , p ₂₄ , p ₄₃ , p ₆₂	$((t_5 + t_6 < 1 + t_7 + 2) >> 2 + (t_6 + t_7 < 1 + t_8 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p ₅₃ , p ₇₂	p ₁₅ , p ₃₄	p ₁₅ , p ₃₄ , p ₅₃ , p ₇₂	$(t_6 + t_7 < 1 + t_8 + 2) >> 2$
p ₆₃	p ₀₆ , p ₂₅	p ₀₆ , p ₂₅ , p ₄₄ , p ₆₃	$((t_6 + t_7 < 1 + t_8 + 2) >> 2 + (t_7 + t_8 < 1 + t_9 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p ₇₃	p ₁₆ , p ₃₅	p ₁₆ , p ₃₅ , p ₅₄ , p ₇₃	$(t_7 + t_8 < 1 + t_9 + 2) >> 2$
-	p ₀₇ , p ₂₆	p ₀₇ , p ₂₆ , p ₄₅ , p ₆₄	$((t_7 + t_8 < 1 + t_9 + 2) >> 2 + (t_8 + t_9 < 1 + t_{10} + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
-	p ₁₇ , p ₃₆	p ₁₇ , p ₃₆ , p ₅₅ , p ₇₄	$(t_8 + t_9 < 1 + t_{10} + 2) >> 2$
-	p ₂₇	p ₂₇ , p ₄₆ , p ₆₅	$((t_8 + t_9 < 1 + t_{10} + 2) >> 2 + (t_9 + t_{10} < 1 + t_{11} + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
-	p ₃₇	p ₃₇ , p ₅₆ , p ₇₅	$(t_9 + t_{10} < 1 + t_{11} + 2) >> 2$
-	-	p ₄₇ , p ₆₆	$((t_9 + t_{10} < 1 + t_{11} + 2) >> 2 + (t_{10} + t_{11} < 1 + t_{12} + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
-	-	p ₅₇ , p ₇₆	$(t_{10} + t_{11} < 1 + t_{12} + 2) >> 2$
-	-	p ₆₇	$((t_{10} + t_{11} < 1 + t_{12} + 2) >> 2 + (t_{11} + t_{12} < 1 + t_{13} + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
-	-	p ₇₇	$(t_{11} + t_{12} < 1 + t_{13} + 2) >> 2$

12.4.1.9 Mode 8: horizontal-up prediction

l_k , $k = 0$ to $(M-1)$ shall be available.

4x8 block samples	8x4 block samples	8x8 block samples	predicted by
p ₀₀	p ₀₀	p ₀₀	$((l_0 + l_1 < 1 + l_2 + 2) >> 2 + (l_1 + l_2 < 1 + l_3 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p ₀₁	p ₀₁	p ₀₁	$(l_1 + l_2 < 1 + l_3 + 2) >> 2$
p ₁₀ , p ₀₂	p ₁₀ , p ₀₂	p ₁₀ , p ₀₂	$((l_1 + l_2 < 1 + l_3 + 2) >> 2 + (l_2 + l_3 < 1 + l_4 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
p ₁₁ , p ₀₃	p ₁₁ , p ₀₃	p ₁₁ , p ₀₃	$(l_2 + l_3 < 1 + l_4 + 2) >> 2$

P20, P12	P20, P12, P04	P20, P12, P04	$((l_2 + l_3 < 1 + l_4 + 2) >> 2 + (l_3 + l_4 < 1 + l_5 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
P21, P13	P21, P13, P05	P21, P13, P05	$(l_3 + l_4 < 1 + l_5 + 2) >> 2$
P30, P22	P30, P22, P14, P06	P30, P22, P14, P06	$((l_3 + l_4 < 1 + l_5 + 2) >> 2 + (l_4 + l_5 < 1 + l_6 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
P31, P23	P31, P23, P15, P07	P31, P23, P15, P07	$(l_4 + l_5 < 1 + l_6 + 2) >> 2$
P40, P32	P32, P34, P16	P40, P32, P34, P16	$((l_4 + l_5 < 1 + l_6 + 2) >> 2 + (l_5 + l_6 < 1 + l_7 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
P41, P33	P33, P25, P17	P41, P33, P25, P17	$(l_5 + l_6 < 1 + l_7 + 2) >> 2$
P50, P42	P34, P26	P50, P42, P34, P26	$((l_5 + l_6 < 1 + l_7 + 2) >> 2 + (l_6 + l_7 < 1 + l_8 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
P51, P43	P35, P27	P51, P43, P35, P27	$(l_6 + l_7 < 1 + l_8 + 2) >> 2$
P60, P52	P36	P60, P52, P44, P36	$((l_6 + l_7 < 1 + l_8 + 2) >> 2 + (l_7 + l_8 < 1 + l_9 + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
P61, P53	P37	P61, P53, P45, P37	$(l_7 + l_8 < 1 + l_9 + 2) >> 2$
P70, P62	-	P70, P62, P54, P46	$((l_7 + l_8 < 1 + l_9 + 2) >> 2 + (l_8 + l_9 < 1 + l_{10} + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
P71, P63	-	P71, P63, P55, P47	$(l_8 + l_9 < 1 + l_{10} + 2) >> 2$
P72	-	P72, P64, P56	$((l_8 + l_9 < 1 + l_{10} + 2) >> 2 + (l_9 + l_{10} < 1 + l_{11} + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
P73	-	P73, P65, P57	$(l_9 + l_{10} < 1 + l_{11} + 2) >> 2$
-	-	P74, P6	$((l_9 + l_{10} < 1 + l_{11} + 2) >> 2 + (l_{10} + l_{11} < 1 + l_{12} + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
-	-	P75, P67	$(l_{10} + l_{11} < 1 + l_{12} + 2) >> 2$
-	-	P76	$((l_{10} + l_{11} < 1 + l_{12} + 2) >> 2 + (l_{11} + l_{12} < 1 + l_{13} + 2) >> 2) >> 1$
-	-	P77	$(l_{11} + l_{12} < 1 + l_{13} + 2) >> 2$

12.4.2 Scanning method for ABT blocks

Scanning patterns for blocks of size 4x4, 4x8, 8x4, and 8x8 coefficients are given below. For blocks decoded in frame mode, the zig-zag scans are used. For block decoded in field mode, the field scans are used. The zig-zag scan for 4x4 blocks corresponds to the zig-zag scan specified in Figure 8-12.

12.4.2.1 Zig-zag scan

0	1	5	6
2	4	7	12
3	8	11	13
9	10	14	15

Figure 12-3 – 4x4 zig-zag scan

0	2	3	9
1	4	8	10
5	7	11	17
6	12	16	18
13	15	19	25
14	20	24	26
21	23	27	30

22	28	29	31
----	----	----	----

Figure 12-4 – 4x8 zig-zag scan

0	1	5	6	13	14	21	22
2	4	7	12	15	20	23	28
3	8	11	16	19	24	27	29
9	10	17	18	25	26	30	31

Figure 12-5 – 8x4 zig-zag scan

0	1	5	6	14	15	27	28
2	4	7	13	16	26	29	42
3	8	12	17	25	30	41	43
9	11	18	24	31	40	44	53
10	19	23	32	39	45	52	54
20	22	33	38	46	51	55	60
21	34	37	47	50	56	59	61
35	36	48	49	57	58	62	63

Figure 12-6 – 8x8 zig-zag scan

12.4.2.2 Field scan

0	2	8	12
1	5	9	13
3	6	10	14
4	7	11	15

Figure 12-7 – 4x4 field scan

0	4	12	20
1	5	13	21
2	6	14	22
3	11	19	27
7	15	23	28
8	16	24	29

9	17	25	30
10	18	26	31

Figure 12-8 – 4x8 field scan

0	2	6	10	14	18	22	26
1	5	9	13	17	21	25	29
3	7	11	15	19	23	27	30
4	8	12	16	20	24	28	31

Figure 12-9 – 8x4 field scan

0	3	8	15	22	30	38	52
1	4	14	21	29	37	45	53
2	7	16	23	31	39	46	58
5	9	20	28	36	44	51	59
6	13	24	32	40	47	54	60
10	17	25	33	41	48	55	61
11	18	26	34	42	49	56	62
12	19	27	35	43	50	57	63

Figure 12-10 – 8x8 field scan

12.4.3 Scaling and inverse transform for ABT blocks

The scaling and inverse transform of residual blocks of block size larger than 4x4 is specified below. The scaling and inverse transform for 4x4 blocks is specified in subclause 8.6. For 8x8 blocks, the coefficients $R_{ij}^{(m)}$, used in the formulas below, are defined as:

$$R_{ij}^{(m)} = V_m^{8 \times 8} \quad (12-3)$$

where the subscript of $V_m^{8 \times 8}$ is the row index of the vector defined as:

$$V_m^{8 \times 8} = \begin{bmatrix} 15 \\ 17 \\ 19 \\ 22 \\ 24 \\ 27 \end{bmatrix} \quad (12-4)$$

For 4x8 blocks, the coefficients $R_{ij}^{(m)}$, used in the formulas below, are defined as:

$$R_{ij}^{(m)} = \begin{cases} V_{m0}^{8 \times 4, 4 \times 8} & \text{for } i = 0, \dots, 7; j = 0, 2 \\ V_{m1}^{8 \times 4, 4 \times 8} & \text{for } i = 0, \dots, 7; j = 1, 3 \end{cases} \quad (12-5)$$

where the first and second subscripts of $V^{8 \times 4, 4 \times 8}$ are row and column indices, respectively, of the matrix defined as:

$$V^{8 \times 4, 4 \times 8} = \begin{bmatrix} 9 & 11 \\ 10 & 12 \\ 11 & 14 \\ 12 & 16 \\ 14 & 17 \\ 15 & 20 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (12-6)$$

For 8x4 blocks, the coefficients $R_{ij}^{(m)}$, used in the formulas below, are defined as:

$$R_{ij}^{(m)} = \begin{cases} V_{m0}^{8 \times 4, 4 \times 8} & \text{for } i = 0, 2; j = 0, \dots, 7 \\ V_{m1}^{8 \times 4, 4 \times 8} & \text{for } i = 1, 3; j = 0, \dots, 7 \end{cases} \quad (12-7)$$

where the first and second subscripts of $V^{8 \times 4, 4 \times 8}$ are row and column indices, respectively, of the matrix defined in Equation 12-6.

The coefficient levels are multiplied with the scaling value R

$$w_{ij} = [c_{ij} \cdot R_{ij}^{(QP \% 6)}] \ll (QP / 6 - 2), \quad i = 0, \dots, N, j = 0, \dots, M \quad (12-8)$$

After constructing an entire MxN block of scaled transform coefficients and assembling these into a MxN matrix W of elements w_{ij} illustrated as

$$W = \begin{bmatrix} w_{00} & \dots & w_{0(N-1)} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ w_{(M-1)0} & \dots & w_{(M-1)(N-1)} \end{bmatrix} \quad (12-9)$$

W is inverse transformed horizontally. If $N = 4$, the one-dimensional inverse transform is performed as specified in subclause 8.6.2.3. If $N = 8$, the inverse transform is specified by Equation 12-10,

$$Z' = \begin{bmatrix} w_{00} & \dots & w_{07} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ w_{(M-1)0} & \dots & w_{(M-1)7} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 13 & 13 & 13 & 13 & 13 & 13 & 13 & 13 \\ 19 & 15 & 9 & 3 & -3 & -9 & -15 & -19 \\ 17 & 7 & -7 & -17 & -17 & -7 & 7 & 17 \\ 9 & 3 & -19 & -15 & 15 & 19 & -3 & -9 \\ 13 & -13 & -13 & 13 & 13 & -13 & -13 & 13 \\ 15 & -19 & -3 & 9 & -9 & 3 & 19 & -15 \\ 7 & -17 & 17 & -7 & -7 & 17 & -17 & 7 \\ 3 & -9 & 15 & -19 & 19 & -15 & 9 & -3 \end{bmatrix} \quad (12-10)$$

The result is rounded

$$Z_{ij} = \text{sign}(Z'_{ij}) \left[\text{abs}(Z'_{ij}) + 2^{B_{\text{shift}}-1} \right] \gg B_{\text{shift}} \quad (12-11)$$

where $B_{\text{shift}} = 7$ for 8x8 blocks, and $B_{\text{shift}} = 2$ for 4x8 or 8x4 blocks. If $N = 4$, the second one-dimensional inverse transform is performed as specified in subclause 8.6.2.3. If $N = 8$, the second inverse transform is specified by Equation 12-12 below,

$$X' = \begin{bmatrix} 13 & 19 & 17 & 9 & 13 & 15 & 7 & 3 \\ 13 & 15 & 7 & 3 & -13 & -19 & -17 & -9 \\ 13 & 9 & -7 & -19 & -13 & -3 & 17 & 15 \\ 13 & 3 & -17 & -15 & 13 & 9 & -7 & -19 \\ 13 & -3 & -17 & 15 & 13 & -9 & -7 & 19 \\ 13 & -9 & -7 & 19 & -13 & 3 & 17 & -15 \\ 13 & -15 & 7 & -3 & -13 & 19 & -17 & 9 \\ 13 & -19 & 17 & -9 & 13 & -15 & 7 & -3 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} z_{00} & \cdots & z_{0(N-1)} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ z_{70} & \cdots & z_{7(N-1)} \end{bmatrix} \quad (12-12)$$

After the second (vertical) transform in Equation 12-12 step the final reconstructed sample residual values X'' shall be obtained as specified in Equation 8-59.

Finally, the reconstructed sample residual values X'' from Equation 8-59 are added to the prediction values P_{ij} from motion compensated prediction or spatial prediction and clipped to the range of 0 to 255 to form the final decoded sample result prior to application of the deblocking filter as specified in subclause 8.6.3.

12.4.4 Modifications for the deblocking filter

If ABT is used, the boundary strength shall be $B_s = 0$ for all 4x4 luma block edges inside an ABT block. The index into the threshold table (Table 8-3) is increased by I_{QP} . For ABT blocks, I_{QP} depends on the sizes of the neighbouring blocks as specified in Table 12-4. $I_{QP} = 0$ for non-ABT blocks.

Table 12-4 – I_{QP} values

I_{QP}		Block q			
		4x4	4x8	8x4	8x8
Block p	4x4	0	1	1	2
	4x8	1	2	2	3
	8x4	1	2	2	3
	8x8	2	3	3	3

The index used to access the α -table, as well as the C0-table that is used in the default filter mode, is computed as:

$$\text{Index}_A = \text{Clip3}(0, 51, QP_{av} + I_{QP} + \text{Filter_Offset_A})$$

The index used to access the β -table is computed as:

$$\text{Index}_B = \text{Clip3}(0, 51, QP_{av} + I_{QP} + \text{Filter_Offset_B}),$$

with QP_{av} , Filter_Offset_A , and Filter_Offset_B as specified in subclause 8.7.2. The values for the thresholds (α and β) are specified in Table 8-3.

12.5 ABT entropy coding

12.5.1 ABT variable length coding

12.5.1.1 Mapped Exp-Golomb entropy coding

The ABT intra macroblock types in Intra slices and the intra_block_typeABT syntax elements in Inter slices are to Exp-Golomb codeword numbers as specified in Table 12-5.

Table 12-5 – Assignment of Exp-Golomb codeword numbers for ABT syntax elements

code_number	mb_type	intra_block_typeABT
0	ABTIntra_4x4	4x4
1	ABTIntra_4x8	4x8
2	ABTIntra_8x4	8x4
3	ABTIntra_8x8	8x8

12.5.1.2 VLC entropy coding of ABT coefficients

12.5.1.2.1 Decoding num_coeff_abt

For ABT Intra blocks, num_coeff_abt is specified. The structure of the codewords for num_coeff and escape_run, specified in subclause 12.4.2.4, is indicated in Table 12-6. The info bits x_i , $i=0$ to n can take values 0 or 1.

Table 12-6 – Code structure for ABT num_coeff_abt and escape_run

codeword	length L
1 x1 x0	3
0 1 x2 x1 x0	5
0 0 1 x3 x2 x1 x0	7
0 0 0 1 x4 x3 x2 x1 x0	9
0 0 0 0 1 x5 x4 x3 x2 x1 x0	11

The value of num_coeff is specified as the code number of the decoded codeword. The code number is specified as

$$\text{code_number} = 2^{(L+1)/2} - 4 + \text{INFO} \quad (12-13)$$

For a codeword with info bits x_i , $i=0$ to n , INFO is specified as

$$\text{INFO} = \sum_{i=0}^n x_i \cdot 2^i. \quad (12-14)$$

12.5.1.2.2 2D (level,run) symbols

The code structure used for decoding (level,run) symbols depends on block type. The structure of the codes is specified in Table 12-7. For all block types, the codewords with code numbers 0 to 59 are used, with code number 59 being the escape symbol. INFO is specified in Equation 12-14

Table 12-7 – Code structure for ABT (level, run) symbols

Block type	Code structure	length L	code_number
Intra 8x8, 8x4, 4x8, 4x4	1 x1 x0	3	$2^{(L+2)/2} - 4 + \text{INFO}$
Inter 8x8	0 1 x2 x1 x0	5	

	0 0 1 x3 x2 x1 x0	7	
	0 0 0 x4 x3 x2 x1 x0	8	
Inter 8x4, 4x8	1 x0	2	$2^{(L+1)/2} - 2 + \text{INFO}$
	0 1 x1 x0	4	
	0 0 1 x2 x1 x0	6	
	0 0 0 1 x3 x2 x1 x0	8	
	0 0 0 0 x4 x3 x2 x1 x0	9	
Inter 4x4	1	1	0
	0 1 x0	3	$2^{L/2} - 1 + \text{INFO}$
	0 0 1 x1 x0	5	
	0 0 0 1 x2 x1 x0	7	
	0 0 0 0 1 x3 x2 x1 x0	9	
	0 0 0 0 0 x4 x3 x2 x1 x0	10	$2^{(L+1)/2} - 1 + \text{INFO}$

12.5.1.2.3 Assignment of level and run to code numbers

For positive level, the assignment of code numbers to run and level is specified in Table 12-9. Run and negative levels are assigned as follows

$$\text{code_number}(-\text{abs}(\text{level}), \text{run}) = \text{code_number}(\text{abs}(\text{level}), \text{run}) + 1. \quad (12-15)$$

12.5.1.2.4 escape_level and escape_run

The code structure for escape_level is specified in Table 12-8. The code number of a decoded codeword is

$$\text{code_number} = 2^{(L+2)/2} - 8 + \text{INFO}, \quad (12-16)$$

with INFO as specified in Equation 12-14. The assignment of code numbers to escape_level is specified as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{if} ((\text{code_number} \% 2) > 0) \\ &\quad \text{escape_level} = -(\text{code_number}/2) \\ &\text{else} \\ &\quad \text{escape_level} = \text{code_number}/2 \end{aligned} \quad (12-17)$$

The code structure for escape_run is specified in Table 12-6. The value of escape_run is specified as the code number of the decoded codeword. The code number for escape_run decoding is specified in Equation 12-13.

Table 12-8 – Code structure for escape_level

Codeword	length L
1 x2 x1 x0	4
0 1 x3 x2 x1 x0	6
0 0 1 x4 x3 x2 x1 x0	8
0 0 0 1 x5 x4 x3 x2 x1 x0	10
0 0 0 0 1 x6 x5 x4 x3 x2 x1 x0	12
0 0 0 0 0 1 x7 x6 x5 x4 x3 x2 x1 x0	14

0 0 0 0 0 0 1 x8 x7 x6 x5 x4 x3 x2 x1 x0	16
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 x9 x8 x7 x6 x5 x4 x3 x2 x1 x0	18

Table 12-9 – Assignment of Inter and Intra level and run to code numbers.

run	Inter							Intra																											
	EOB	level>0							level>0 (QP < 26)							level>0 (26 <= QP < 34)							level>0 (QP >= 34)												
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	1	2	3	4	5	6	7						
0	0	1	5	13	21	31	39	47	0	2	6	8	12	18	20	0	2	8	12	18	22	30	0	4	12	20	32	42	56						
1	-	3	15	33	51	-	-	-	4	14	24	30	38	44	49	4	16	26	36	48	56	-	2	16	30	48	-	-	-						
2	-	7	25	53	-	-	-	-	10	28	40	50	-	-	-	6	24	42	-	-	-	-	6	24	46	-	-	-	-						
3	-	9	35	-	-	-	-	-	16	34	54	-	-	-	-	10	34	-	-	-	-	-	8	34	-	-	-	-	-						
4	-	11	45	-	-	-	-	-	22	42	-	-	-	-	-	16	44	-	-	-	-	-	10	40	-	-	-	-	-						
5	-	17	55	-	-	-	-	-	26	56	-	-	-	-	-	20	5	-	-	-	-	-	14	50	-	-	-	-	-						
6	-	19	-	-	-	-	-	-	32	-	-	-	-	-	-	28	-	-	-	-	-	-	18	-	-	-	-	-	-						
7	-	23	-	-	-	-	-	-	36	-	-	-	-	-	-	32	-	-	-	-	-	-	22	-	-	-	-	-	-						
8	-	27	-	-	-	-	-	-	46	-	-	-	-	-	-	38	-	-	-	-	-	-	26	-	-	-	-	-	-						
9	-	29	-	-	-	-	-	-	52	-	-	-	-	-	-	40	-	-	-	-	-	-	28	-	-	-	-	-	-						
10	-	37	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	46	-	-	-	-	-	-	36	-	-	-	-	-	-						
11	-	41	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	52	-	-	-	-	-	-	38	-	-	-	-	-	-						
12	-	43	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	54	-	-	-	-	-	-	44	-	-	-	-	-	-						
13	-	49	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	52	-	-	-	-	-	-						
14	-	57	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	54	-	-	-	-	-	-						

12.5.2 ABT CABAC

12.5.2.1 Fixed-length (FL) binarization for mb_type

Table 12-10 shows the binarization scheme used for decoding of macroblock types in I-slices. In case of mb_type = 6 for P slices or mb_type = 23 for B slices, intra_block_typeABT has to be decoded as additional information related to the chosen intra mode for these macroblock types. This shall be done in the same way as specified for mb_type in I slices.

Table 12-10 – Binarization for macroblock type

Slice type	Code number for mb_type	Binarization							
I slice	0 (ABTIntra_4x4)	1	0						
	1 (ABTIntra_4x8)	0	0						
	2 (ABTIntra_8x4)	0	1						
	3 (ABTIntra_8x8)	1	1						

12.5.2.2 Context definition and assignment

Table 12-11 provides the context identifier associated to the syntax element macroblock type. A detailed description of the corresponding context variables is given in the subsequent subclauses. For the syntax elements related to decoding of

transform coefficients, each of the context identifiers utilizes a separate set of ranges depending on whether the additional context categories 5 – 7 given in Table 12-14 are used, which is only the case if MbABTFlag=1.

Table 12-11 – Macroblock typ and associated context identifier

Syntax element	Context identifier	Type of Binarization	max_idx_ctx_id	Range of context label
Macroblock type	ctx_mb_type_I_ABT	Table 10-16	2	0 – 4
Transform coefficients	ctx_cbp4	-/-	-/-	75 – 94, 267 – 274
	ctx_sig	-/-	-/-	95 – 155, 275 – 319
	ctx_last	-/-	-/-	156 – 216, 320 – 346
	ctx_abs_level	UEG0, UCoff=14	2	217 – 266, 347 – 376

12.5.2.2.1 Assignment of context labels

Tables 12-12 and 12-13 contain context identifiers along with their corresponding range of context labels. The association of context labels (modulo some offset) and bin numbers shows which context variable uses a fixed model and which one implies a choice of different models. The latter are characterized by those entries where a set of different context labels are given for a specific bin_no (Table 12-12) or block type dependent context_category (Table 12-13); these are the context variables, which need to be specified further in the following subclauses 12.5.2.2.2 and 12.5.2.2.3.

Table 12-12 – Context identifiers and associated context labels

Context identifier	Range of context label	Offset for context label	max_idx_ctx_id	bin_no				
				1	2	3	4	≥ 5
ctx_mb_type_I_ABT	0 – 4	0	2	0,1,2	3,4	-/-	-/-	-/-
ctx_abs_level (context_category 5 – 7)	347 – 376	347+ 10*(context_category-5)	2	0 to 4	5 to 9	5 to 9	5 to 9	5 to 9

Table 12-13 – Context identifiers and associated context labels (continued)

Context identifier	Offset (range) of context label for context_category 5 – 7	context_category of block_type							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
ctx_cbp4	267 (267 – 274)	0 – 3	4 – 7	8 – 11	12 – 15	16 – 19	-/-	0 – 3	4 – 7
ctx_sig	275 (275 – 319)	0 – 14	15 – 28	29 – 43	44 – 46	47 – 60	0 – 14	15 – 29	30 – 44
ctx_last	320 (320 – 346)	0 – 14	15 – 28	29 – 43	44 – 46	47 – 60	0 – 9	10 – 19	20 – 29

12.5.2.2.2 Context definitions using preceding bin values

For the context identifier ctx_mb_type_I_ABT, the choice of the model for the 2nd bin depends on the value of the first bin as specified in Equation 12-18:

$$\text{ctx_mb_type_I_ABT}[2] = (\text{b1} == 0) ? 3 : 4 \quad (12-18)$$

Table 12-14 – Additional context categories for the different block types

block_type	Maximum number of coefficients	context_category
Luma block for INTRA 8x8 mode	64	5:Luma-8x8
Luma block for INTER 8x8 mode	64	
Luma block for INTRA 8x4 mode	32	6:Luma-8x4
Luma block for INTER 8x4 mode	32	
Luma block for INTRA 4x8 mode	32	7:Luma-4x8
Luma block for INTRA 4x8 mode	32	

12.5.2.2.3 Additional context definitions for information related to transform coefficients

As specified in subclause 9.2.2.4, three different additional context identifiers are used for conditioning of information related to transform coefficients. All these three types depend on context categories of different block types denoted by the variable *context_category*. The definition of these context categories is given in Tables 9-24 and 12-14. Note that the context categories 5 – 7 are only used in the case when *MbABTFlag* = 1. The context identifiers *ctx_sig* and *ctx_last* are related to the binary valued information of SIG and LAST; the definition of the related context variables includes an additional dependency on the scanning position *scanning_pos* within the regarded block:

$$ctx_sig[scanning_pos] = Map_sig(scanning_pos), \quad (12-19)$$

$$ctx_last[scanning_pos] = Map_last(scanning_pos). \quad (12-20)$$

The definition of *Map_sig* and *Map_last* in Equations 12-19 and 12-20 depends on the block type. For context_category 0 – 4 the corresponding maps are given by

$$Map_sig(scanning_pos) = Map_last(scanning_pos) = scanning_pos, \text{ if } context_category = 0, \dots, 4, \quad (12-21)$$

where *scanning_pos* denotes the position related to the zig-zag scan. For context categories 5 – 7, which are only in use if *MbABTFlag* = 1, two cases are distinguished. In frame coding mode, where the zig-zag scan is used, *Map_sig* and *Map_last* are given by the definition in Table 12-15; for field coding mode, *Map_sig* and *Map_last* related to the alternative scans are given in Table 12-16. In each case, the offset for the context category given in Table 12-17 has to be added for calculating the context label of each scanning position.

For *abs_level_m1*, the decoding process is specified in subclause 9.2.2.4.

Table 12-15 – *Map_sig* and *Map_last* for zig-zag scanning order used for the additional ABT block sizes 8x8, 8x4 and 4x8

Scanning position	8x8		Scanning position	8x8		Scanning position	8x4 and 4x8	
	Map_sig	Map_last		Map_sig	Map_last		Map_sig	Map_last
0	0	0	32	7	3	0	0	0
1	1	1	33	6	3	1	1	1
2	2	1	34	11	3	2	2	1
3	3	1	35	12	3	3	3	1
4	4	1	36	13	3	4	4	1
5	5	1	37	11	3	5	5	1
6	5	1	38	6	3	6	7	1
7	4	1	39	7	3	7	8	1

8	4	1	40	8	4	8	9	2
9	3	1	41	9	4	9	10	2
10	3	1	42	14	4	10	11	2
11	4	1	43	10	4	11	9	2
12	4	1	44	9	4	12	8	2
13	4	1	45	8	4	13	6	2
14	5	1	46	6	4	14	7	2
15	5	1	47	11	4	15	8	2
16	4	2	48	12	5	16	9	3
17	4	2	49	13	5	17	10	3
18	4	2	50	11	5	18	11	3
19	4	2	51	6	5	19	9	3
20	3	2	52	9	6	20	8	4
21	3	2	53	14	6	21	6	4
22	6	2	54	10	6	22	12	4
23	7	2	55	9	6	23	8	4
24	7	2	56	11	7	24	9	5
25	7	2	57	12	7	25	10	5
26	8	2	58	13	7	26	11	6
27	9	2	59	11	7	27	9	6
28	10	2	60	14	8	28	13	7
29	9	2	61	10	8	29	13	7
30	8	2	62	12	8	30	14	8
31	7	2	63			31		

Table 12-16 – *Map_sig* and *Map_last* for field-based scanning order used for the additional ABT block sizes 8x8, 8x4 and 4x8

Scanning position	8x8		Scanning position	8x8		Scanning position	8x4 and 4x8	
	Map_sig	Map_last		Map_sig	Map_last		Map_sig	Map_last
0	0	0	32	9	3	0	0	0
1	1	1	33	9	3	1	1	1
2	1	1	34	10	3	2	2	1
3	2	1	35	10	3	3	3	1
4	2	1	36	8	3	4	4	1
5	3	1	37	11	3	5	5	1
6	3	1	38	12	3	6	6	1
7	4	1	39	11	3	7	3	1

8	5	1	40	9	4	8	4	2
9	6	1	41	9	4	9	5	2
10	7	1	42	10	4	10	6	2
11	7	1	43	10	4	11	3	2
12	7	1	44	8	4	12	4	2
13	8	1	45	13	4	13	7	2
14	4	1	46	13	4	14	6	2
15	5	1	47	9	4	15	8	2
16	6	2	48	9	5	16	9	3
17	9	2	49	10	5	17	7	3
18	10	2	50	10	5	18	6	3
19	10	2	51	8	5	19	8	3
20	8	2	52	13	6	20	9	4
21	11	2	53	13	6	21	10	4
22	12	2	54	9	6	22	11	4
23	11	2	55	9	6	23	12	4
24	9	2	56	10	7	24	12	5
25	9	2	57	10	7	25	10	5
26	10	2	58	14	7	26	11	6
27	10	2	59	14	7	27	13	6
28	8	2	60	14	8	28	13	7
29	11	2	61	14	8	29	14	7
30	12	2	62	14	8	30	14	8
31	11	2	63			31		

12.5.2.3 Initialisation of context models

The initialization procedure for the context models is specified in subclause 9.2.3. In this subclause, the initialization parameters for the additional context models in subclause 12.4.2 are specified.

Table 12-17 – Initialisation parameters for context identifier *ctx_mb_type_I_AB*

Context label	ctx_mb_type_I_AB	
	m	n
0	-8	53
1	2	50
2	17	20
3	2	50
4	2	50

Table 12-18 – Initialisation parameters for context identifiers *ctx_cbp4*, *ctx_sig*, *ctx_last*, *ctx_abs_level* for context category 5 – 7

Context label	Context category 5				Context label	Context category 6				Context label	Context category 7			
	I-slices		P,B-slices			I-slices		P,B-slices			I-slices		P,B-slices	
	m	n	m	n		m	n	m	n		m	n	m	n
ctx_cbp4														
					267	-4	63	-2	61	271	-1	63	-3	63
					268	-1	70	-7	75	272	-7	74	-15	75
					269	-7	68	-12	70	273	-1	70	-13	80
					270	-5	76	-20	86	274	-5	76	-21	88
ctx_sig														
275	-1	59	-4	44	290	-8	69	-3	48	305	-8	68	-3	49
276	-7	55	-3	34	291	-12	67	-5	47	306	-11	68	-6	47
277	-6	58	-2	35	292	-11	68	-3	47	307	-11	64	-3	48
278	-7	53	-4	33	293	-12	63	-7	47	308	-11	56	-7	46
279	-9	52	-5	31	294	-12	66	-7	48	309	-13	63	-6	47
280	-5	48	-2	31	295	-12	66	-3	46	310	-11	67	-3	45
281	-14	59	-7	36	296	-7	60	-7	48	311	-8	63	-8	49
282	-8	53	-1	31	297	-12	63	-4	45	312	-12	65	-6	46
283	-10	54	-4	33	298	-11	64	-2	45	313	-11	63	-3	46
284	-5	47	4	29	299	-14	64	-5	46	314	-13	60	-2	45
285	-4	43	0	29	300	-12	57	-8	43	315	-11	53	-7	45
286	-13	56	2	31	301	-16	57	0	35	316	-13	52	-2	37
287	-9	49	0	31	302	-9	53	5	40	317	-8	50	0	38
288	-8	47	5	23	303	7	54	-3	57	318	8	52	-3	54
289	3	44	15	28	304	2	67	5	63	319	1	67	7	64
ctx_last														
320	12	29	17	27	329	9	25	24	10	338	8	25	25	9
321	5	29	23	17	330	7	25	25	7	339	8	24	25	7
322	9	28	24	21	331	13	22	27	12	340	15	21	26	13
323	18	22	22	28	332	18	19	24	19	341	21	17	25	19
324	19	23	23	31	333	20	22	24	24	342	25	22	21	29
325	23	23	23	36	334	25	23	25	32	343	28	23	25	33
326	26	22	17	43	335	21	30	22	36	344	22	31	13	44
327	14	41	17	49	336	22	38	22	45	345	15	46	13	50
328	40	31	2	58	337	13	55	-3	61	346	10	59	2	57
ctx_abs_level														

347	-9	55	-3	43	357	-11	63	-6	51	367	-11	63	-6	51
348	-1	30	-1	14	358	-3	34	-4	21	368	-3	34	-4	21
349	-2	34	0	16	359	-5	39	-6	28	369	-5	39	-6	28
350	-2	36	2	18	360	-5	41	-4	31	370	-5	41	-4	31
351	-1	37	1	23	361	-4	44	-5	37	371	-4	44	-5	37
352	-4	40	-7	36	362	-7	46	-10	41	372	-7	46	-10	41
353	-1	45	-2	43	363	-7	54	-9	49	373	-7	54	-9	49
354	-6	53	-4	47	364	-5	56	-7	51	374	-5	56	-7	51
355	-8	55	-5	49	365	-6	58	-8	53	375	-6	58	-8	53
356	-11	64	1	52	366	-11	69	-11	60	376	-11	69	-11	60

Annex A

Profile and level definitions

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation | International Standard)

A.1 Introduction

Profiles and Levels specify the capabilities needed to decode the coded data, and may be used to indicate interoperability points between individual decoder implementations.

NOTE - This Recommendation | International Standard does not include individually selectable "options" at the decoder, as this would increase interoperability difficulties.

Each Profile defines a set of algorithmic features and limits which shall be supported by all decoders conforming to that Profile. Note that encoders are not required to make use of any particular set of features supported in a Profile.

Each Level defines a set of limits on the values which may be taken by the parameters of this Recommendation | International Standard. The same set of Level definitions is used with all Profiles, but individual implementations may support a different Level for each supported Profile. For any given Profile, Levels generally correspond to decoder processing and memory capability, in units based on video decoding, rather than on specific implementation platforms.

A.2 Requirements on video decoder capability

Capabilities of video decoders conforming to this Recommendation | International Standard are specified in terms of the ability to decode video streams conforming to constraints Profiles and Levels specified in this Annex. For each such Profile, the Level supported for that Profile shall also be expressed. Such expression may be in the form of coded values equivalent to a specific Profile and specific Level from this Annex.

Specific values are defined in this annex for the syntax elements `profile_idc` and `level_idc`. All other values of `profile_idc` and `level_idc` are reserved for future use by ITU-T | ISO/IEC.

NOTE: Decoders should not infer that if a reserved value of `profile_idc` or `level_idc` falls between the values specified in this Recommendation | International Standard this indicates intermediate capabilities between the specified profiles or levels, as there are no restrictions on the method to be chosen by ITU-T | ISO/IEC for the use of such future reserved values.

A.3 Baseline profile

A.3.1 Features

All decoders supporting the Baseline Profile shall be capable of decoding bitstreams which use the following features:

- a) I and P picture types
- b) In-loop deblocking filter
- c) Frame pictures with `mb_level_aff = 0`
- d) 1/4-sample motion compensation
- e) Tree-structured motion segmentation down to 4x4 block size
- f) VLC-based entropy coding
- g) Arbitrary slice order (ASO): In Baseline profile, the decoding order of slices within a picture may not follow the constraint that `first_mb_in_slice` is monotonically increasing within the NAL unit stream for a picture.
- h) Flexible macroblock ordering (FMO, maximum 8 slice groups): In Baseline profile, `num_slice_groups_minus1 < 8`.
- i) Redundant slices
- j) 4:2:0 Chrominance format

Decoders supporting the Baseline Profile Level 2.1 and above shall also be capable of decoding bitstreams using:

- k) Field pictures.

Conformance to the Baseline Profile is indicated by setting the syntax element `profile_idc` equal to 66.

A.3.2 Limits

All decoders supporting this Profile shall be capable of decoding bitstreams which:

- a) use 15 or fewer Reference Frames,
- b) have a compression ratio per picture of 4:1 or greater,
- c) use 64 or fewer Picture Parameter Sets, and,
- d) use 16 or fewer Independent Sequence Parameter Sets.

A.4 X profile

A.4.1 Features

All decoders supporting the X Profile shall be capable of decoding bitstreams which use the following features:

- a) Bi-predictive slices
- b) SP and SI slices
- c) Data partitioned slices
- d) Weighted prediction
- e) All features included in the Baseline Profile

All video decoders supporting the X Profile shall also support the Baseline Profile. The Level number supported for the Baseline Profile shall not be less than the Level number supported for the X Profile.

Conformance to the X Profile is indicated by setting the syntax element `profile_idc` equal to 88.

A.4.2 Limits

All decoders supporting this Profile shall be capable of decoding bitstreams which:

- a) use 15 or fewer Reference Frames,
- b) have a compression ratio per picture of 4:1 or greater,
- c) use 64 or fewer Picture Parameter Sets, and,
- d) use 16 or fewer Sequence Parameter Sets.

A.5 Main profile

A.5.1 Features

All decoders supporting the Main Profile shall be capable of decoding bitstreams which use the following features:

- a) Bi-predictive slices
- b) CABAC
- c) Weighted prediction
- d) Adaptive block-size transforms (ABT)
- e) All features included in the Baseline Profile except:
 1. Arbitrary Slice Order (ASO): In Main profile, the decoding order of slices within a picture shall follow the constraint that `first_mb_in_slice` shall be monotonically increasing within the NAL unit stream for a picture.
 2. Flexible Macroblock Order (FMO): In Main profile, `num_slice_groups_minus1` shall be zero.
 3. Redundant Slices

Decoders supporting Level 2.1 and above shall also be capable of decoding bitstreams using:

- f) Interlaced pictures, frame/field adaptive at picture level and macroblock level.

Conformance to the Main profile is indicated by setting the syntax element `profile_idc` equal to 77.

A.5.2 Limits

All decoders supporting this Profile shall be capable of decoding bitstreams which:

- a) use 15 or fewer Reference Frames,
- b) have a compression ratio per picture of 4:1 or greater,
- c) use 64 or fewer Picture Parameter Sets, and,
- d) use 16 or fewer Sequence Parameter Sets.

A.6 Level definitions

A.6.1 General

Level limits are expressed in units of whole luma macroblocks. If a particular picture height or width is not an exact multiple of a whole macroblock, that dimension shall be considered as rounded up to the next whole macroblock for the purposes of conformance with this subclause.

The definition of support for a given Level is that any picture size/frame rate combination shall be decoded where the:

- sample processing rate (in whole macroblocks/second) is \leq the Level limit given, and,
- picture size (Height * Width, in whole macroblocks) is \leq the Level limit given, and,
- required reference memory is \leq the Level limit given, and,
- maximum video bit rate of the bitstream is \leq the Level limit given, and,
- required HRD/VBV buffer size is \leq the Level limit given, and,
- horizontal and vertical motion vector range does not exceed the Level limits given, and,
- picture Height and picture Width (in whole macroblocks) are $\leq \sqrt{\text{LevelLimitMaxPictureSize} * 8}$, and,
- frame rate is not greater than 172 Hz.

The definition of each Level includes the requirements of all lower numbered Levels in Table A-1. Decoders supporting a given Level shall also be capable of decoding bitstreams using all lower numbered Levels.

Note that display of decoded video is outside the scope of this Recommendation | International Standard; some decoder implementations may not include displays at all, and display limitations do not necessarily cause interoperability failures.

“Picture size” means the total number of macroblocks in the complete picture (both even and odd fields if interlaced).

A.6.2 Level limits

Table A-1 below gives the parameter limits for each Level. Conformance to a particular Level shall be indicated by setting the syntax element `level_idc` equal to a value of ten times the level number specified in Table A-1.

Table A-1 – Level Limits

Level #	Max Sample Processing Rate (MB/s)	Max Picture Size (MBs)	Reference Memory (1024 bytes)	Max Video Bitrate (1000 bits/sec)	Max HRD/VBV Buffer Size (bits)	Horizontal MV Range (full pels)	Vertical MV Range (full pels)	Minimum luma Bi-predictive block size
1	1 485	99	148.5	64	163 840	[-2048, 2047.75]	[-64,+63.75]	8x8
1.1	2 970	396	891.0	128	327 680	[-2048, 2047.75]	[-128,+127.75]	8x8
1.2	5 940	396	891.0	768	1 966 080	[-2048, 2047.75]	[-128,+127.75]	8x8
2	11 880	396	891.0	2 000	2 000 000	[-2048, 2047.75]	[-128,+127.75]	8x8
2.1	19 800	792	1 782.0	4 000	4 000 000	[-2048, 2047.75]	[-256,+255.75]	8x8
2.2	20 250	1 620	3 037.5	4 000	4 000 000	[-2048, 2047.75]	[-256,+255.75]	8x8
3	40 500	1 620	3 037.5	8 000	8 000 000	[-2048, 2047.75]	[-256,+255.75]	8x8
3.1	108 000	3 600	6 750.0	20 000	20 000 000	[-2048, 2047.75]	[-512,+511.75]	8x8
3.2	216 000	5 120	7 680.0	20 000	20 000 000	[-2048, 2047.75]	[-512,+511.75]	8x8
4	245 760	8 192	12 288.0	20 000	20 000 000	[-2048, 2047.75]	[-512,+511.75]	8x8
5	491 520	19 200	28 800.0	TBD	(1s @ max bps)	[-2048, 2047.75]	TBD	8x8

Levels with non-integer Level numbers in Table A-1 are referred to as “intermediate Levels”. All Levels have the same status, but note that some applications may choose to use only the integer-numbered Levels.

Informative subclause A.7 shows the effect of these limits on frame rates for several example picture formats.

A.6.3 Reference memory constraints on modes

“Reference Memory” means the decoder memory pool which is used to store reference frames and post-decoder frame buffers. Note that P pictures require one reference frame, and B pictures require two reference frames; any remaining reference memory may be used either for multiple reference frames or for post-decoder frame buffers.

Decoders shall support all bitstreams within a given Profile and Level where the required reference memory does not exceed the limit given for the Level.

The reference memory required for a given mode shall be calculated as:

$$\text{bytes} = \text{PictureSize} * \text{NumberOfReferenceFrames} * \text{ChromaFormatParameter} * 256$$

The PictureSize parameter is in units of whole macroblocks.

The parameter ChromaFormatParameter shall take values according to Table A-2:

Table A-2 – ChromaFormatParameter values

Chrominance Format	ChromaFormatParameter
monochrome	1
4:2:0	1.5
4:2:2	2
4:4:4	3

A.7 Effect of level limits on frame rate (informative)

This subclause does not form an integral part of this Recommendation | International Standard.

Level number:	1	1.1	1.2	2	2.1	2.2	3	3.1	3.2	4	5
Max picture size (macroblocks):	99	396	396	396	792	1,620	1,620	3,600	5,120	8,192	19,200
Max macroblocks/second:	1,485	2,970	5,940	11,880	19,800	20,250	40,500	108,000	216,000	245,760	491,520
Max picture size (samples):	25,344	101,376	101,376	101,376	202,752	414,720	414,720	921,600	1,310,720	2,097,152	4,915,200
Max samples/second (1000s):	380	760	1,521	3,041	5,069	5,184	10,368	27,648	55,296	62,915	125,829
Format	Sample Width	Sample Height	MB Wide	MB High							
SQCIF	128	96	8	6	30.9	61.9	123.8	172.0	172.0	172.0	172.0
QCIF	176	144	11	9	15.0	30.0	60.0	120.0	172.0	172.0	172.0
QVGA	320	240	20	15	-	9.9	19.8	39.6	66.0	67.5	135.0
SIF	352	240	22	15	-	9.0	18.0	36.0	60.0	61.4	122.7
CIF	352	288	22	18	-	7.5	15.0	30.0	50.0	51.1	102.3
2SIF	352	480	22	30	-	-	-	30.0	30.7	61.4	163.6
HHR	352	576	22	36	-	-	-	25.0	25.6	51.1	136.4
VGA	640	480	40	30	-	-	-	-	16.9	33.8	90.0
4SIF	704	480	44	30	-	-	-	-	15.3	30.7	81.8
NTSC SD	720	480	45	30	-	-	-	-	15.0	30.0	80.0
4CIF	704	576	44	36	-	-	-	-	12.8	25.6	68.2
PAL SD	720	576	45	36	-	-	-	-	12.5	25.0	66.7
SVGA	800	600	50	38	-	-	-	-	-	56.8	113.7
XGA	1024	768	64	48	-	-	-	-	-	35.2	70.3
720p	1280	720	80	45	-	-	-	-	-	30.0	60.0
4VGA	1280	960	80	60	-	-	-	-	-	45.0	51.2
SXGA	1280	1024	80	64	-	-	-	-	-	42.2	48.0
16SIF	1408	960	88	60	-	-	-	-	-	-	46.5
16CIF	1408	1152	88	72	-	-	-	-	-	-	38.8
4SVGA	1600	1200	100	75	-	-	-	-	-	-	32.8
1080i	1920	1080	120	68	-	-	-	-	-	-	30.1
2Kx1K	2048	1024	128	64	-	-	-	-	-	-	30.0
4XGA	2048	1536	128	96	-	-	-	-	-	-	40.0
16VGA	2560	1920	160	120	-	-	-	-	-	-	25.6

Note 1 This is a variable-picture-size specification. The specific picture sizes in this table are illustrative examples only.

Note 2 XGA is also known as (aka) XVGA, 4SVGA aka UXGA, 16XGA aka 4Kx3K, HHR aka 2CIF aka 1/2 D1, aka 1/2 ITU-R BT.601.

Note 3 Frame rates given are correct for progressive scan modes, and for interlaced if "MB High" column value is even.

Annex B

Byte stream format

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation | International Standard)

B.1 Introduction

This annex defines a byte stream format specified for use by systems that transmit some or all of the NAL unit stream as an ordered stream of bytes or bits within which the locations of NAL unit boundaries need to be identifiable from patterns in the data, such as ITU-T Recommendation H.222.0 | ISO/IEC 13818-1 systems or ITU-T Recommendation H.320 systems. For bit-oriented transmission, the network bit order for the byte stream format is defined to start with the MSB of the first byte, proceed to the LSB of the first byte, followed by the MSB of the second byte, etc.

The byte stream format consists of a sequence of `byte_stream_unit()` structures. Each `byte_stream_unit()` contains one start code prefix (SCP) and one `nal_unit()`. Optionally, at the discretion of the encoder, the `byte_stream_unit()` may also contain additional "stuffing" zero-valued bytes as specified in this clause.

There are two types of start code prefixes:

- A short SCP, consisting of one byte having the value zero (0x00) followed by one byte having the value one (0x01), and
- A long SCP, consisting of two bytes having the value zero (0x00) followed by one byte having the value one (0x01).

The long SCP provides a mechanism for decoder byte-alignment recovery in the event of loss of decoder synchronization.

B.2 Byte stream NAL unit syntax

<code>byte_stream_unit()</code> {	Category	Mnemonic
<code>while (next_bits(16) != 0x0001 && next_bits(24) != 0x000001)</code>		
<code>zero_byte</code>		<code>f(8) = 0x00</code>
<code>if(next_bits() == 0x000001)</code>		
<code>zero_byte</code>		<code>f(8) = 0x00</code>
<code>zero_byte</code>		<code>f(8) = 0x00</code>
<code>one_byte</code>		<code>f(8) = 0x01</code>
<code>nal_unit()</code>		
}		

B.3 Byte stream NAL unit semantics -

The order of byte stream NAL units in the byte stream shall follow the decoding order of the NAL units contained in the byte stream NAL units.

`zero_byte` is a single byte (8 bits) having the value zero (0x00). Optionally, at the discretion of the encoder, the beginning of a `byte_stream_unit()` may contain more `zero_byte` syntax elements than required in this subclause.

The minimum required number of `zero_byte` syntax elements depends on the `nal_unit_type` as defined in Table 7-1, in order to ensure the use of the long SCP for certain `nal_unit_type` values. This ensures use of the long SCP in the `byte_stream_unit()` for these `nal_unit()` structures. The use of the long SCP for `nal_unit()` structures with other values of `nal_unit_type` is optional. At least two `zero_byte` syntax elements shall be present in each `byte_stream_unit()` for the following values of `nal_unit_type`:

- 0x06: Supplemental enhancement information,
- 0x07: Sequence parameter set,
- 0x08: Picture parameter set, and
- 0x09: Picture delimiter.

one_byte is a single byte (8 bits) having the value one (0x01). A sequence of two **zero_byte** syntax elements followed by a **one_byte** is a long SCP, and one **zero_byte** followed by a **one_byte** is a short SCP.

The use of the byte sequence 0x00 0x02 is reserved for future use by ITU-T | ISO/IEC.

B.4 Decoder byte-alignment recovery (informative)

This subclause does not form an integral part of this Recommendation | International Standard.

If the decoder does not have byte alignment with the encoder's byte stream, the decoder can examine the incoming bit stream for the binary pattern '00000000 00000000 00000001' (23 consecutive zero-valued bits followed by a non-zero bit). The bit immediately following this pattern is the first bit of a whole byte. Upon detecting this pattern, the decoder will be byte aligned with the encoder.

Once byte aligned with the encoder, the decoder can examine the incoming byte stream for the byte sequences 0x00 0x01 and 0x00 0x03.

If the byte sequence 0x00 0x01 is detected, this represents a SCP. If the previous byte was 0x00, the SCP is a long SCP. Otherwise, it is a short SCP.

If the byte sequence 0x00 0x03 is detected, the decoder discards the byte 0x03 as shown in the `rbsp_extraction()` syntax diagram.

NOTE - Many systems are inherently byte aligned, and thus have no need for the bit-oriented byte alignment detection procedure described in this subclause.

NOTE - The byte alignment detection procedure described in this subclause is equivalent to searching a byte sequence for 0x00 0x00, starting at any alignment position. Detecting this pattern indicates that the next non-zero byte contains the end of a SCP, and the first non-zero bit in that next non-zero byte is the last bit of an aligned byte.

Annex C

Hypothetical Reference Decoder

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation | International Standard)

C.1 Hypothetical reference decoder and buffering verifiers

The hypothetical reference decoder (HRD) represents a set of normative requirements on coded bitstreams or packet streams. These constraints must be enforced by an encoder, and can be assumed by a decoder or multiplexor to be true. It is possible to verify the conformance of a bitstream or packet stream to the requirements of this subclause by examining the bitstream or packet stream only.

This subclause defines the normative requirements of the HRD. Subclause C.2 provides additional information that is important for a full understanding of the HRD operation.

Two types of streams may be subject to the HRD requirements of this Recommendation | International Standard; a stream of VCL NAL Units and a bitstream. Figure C-1 shows how each of these is constructed from the RBSP. In other words, a given set of HRD parameters may pertain to the VCL data only or to the multiplexed combination of VCL and NAL. This is signalled through video usability information (subclauses E.2 and E.3).

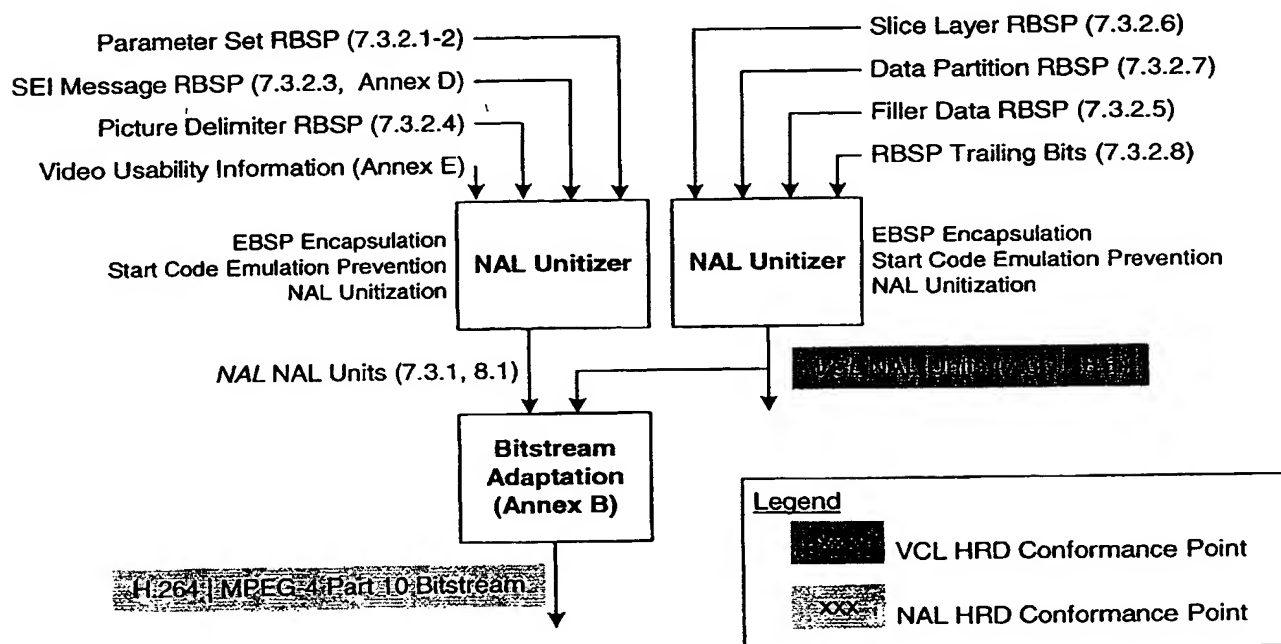


Figure C-1 – Structure of Byte streams and NAL unit streams and HRD Conformance Points

The HRD can contain any combination of the following buffering verifiers, as shown in Figure C-2:

- One or more pre-decoder buffers, each of which is either variable bit rate (VBR) or constant bit rate (CBR)
- At most one reference and post-decoder buffer attached to the output of one of the pre-decoder buffers

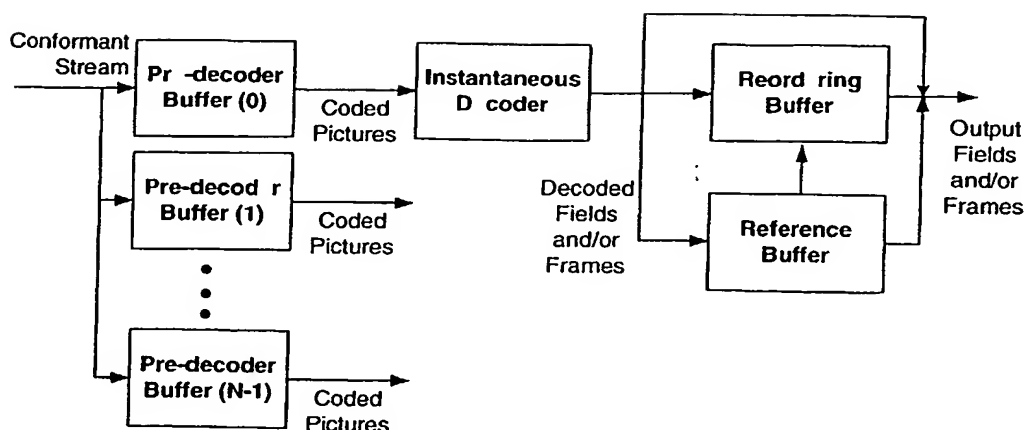


Figure C-2 – HRD Buffer Verifiers

The multiple buffering verifiers exist because a bit stream or packet stream may conform to multiple pre-decoder buffers, as detailed in subclause C.2.2.

All the arithmetic in this annex is done with real values, so that no rounding errors can propagate. For example, the number of bits in a pre-decoder buffer just prior to or after removal of a transmitted picture is not necessarily an integer. Furthermore, while conformance is guaranteed under the assumption that all frame-rates and clocks used to generate the bitstream match exactly the values signalled in the bitstream, each of these may vary from the signalled or defined value.

This hypothetical reference decoder uses two time bases. One time base is a 90 kHz clock, and is only in operation for a short time after the reception of a Buffering Period SEI message. The second time base uses the `num_units_in_tick` and `time_scale` syntax in the Sequence Parameter Set to derive the time interval between picture removals from the buffers (and in some cases between picture arrivals to the pre-decoder buffer).

In the following description, let $t_c = \text{num_units_in_tick} \div \text{time_scale}$ be the *clock tick* associated with the second clock. The clock tick is a time interval no larger than the shortest possible inter-picture capture interval in seconds. Also let $be[t]$ and $te[b]$ be the bit equivalent of a time t and the time equivalent of a number of bits b , with the conversion factor being the buffer arrival bit rate.

The following statements are normative requirements on the composition of a conforming bitstream. If multiple sequence parameter sets pertain to the bit stream or packet stream, they must contain consistent HRD information. In the case that any HRD buffers are signalled in the sequence parameter set(s), then the following rules dictate the insertion of SEI messages in the bit stream or packet stream.

1. At each decoder refresh point (IDR, ODR or GDR), a buffering period SEI message shall follow the last NAL Unit of the last picture before a decoder refresh and precede the first NAL Unit of the first picture after the decoder refresh. Note that in the case of an IDR, this SEI message will precede the indication of the decoder refresh point.
2. An HRD picture SEI message must follow the last NAL Unit of each picture and precede the first NAL Unit of the next picture. Each of these SEI messages pertains to the picture that follows it.

C.1.1 Operation of VCL video buffering verifier (VBV) pre-decoder buffer

This specification applies independently to each pre-decoder buffer VUI sequence parameters within the sequence parameter set.

C.1.1.1 Timing of bitstream or packet stream arrival

The buffer is initially empty. The first bit of the first transmitted picture begins to enter the buffer at *initial arrival time* $t_{a,0}(0)=0$ at the bit rate `bit_rate[k]` associated with the pre-decoder buffer (see subclause 8.3.3). The last bit of the first transmitted picture finishes arriving at *final arrival time*

$$t_{ar}(0) = b(0) \div \text{bit_rate}[k], \quad (\text{C-1})$$

where $b(n)$ is the size in bits of the n -th transmitted picture. The final arrival time for each picture is always the sum of the initial arrival time and the time required for the bits associated with that picture to enter the pre-decoder buffer:

$$t_{ar}(n) = t_{ai}(n) + b(n) \div \text{bit_rate}[k]. \quad (\text{C-2})$$

For each subsequent picture, the initial arrival time of picture n is the later of $t_{ar}(n-1)$ and the sum of all preceding $\text{pr_dec_removal_delay}$ times, as indicated in Equation C-3.

$$t_{ai}(n) = \max \{ t_{ar}(n-1), t_c \times \sum_{m=0}^{n-1} \text{pre_dec_removal_delay}(m) \} \quad (\text{C-3})$$

See subclauses C.2.5 and C.3.5 for the syntax and semantics of the $\text{pre_dec_removal_delay}$ times. When the encoder is producing a bit rate lower than the bit rate associated with a pre-decoder buffer, this rule may delay the entry of some pictures into the pre-decoder buffer, producing periods during which no data enters.

C.1.1.2 Timing of coded picture removal

For the first picture and all pictures that are the first complete picture after receiving a buffering period SEI message, the coded data associated with the picture is removed from the pre-decoder buffer at a *removal time* equal to the following:

$$t_r(0) = \text{initial_pre_dec_removal_delay} \div 90000 \quad (\text{C-4})$$

where $\text{initial_pre_dec_removal_delay}$ is the pre-decoder removal delay in the buffering period SEI message.

After the first picture is removed, the buffer is examined at subsequent points of time, each of which is delayed from the previous one by an integer multiple of the clock tick t_c .

The removal time $t_r(n)$ of coded data for picture n is delayed with respect to that of picture $n-1$; the delay is equal to the time indicated in the $\text{pre_dec_removal_delay}$ syntax element present in the HRD picture SEI message.

$$t_r(n) = t_r(n-1) + t_c \times \text{pre_dec_removal_delay}(n) \quad (\text{C-5})$$

At this time, the coded data for the next transmitted picture is removed from the pre-decoder buffer.

In the case that the amount of coded data for picture n , $b(n)$, is so large that it prevents removal at the computed removal time, the coded data is removed at the *delayed removal time*, $t_{r,ld}(n, m^*)$, given by

$$t_{r,ld}(n, m^*) = t_r(0) + t_c \times m^*, \quad (\text{C-6})$$

where m^* is such that $t_{r,ld}(n, m^*-1) < t_{ar}(n) \leq t_{r,ld}(n, m^*)$. This is an aspect of low-delay operation (see subclause C.2.1.2). This delayed removal time is the next time instant after the final arrival time $t_{ar}(n)$ which is delayed with respect to $t_r(0)$ by an integer multiple of t_c .

C.1.1.3 Conformance constraints on coded bitstreams or packet streams

A transmitted or stored stream of coded data conforming to this Recommendation | International Standard fulfils the following requirements.

- **Removal time consistency.** For each picture, the removal times $t_r(n)$ computed using different buffering periods as starting points for conformance verification shall be consistent to within the accuracy of the two clocks used (90 kHz clock used for initial removal time and t_c clock used for subsequent removal time calculations). This can be ensured at the encoder by computing the pre-decoder removal delay ($\text{initial_pre_dec_removal_delay}$) for a buffering period SEI message from the arrival and removal times computed using Equations C-3 and C-5. Any small deviations between the values computed in the different ways shall not cause violation of any of the following constraints.
- **Underflow and Overflow Prevention.** The buffer must never overflow or underflow.

NOTE - In terms of the arrival and removal schedules, this means that, with the exception of some pictures in low-delay mode that are described below, all bits from a picture must be in the pre-decoder buffer at the picture's computed removal time $t_r(n)$. In other

words, its final arrival time must be no later than its removal time: $t_{af}(n) \leq tr(n)$. Further, the removal time $tr(n)$ must be no later than the time-equivalent of the buffer size $te[pre_dec_buffer_size[k]]$. Note that this prevents overflow.

- **Big Picture Removal Time, Overflow Prevention and Resynchronisation of Underflow Prevention.** If the final arrival time $t_{af}(n)$ of picture n exceeds its computed removal time $t_r(n)$, its size must be such that it can be removed from the buffer without overflow at $t_{r,d}(n, m')$ as defined above.
- **Constant Bit Rate Constraint.** If $vbr_cbr_flag[k] = 1$, data shall arrive continuously at the input to the pre-decoder buffer. This is equivalent to ensuring that $t_{af}(n-1) \geq t_c \times \sum_{m=0}^{n-1} pre_dec_removal_delay(m)$.
- **Time Duration Constraint.** For each picture immediately preceding a Buffering Period SEI message, the sum of pre-decoder removal delays from the start of the sequence up to that point of time shall be no further from the accumulated sequence duration as represented by the sum of `prev_buf_period_duration` than the `removal_time_tolerance` in the relevant sequence parameter set.

If the picture immediately preceding the Buffering Period SEI message is the n -th picture in transmitted order, and the buffering period SEI message is the k -th such message, then this constraint amounts to the following:

$$\left| \sum_{m=0}^{n-1} pre_dec_removal_delay(m) - \sum_{m=0}^{k-1} prev_buf_period_duration(m) \right| \leq removal_time_tolerance \quad (C-7)$$

- **Maximum Decoder Frame Rate.** The interval between consecutive removal times shall not be lower than the minimum picture interval, defined as the inverse of the maximum picture rate (See A.5.1).

C.1.2 Operation of the post-decoder buffer verifier

C.1.2.1 Arrival timing

A reconstructed picture is added to the post-decoder buffer at the same time when the corresponding coded picture is removed from the pre-decoder buffer.

C.1.2.2 Removal timing

Data is not removed from the post-decoder buffer during a period called the initial post-decoder buffering period. The period starts when the first picture is added to the post-decoder buffer.

When the initial post-decoder buffering period has expired, the playback timer is started from the earliest display time of the pictures residing in the post-decoder buffer at that time.

A picture is virtually displayed when the playback timer reaches the scheduled presentation time of the picture.

A picture memory is marked unused in the post-decoder buffer when it is virtually displayed and when it is no longer needed as a reference picture.

C.1.2.3 Conformance constraints

The occupancy of the post-decoder buffer shall not exceed the default or signalled buffer size.

Each picture shall be available in the post-decoder buffer before or on its presentation time.

C.2 Informative description of the HRD

Subclause C.1 contains the normative requirements imposed by a set of buffering verifiers. This subclause provides explanatory text describing in more detail the operation and capabilities of these buffers.

An HRD represents a means to communicate how the bit rate is controlled in the process of compression. The HRD contains a pre-decoder buffer (or VBV Buffer) through which compressed data flows with a precisely specified arrival and removal timing, as shown in Figure C-3. An HRD may be designed for variable or constant bit rate operation, and for low-delay or delay-tolerant behavior. The HRD described in this document handles all cases.

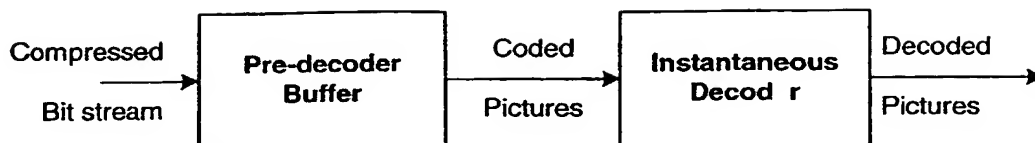


Figure C-3 – A Hypothetical Reference Decoder

Compressed data representing a sequence of coded pictures flows into the pre-decoder buffer according to a specified arrival schedule. All compressed bits associated with a given coded picture are removed from the pre-decoder buffer by the instantaneous decoder at the specified removal time of the picture.

The pre-decoder buffer *overflows* if the buffer becomes full and more bits are arriving. The buffer *underflows* if the removal time for a picture occurs before all compressed bits representing the picture have arrived.

C.2.1 Constrained arrival time leaky bucket (CAT-LB) model

The hypothetical reference decoder (HRD) is a mathematical model of a decoder and its input buffer. The k -th pre-decoder buffer of the HRD is characterized by the pre-decoder peak rate $\text{bit_rate}[k]$ (in bits per second), the buffer size $\text{pr_dec_buffer_size}[k]$ (in bits), the sequence initial pre-decoder buffer removal delay (in seconds), as well as picture removal delays for each picture. The first three of these parameters represent levels of resources (transmission capacity, buffer capacity, and delay) used to decode a bitstream.

The term "leaky bucket" arises from the analogy of the encoder as a system that "dumps" water in discrete chunks into a bucket that has a hole in it. The departure of bits from the encoder buffer corresponds to water leaking out of the bucket. Here, the decoder buffer is described, which has an inverse behaviour where bits flow *in* at a constant rate, and are removed in chunks.

The leaky bucket described here is called a *constrained arrival time* leaky bucket because the arrival times of all pictures after the first are constrained to arrive at the buffer input no earlier than the difference in hypothetical encoder processing times between that picture and the first picture. In other words, if a picture is encoded exactly seven seconds after the first picture was encoded, then its bits are guaranteed not to start arriving in the buffer prior to seven seconds after the bits of the first picture started arriving. It is possible to know this encoding time difference because it is sent in the bitstream as the picture removal delay.

C.2.1.1 Operation of the CAT-LB HRD

The HRD input buffer has capacity $\text{pre_dec_buffer_size}[k]$ bits. Initially, the buffer begins empty. The lifetime in the buffer of the coded bits associated with picture n is characterized by the *arrival interval* $\{t_{a_i}(n), t_{a_f}(n)\}$ and the *removal time* $t_r(n)$. The end-points of the arrival interval are known as the *initial arrival time* and the *final arrival time*.

At time $t_{a_i}(0) = 0$, the buffer begins to receive bits at the rate $\text{bit_rate}[k]$. The removal time $t_r(0)$ for the first picture is computed from the pre-decoder removal delay $\text{initial_pre_dec_removal_delay}$ (see Buffering Period SEI Message) associated with the buffer by the following:

$$t_r(0) = 90,000 \times \text{initial_pre_dec_removal_delay}. \quad (\text{C-8})$$

Removal times $t_r(1), t_r(2), t_r(3), \dots$, for subsequent pictures (in transmitted order) are computed with respect to $t_r(0)$, as follows. Let the *clock tick* t_c be defined by

$$t_c = \text{num_units_in_tick} \div \text{time_scale} \quad (\text{C-9})$$

For instance, if $\text{time_scale} = 60,000$ and $\text{num_units_in_tick} = 1,001$, then

$$t_c = 1,001 \div 60,000 = 16.68333\dots \text{ milliseconds}. \quad (\text{C-10})$$

In the HRD picture SEI message for each picture, there is a $\text{pre_dec_removal_delay}$ syntax element. This indicates the number of clock ticks to delay the removal of picture n after removing picture $n-1$. Thus, the removal time is simply

$$t_r(n) = t_r(n-1) + t_c \times \text{pre_dec_removal_delay}(n) \quad (\text{C-11})$$

Note that this recursion can be used to show that

$$t_r(n) = t_r(0) + t_c \times \sum_{m=1}^n [\text{pre_dec_removal_delay}(m)], \quad (\text{C-12})$$

The calculation of arrival times is more complex, because of the arrival time constraint. The initial arrival time of picture n is equal to the final arrival time of picture $n-1$, unless that time precedes the earliest arrival time, computed by

$$t_{\text{ai,earliest}}(n) = t_c \times \sum_{m=1}^n [\text{pre_dec_removal_delay}(m)] \quad (\text{C-13})$$

Let $b(n)$ be the number of bits associated with picture n . The duration of the picture arrival interval is always the time-equivalent of the picture size in bits, at the rate $\text{bit_rate}[k]$.

$$t_{\text{af}}(n) - t_{\text{ai}}(n) \equiv te[b(n)] = b(n) \div \text{bit_rate}[k] \quad (\text{C-14})$$

Figure C-4 demonstrates a segment of the pre-decoder buffer fullness plot for a CAT-LB with the parameters given in Table C-1 and picture sizes given by the first column of Table C-2. Note that Table C-2 lists for each picture the values for many times of interest in the buffering process. In addition to quantities defined above, the second column of Table C-2 contains t_e , which represents a hypothetical encoding time equal to the earliest possible initial arrival time of the picture.

Table C-1 - Attributes of an example CAT-LB HRD

Attribute	Value	Units
time_scale	1	units per second
num_units_in_tick	1	units per tick
bit_rate	1000	bits per second
pre_dec_buffer_size	10	bits
initial_delay	10	seconds

Table C-2 - Picture sizes, and encoding, arrival and removal times for the example CAT-LB HRD

b	t_e	t_{ai}	t_{af}	$t_{\text{ai}} - t_e$	t_r	$t_r - t_{\text{ai}}$	$t_r - t_e$
5,000	0	0	5	0	10	10	10
1,000	1	5	6	4	11	6	10
1,000	2	6	7	4	12	6	10
1,000	3	7	8	4	13	6	10
1,000	4	8	9	4	14	6	10
1,000	5	9	10	4	15	6	10
500	6	10	10.5	4	16	6	10
500	7	10.5	11	3.5	17	6.5	10
500	8	11	11.5	3	18	7	10
500	9	11.5	12	2.5	19	7.5	10
500	10	12	12.5	2	20	8	10
500	11	12.5	13	1.5	21	8.5	10
500	12	13	13.5	1	22	9	10
500	13	13.5	14	0.5	23	9.5	10
500	14	14	14.5	0	24	10	10
500	15	15	15.5	0	25	10	10
500	16	16	16.5	0	26	10	10

500	17	17	17.5	0	27	10	10
3,000	18	18	21	0	28	10	10
3,000	19	21	24	2	29	8	10
3,000	20	24	27	4	30	6	10
3,000	21	27	30	6	31	4	10
2,000	22	30	32	8	32	2	10
300	23	32	32.3	9	33	1	10
300	24	32.3	32.6	8.3	34	1.7	10
300	25	32.6	32.9	7.6	35	2.4	10
300	26	32.9	33.2	6.9	36	3.1	10
300	27	33.2	33.5	6.2	37	3.8	10
300	28	33.5	33.8	5.5	38	4.5	10
300	29	33.8	34.1	4.8	39	5.2	10
300	30	34.1	34.4	4.1	40	5.9	10
300	31	34.4	34.7	3.4	41	6.6	10
300	32	34.7	35	2.7	42	7.3	10
300	33	35	35.3	2	43	8	10
300	34	35.3	35.6	1.3	44	8.7	10
300	35	35.6	35.9	0.6	45	9.4	10
300	36	36	36.3	0	46	10	10
300	37	37	37.3	0	47	10	10
300	38	38	38.3	0	48	10	10
300	39	39	39.3	0	49	10	10
300	40	40	40.3	0	50	10	10
300	41	41	41.3	0	51	10	10
300	42	42	42.3	0	52	10	10
500	43	43	43.5	0	53	10	10
500	44	44	44.5	0	54	10	10
500	45	45	45.5	0	55	10	10
500	46	46	46.5	0	56	10	10
500	47	47	47.5	0	57	10	10
500	48	48	48.5	0	58	10	10
500	49	49	49.5	0	59	10	10
500	50	50	50.5	0	60	10	10
500	51	51	51.5	0	61	10	10
500	52	52	52.5	0	62	10	10

Legend:

t_e Encoding time
 t_{ai} Initial arrival time
 t_{af} Final arrival time
 t_r Removal time

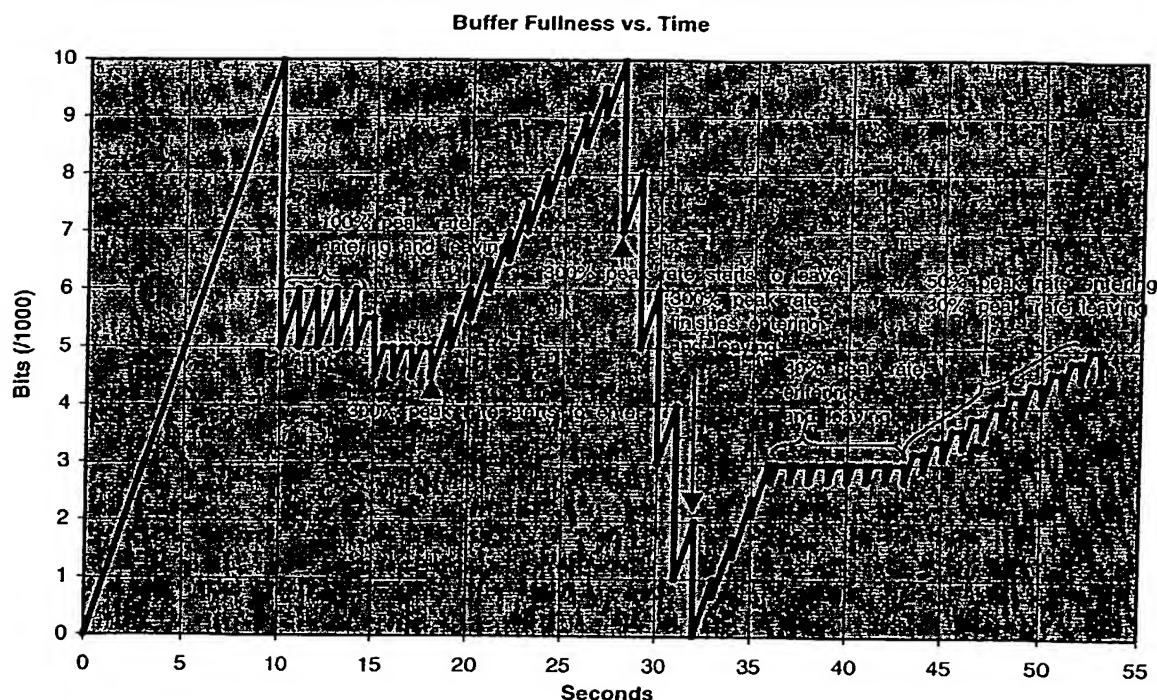


Figure C-4 – Buffer fullness plot for example HRD in Table C-2 with picture sizes given in Table C-3

As can be seen from Table C-2, the initial picture is large, and is followed by five pictures at exactly the buffer arrival rate R . This is followed by twelve pictures at half the rate, four pictures at three times the rate and one picture at twice the rate. Following this are two segments with pictures at 30% and 50% of the rate, respectively. In Figure C-4, the time interval from 10 seconds to 18 seconds illustrates the behaviour when the bit rate is constant and at or below the rate R . In fact, whenever the arrival bit rate remains less than R for a time, the lower points of the fullness curve will not change. Further, the fullness at the peak in such a segment will be proportional to the fraction of the peak rate being consumed by the pictures. From seconds 18 to 28, we see the temporary effect of an increase in arrival rate to above R . Once those large pictures start to exit the buffer, the bit rate of pictures leaving the buffer exceeds R , and the fullness decreases. This process terminates at second 32, when the big pictures have exited and the series of smaller pictures starts entering the buffer. During seconds 36-43, the 30% peak rate pictures are entering and leaving the buffer, and during seconds 43-52, 30% peak rate pictures are leaving while 50% peak rate pictures are entering. Hence the buffer fullness rises. Once 50% peak rate pictures begin to leave, the fullness stabilizes at 50% full. Note that this pre-decoder buffer stabilizes at a fullness that is proportional to the ratio of the short-term average bit rate to the arrival bit rate, rather than at 100%.

In general, the curve of buffer fullness vs. time is given by the following expression:

$$BF(t) = \sum_n [I(t_{ai}(n) \leq t < t_r(n)) \times b(n) + I(t_{ai}(n) < t < t_{af}(n)) \times be(t - t_{ai}(n))] \quad (C-15)$$

This expression uses indicator functions $I(\cdot)$ with time-related logical assertions as arguments to sum only those pictures that are completely in the buffer at time t , plus the appropriate portion of the picture currently entering the buffer, if one is. The indicator function $I(x)$ is '1' if x is true and '0' otherwise.

C.2.1.2 Low-delay operation

Low-delay operation is obtained by selecting a low value for the initial pre-decoder removal delay. This results in true low delay through the buffer because, under normal operation, no removal delay ($t_r(n) - t_{ai}(n)$) can exceed the initial removal delay $t_r(0)$. To see this, consider that the maximum removal delay for picture n occurs when the initial arrival time is equal to the earliest arrival time. Therefore, the maximum removal delay is given by $t_r(n) - t_{ai,earliest}(n)$. But,

$$t_r(n) = t_r(0) + t_c \times \sum_{m=1}^n [\text{pre_dec_removal_delay}(m)],$$

and

$$t_{ai,earliest}(n) = t_c \times \sum_{m=1}^n [\text{pre_dec_removal_delay}(m)],$$

so

$$t_r(n) - t_{ai,earliest}(n) = t_r(0). \quad (\text{C-16})$$

Thus setting an initial low delay creates a steady-state low-delay condition.

However, in low-delay operation, it is useful to be able to process the occasional large picture whose size is so large than that it cannot be removed by its indicated removal time. Such a large picture can arise at a scene change, for example. This would ordinarily lead to an "underflow" condition. When a large picture is encountered, the rules for removal are relaxed to prevent this. The picture is removed at the *delayed removal time*, $t_{r,ld}(n, m^*)$, given by

$$t_{r,ld}(n, m^*) = t_r(0) + t_c \times m^*, \quad (\text{C-17})$$

where m^* is such that $t_{r,ld}(n, m^*-1) < t_{ai}(n) + te[b(n)] \leq t_{r,ld}(n, m^*)$. Note that the buffer must be large enough that this large picture can be accommodated without overflow. Immediately after such a picture is received the removal time of the next picture must be such that low-delay operation is resumed. An encoder can facilitate this by skipping a number of pictures immediately after the large picture, if necessary.

C.2.1.3 Bitstream / packet stream constraints

The buffer must not be allowed to underflow or overflow. Furthermore, all pictures except the isolated big pictures must be completely in the buffer before their computed removal times. Isolated big pictures are allowed to arrive later than their computed removal times, but must still obey the overflow constraint. In CBR mode, there must be no gaps in bit arrival.

C.2.1.3.1 Underflow

The underflow constraint, $BF(t) \geq 0$ for all t , is satisfied if the final arrival time of each picture precedes its removal time.

$$t_{af}(n) \leq t_r(n) \quad (\text{C-18})$$

This puts an upper bound on the size of picture n . The picture size can be no larger than the bit-equivalent of the time interval from the start of arrival to the removal time.

$$b(n) \leq be[t_r(n) - t_{ai}(n)] \quad (\text{C-19})$$

Since the initial arrival time $t_{ai}(n)$ is in general a function of the sizes and removal delays of previous pictures, the constraint on $b(n)$ will vary over time as well.

C.2.1.3.2 Overflow

Overflow is avoided provided the buffer fullness curve $BF(t)$ never exceeds the buffer size B .

The constraints that the initial pre-decoder removal delay must be no larger than the time-equivalent of the buffer size, $t_r(0) \leq te(B)$, and that under normal operation no removal delay can exceed the initial one guarantee that no overflow occurs in normal operation. To avoid overflow of an isolated big picture, the picture size is constrained by

$$b(n) \leq be[B - t_{ai}(n)] \quad (\text{C-20})$$

C.2.1.3.3 Constant bitrate (CBR) operation

The CAT-LB model operates in constant bit rate mode if one further constraint is applied - that data must constantly arrive at the input of the buffer. This ensures that the average rate is equal to the buffer rate R . This model behaves like an MPEG-1 CBR model with variable frame rate. This condition is ensured if the final arrival time of picture n is no earlier than the earliest initial arrival time of picture $n+1$.

$$t_{af}(n) \geq t_{ai,earliest}(n+1) = t_c \times \sum_{m=1}^n [\text{pre_dec_removal_delay}(m)] \quad (\text{C-21})$$

This time constraint puts a lower bound on $b(n)$.

C.2.1.4 Rate control considerations

An encoder employs rate control as a means to constrain the varying bit rate characteristics of the coded bitstream or packet stream in order to produce high quality coded pictures at the target bit rate(s). A rate control algorithm may target a variable bit rate (VBR) or a constant bit rate (CBR). It may even target both a high peak rate using a VBR scheme and an average rate using a CBR scheme. Further, as shown in subclause C.2.2, multiple VBR rates can be targeted.

Rate control must ensure conformance with the pre-decoder buffers. This is related to the first goal of rate control, but is not necessarily the same. In this subclause, the way the pre-decoder buffers influences rate control is discussed. In a VBR pre-decoder buffers, the buffer must not overflow or underflow, but gaps may appear in the arrival rate. In order to meet these constraints, the encoder must ensure that for all t , the following inequalities remain true:

$$0 \leq BF(t) \leq B, \text{ for all } t. \quad (\text{C-22})$$

Using Equation D-14, this becomes:

$$0 \leq \sum_n [I(t_{af}(n) \leq t < t_r(n)) \times b(n) + I(t_{ai}(n) < t < t_{af}(n)) \times be(t - t_{ai}(n))] \leq B, \text{ for all } t. \quad (\text{C-23})$$

The buffer fullness $B(t)$ is a piecewise non-decreasing function of time, with each non-decreasing interval bounded by two consecutive removal times. Therefore, it is sufficient to guarantee the conformance at the interval endpoints; *i.e.* at the removal times. In particular, if underflow is prevented at the start of an interval (just after removal of a picture), it is completely prevented. The same holds for overflow at the end of the interval, just prior to picture removal. Therefore, the points of interest are the removal times. In the buffer at $t_r^-(n)$ and contributing to Equation C.22 are picture n and possibly some additional pictures up to picture $m > n$ (with the last picture possibly only partially in the buffer). All pictures earlier than picture n have been removed. At $t_r^+(n)$, picture n has been removed.

Thus when encoding picture n , one rate control task is to allocate bits to picture n and the others in the immediate future in such a way that overflow is prevented at $t_r^-(n)$, and underflow is prevented at $t_r^+(n)$. Most immediately, as long as $b(n)$ is small enough so that $te[b(n)] \leq t_r(n) - t_{ai}(n)$, both overflow at $t_r^-(n)$ and underflow at $t_r^+(n)$ are prevented. This is usually a very high limit, and a rate control method will most likely further limit $b(n)$ through its bit allocation process.

C.2.2 Multiple leaky bucket description

C.2.2.1 Schedule of a bitstream

The sequence of removal time and picture size pairs $\{(t_r(n), b(n)), n=0,1,\dots\}$ is called the schedule of a bitstream. The schedule of a bitstream is intrinsic to the bitstream, and completely characterizes the instantaneous coding rate of the bitstream over its lifetime. Although a bitstream may conform to VBVs with different peak bit rates and different pre-decoded buffer sizes, the schedule of the bitstream is independent of the VBV.

C.2.2.2 Containment in a leaky bucket

A leaky bucket with leak rate R_1 , bucket size B_1 , and initial bucket fullness $B_1 - F_1$ is said to contain a bitstream with schedule $\{(t_r(n), b(n)), n=0,1,\dots\}$ if the bucket does not overflow under the following conditions. At t_0 , d_0 bits are inserted into the leaky bucket on top of the $B_1 - F_1$ bits already in the bucket, and the bucket begins to drain at rate R_1 bits per second. If the bucket empties, it remains empty until the next insertion. At time t_i , $i \geq 1$, d_i bits are inserted into the bucket, and the bucket continues to drain at rate R_1 bits per second. In other words, for $i \geq 0$, the state of the bucket just prior to time t_i is

$$b_0 = B_1 - F_1 \quad (\text{C-24})$$

$$b_{i+1} = \max \{0, b_i + d_i - R_1(t_{i+1} - t_i)\}. \quad (\text{C-25})$$

The leaky bucket does not overflow if $b_i + d_i \leq B_1$ for all $i \geq 0$.

Equivalently, the leaky bucket contains the bitstream if the graph of the schedule of the bitstream lies between two parallel lines with slope R_1 , separated vertically by B_1 bits, possibly sheared horizontally, such that the upper line begins at F_1 at time t_0 , as illustrated in Figure C-5. Note from Figure C-5 that the same bitstream is containable in more than one leaky bucket. Indeed, a bitstream is containable in an infinite number of leaky buckets.

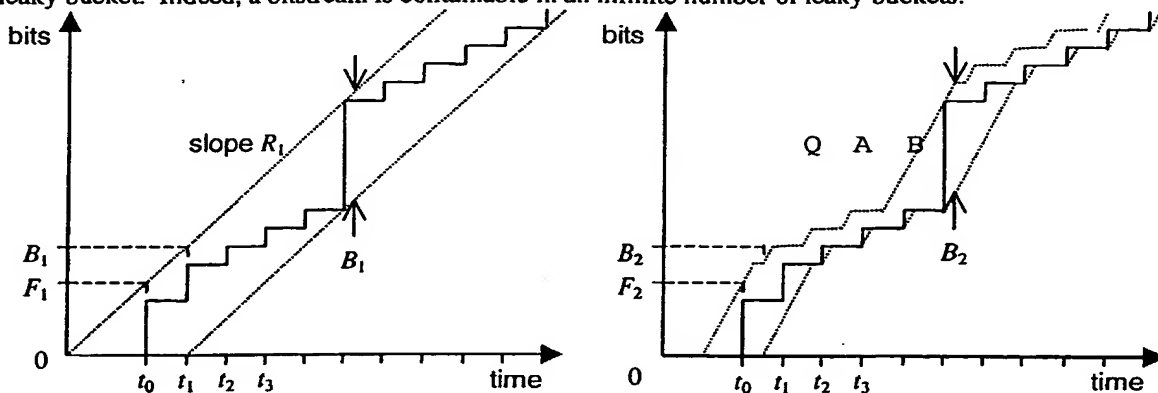


Figure C-5 – Illustration of the leaky bucket concept

If a bitstream is contained in a leaky bucket with parameters (R_1, B_1, F_1) , then when it is input with peak rate R_1 to a hypothetical reference decoder with parameters $R=R_1$, $B=B_1$, and $F=F_1$, then the HRD buffer does not overflow or underflow.

C.2.2.3 Minimum buffer size and minimum peak rate

If a bitstream is contained in two leaky buckets with parameters (R_1, B_1, F_1) and (R_2, B_2, F_2) , then it is also contained in any leaky bucket with parameters (R, B, F) where a) $R_1 \leq R \leq R_2$, b) $B \geq B_{\min}(R)$, and c) $F \geq F_{\min}(R)$ and $B_{\min}(R)$ and $F_{\min}(R)$ are defined by

$$B_{\min}(R) = \alpha B_n + (1 - \alpha) B_{n+1}, \quad (\text{C-26})$$

$$F_{\min}(R) = \alpha F_n + (1 - \alpha) F_{n+1}, \quad (\text{C-27})$$

and

$$\alpha = (R_{n+1} - R) / (R_{n+1} - R_n). \quad (\text{C-28})$$

For $R \leq R_1$,

$$B_{\min}(R) = B_1 + (R_1 - R)T \quad (\text{C-29})$$

$$F_{\min}(R) = F_1, \quad (\text{C-30})$$

where $T = t_{L-1} - t_0$ is the duration of the bitstream (i.e., the difference between the decoding times for the first and last pictures in the bitstream). And for $R \geq R_N$,

$$B_{\min}(R) = B_N \quad (\text{C-31})$$

$$F_{\min}(R) = F_N. \quad (\text{C-32})$$

Thus, the leaky bucket parameters can be linearly interpolated and extrapolated.

Alternatively, when the bitstream is communicated to a decoder with buffer size B , it is decodable provided $B \geq R_{min}(B)$ and $F \geq F_{min}(B)$, where for $B_n \geq B \geq B_{n+1}$,

$$R_{min}(B) = \alpha R_n + (1 - \alpha) R_{n+1} \quad (C-33)$$

$$F_{min}(B) = \alpha F_n + (1 - \alpha) F_{n+1} \quad (C-34)$$

$$\alpha = (B - B_{n+1}) \div (B_n - B_{n+1}). \quad (C-35)$$

For $B \geq B_1$,

$$R_{min}(B) = R_1 - (B - B_1) \div T \quad (C-36)$$

$$F_{min}(B) = F_1. \quad (C-37)$$

For $B \leq B_N$, the stream may not be decodable.

In summary, the bitstream is guaranteed to be decodable in the sense that the HRD buffer does not overflow or underflow, provided that the point (R, B) lies on or above the lower convex hull of the set of points $(0, B_1 + R_1 T)$, (R_1, B_1) , ..., (R_N, B_N) , as illustrated in Figure C-6. The minimum start-up delay necessary to maintain this guarantee is $F_{min}(R) \div R$.

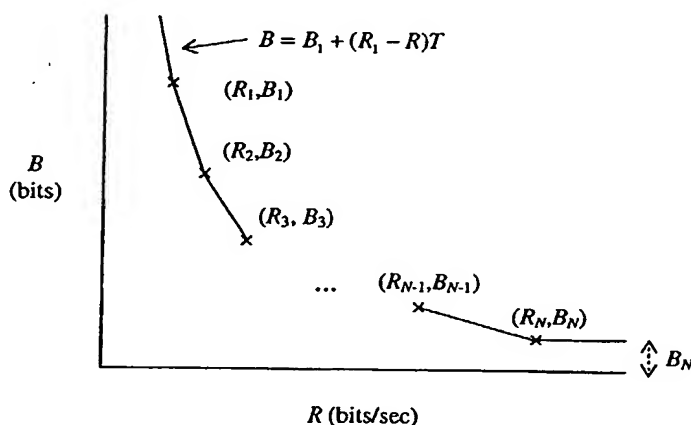


Figure C-6 – Further illustration of the leaky bucket concept

An HRD with buffer size B and initial decoder buffer fullness F with peak input rate R shall perform the tests $B \geq B_{min}(R)$ and $F \geq F_{min}(R)$, as defined above, for any conforming bitstream with LB parameters $(R_1, B_1, F_1), \dots, (R_N, B_N, F_N)$, and shall decode the bitstream provided that $B \geq B_{min}(R)$ and $F \geq F_{min}(R)$.

C.2.2.4 Encoder considerations

The encoder can create a bitstream that is contained by some given N leaky buckets, or it can simply compute N sets of leaky bucket parameters after the bitstream is generated, or a combination of these. In the former, the encoder enforces the N leaky bucket constraints during rate control. Conventional rate control algorithms enforce only a single leaky bucket constraint. A rate control algorithm that simultaneously enforces N leaky bucket constraints can be obtained by running a conventional rate control algorithm for each of the N leaky bucket constraints, and using as the current quantisation parameter (QP) the maximum of the QP's recommended by the N rate control algorithms.

Additional sets of leaky bucket parameters can always be computed after the fact (whether rate controlled or not), from the bitstream schedule for any given R_n , from the iteration specified in subclause C.2.2.2.

Annex D**Supplemental enhancement information**

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation | International Standard)

D.1 Introduction

This annex defines supplemental enhancement information that provides data constructs that are synchronous with the video data content. Each `sei_payload()` defines `PayloadType` and `PayloadSize` parameters. This annex defines supplemental enhancement information (SEI) that provides a data delivery mechanism construct that is delivered synchronous with the video data content. SEI assists in the processes related to decoding or display of video. SEI is not required for reconstructing the luma or chroma samples by a video decoder, and decoders are not required to process this information for conformance to this Recommendation | International Standard.

D.2 SEI payload syntax

sei_payload(PayloadType, PayloadSize) {	Category	Descriptor
if(PayloadType == 1)		
temporal_reference(PayloadSize)	7	
else if(PayloadType == 2)		
clock_timestamp(PayloadSize)	7	
else if(PayloadType == 3)		
panscan_rect(PayloadSize)	7	
else if(PayloadType == 4)		
buffering_period(PayloadSize)	7	
else if(PayloadType == 5)		
hrd_picture(PayloadSize)	7	
else if(PayloadType == 6)		
filler_payload(PayloadSize)	7	
else if(PayloadType == 7)		
user_data_registered_itu_t_t35(PayloadSize)	7	
else if(PayloadType == 8)		
user_data_unregistered(PayloadSize)	7	
else if(PayloadType == 9)		
random_access_point(PayloadSize)	7	
else if(PayloadType == 10)		
ref_pic_buffer_management_repetition(PayloadSize)	7	
else if(PayloadType == 11)		
spare_picture(PayloadSize)	7	
else if(PayloadType == 12)		
scene_information(PayloadSize)	7	
else if(PayloadType == 13)		
subseq_information(PayloadSize)	7	
else if(PayloadType == 14)		
subseq_layer_characteristics(PayloadSize)	7	
else if(PayloadType == 15)		
subseq_characteristics(PayloadSize)	7	
else		
reserved_sei_message(PayloadSize)	7	
if(!byte_aligned()) {		
bit_equal_to_one	7	f(1)
while(!byte_aligned())		
bit_equal_to_zero	7	f(1)
}		
}		

D.2.1 Temporal reference SEI message syntax

temporal_reference(PayloadSize) {	Category	Descriptor
progressive_scan	7	u(1)
bottom_field_flag /* zero if progressive_scan is 1 */	7	u(1)
six_reserved_one_bits	7	f(6)
temporal_ref_value	7	u(v)
}		

D.2.2 Clock timestamp SEI messag syntax

clock_timestamp(PayloadSize) {	Category	Descriptor
progressive_scan	7	u(1)
bottom_field_flag /* zero if progressive_scan is 1 */	7	u(1)
six_reserved_one_bits	7	f(6)
counting_type	7	u(5)
full_timestamp_flag	7	u(1)
discontinuity_flag	7	u(1)
count_dropped	7	u(1)
nframes	7	u(8)
if(full_timestamp_flag) {		
seconds_value /* 0,...,59 */	7	u(6)
minutes_value /* 0,...,59 */	7	u(6)
hours_value /* 0,...,23 */	7	u(5)
bit_count = 41		
} else {		
seconds_flag	7	u(1)
bit_count = 25		
if(seconds_flag) {		
seconds_value /* range 0,...,59 */	7	u(6)
minutes_flag	7	u(1)
bit_count += 7		
if(minutes_flag) {		
minutes_value /* 0,...,59 */	7	u(6)
hours_flag	7	u(1)
bit_count += 7		
if(hours_flag) {		
hours_value /* 0,...,23 */	7	u(5)
bit_count += 5		
}		
}		
}		
while(!byte_aligned()) {		
bit_equal_to_one	7	f(1)
bit_count++		
}		
if(PayloadSize-(bit_count>>3) > 0)		
time_offset	7	i(v)
}		

D.2.3 Pan-scan rectangle SEI message syntax

pan_scan_rect(PayloadSize) {	Category	Descriptor
pan_scan_rect_id	7	e(v)
pan_scan_rect_left_offset	7	e(v)
pan_scan_rect_right_offset	7	e(v)
pan_scan_rect_top_offset	7	e(v)
pan_scan_rect_bottom_offset	7	e(v)
}		

D.2.4 Buffering period SEI message syntax

buffering_period(PayloadSize) {	Category	Mnemonic
seq_parameter_set_id	7	ue(v)
if(nal_hrd_flag == 1) {		
for(k = 0; k <= pdb_count; k++)		
initial_pre_dec_removal_delay[k]	7	u(16)
}		
if(vcl_hrd_flag == 1) {		
for(k = 0; k <= pdb_count; k++)		
initial_pre_dec_removal_delay[k]	7	u(16)
}		
prev_buf_period_duration	7	ue(v)
}		

D.2.5 HRD picture SEI message syntax

hrd_picture(PayloadSize)	Category	Descriptor
pre_dec_removal_delay	7	ue(v)

D.2.6 Filler payload SEI message syntax

filler_payload(PayloadSize) {	Category	Descriptor
for(k = 0; k < PayloadSize; k++)		
filler_byte	7	f(8) = 0xFF
}		

D.2.7 User data registered by ITU-T Recommendation T.35 SEI message syntax

user_data_registered_itu_t_t35(PayloadSize) {	Category	Descriptor
itu_t_t35_country_code	7	b(8)
if(country_code != 0xFF)		
i = 1;		
else {		
itu_t_t35_country_code_extension_byte	7	b(8)
i = 2;		
}		
do {		
itu_t_t35_payload_byte	7	b(8)
i++		
} while(i < PayloadSize)		
}		

D.2.8 User data unregistered SEI message syntax

user_data_arbitrary(PayloadSize) {	Category	Descriptor
i = 0		
do {		
user_data_arbitrary_payload_byte	7	b(8)
i++		
} while(i < PayloadSize)		
}		

D.2.9 Random access point SEI message syntax

random_access_point(PayloadSize) {	Category	Descriptor
preroll_count	7	ue(v)
postroll_count	7	ue(v)
exact_match_flag	7	u(1)
broken_link_flag	7	u(1)
}		

D.2.10 Reference picture buffer management Repetition SEI message syntax

ref_pic_buffer_management_repetition(PayloadSize) {	Category	Descriptor
original_frame_num	7	u(v)
ref_pic_buffer_management()		
}		

D.2.11 Spare picture SEI message syntax

spare_picture(PayloadSize) {	Category	Descriptor
delta_frame_num	7	ue(v)
num_spare_pics_minus1	7	ue(v)
for(i = 0; i < num_spare_pics_minus1+1; i++) {		
delta_spare_frame_num	7	ue(v)
ref_area_indicator	7	ue(v)
if(ref_area_indicator == 1)		
for(j = 0; j < number_of_mbs_in_pic; j++)		
ref_mb_indicator	7	u(1)
else if(ref_area_indicator == 2) {		
MbCnt = 0		
do {		
zero_run_length	7	ue(v)
MbCnt = MbCnt + zero_run_length + 1		
} while(MbCnt <= MAX_MB_ADDRESS)		
}		
}		

D.2.12 Scene information SEI message syntax

scene_information(PayloadSize) {	Category	Descriptor
scene_id	7	u(8)
scene_transition_type	7	ue(v)
if(scene_transition_type > 3)		
second_scene_id	7	u(8)
}		

D.2.13 Sub-sequence information SEI message syntax

subseq_information(PayloadSize) {	Category	Descriptor
subseq_layer_num	7	ue(v)
subseq_id	7	ue(v)
last_picture_flag	7	u(1)
if(more_sei_payload_data())		
stored_frame_cnt	7	ue(v)
}		

D.2.14 Sub-sequence layer characteristics SEI message syntax

subseq_layer_characteristics(PayloadSize) {	Category	Descriptor
do {		
average_bit_rate	7	u(16)
average_frame_rate	7	u(16)
} while(more_sei_payload_data())		
}		

D.2.15 Sub-sequence characteristics SEI message syntax

subseq_characteristics(PayloadSize) {	Category	Descriptor
subseq_layer_num	7	ue(v)
subseq_id	7	ue(v)
duration_flag	7	u(1)
if (duration_flag)		
subseq_duration	7	u(32)
average_rate_flag	7	u(1)
if (average_rate_flag) {		
average_bit_rate	7	u(16)
average_frame_rate	7	u(16)
}		
num_referenced_subseqs	7	ue(v)
for (n = 0; n < num_referenced_subseqs; n++) {		
ref_subseq_layer_num	7	ue(v)
ref_subseq_id	7	ue(v)
}		
}		

D.2.16 Reserved SEI message syntax

reserved_sei_message(PayloadSize) {	Category	Descriptor
for(i=0; i<PayloadSize; i++)		
reserved_sei_message_payload_byte	7	b(8)
}		

D.3 SEI payload semantics**D.3.1 Temporal reference SEI message semantics**

progressive_scan: This parameter indicates whether the current picture has progressive or interlaced scan timing.

bottom_field_flag: When progressive_scan is 0, this parameter indicates whether the temporal reference is for the top (0) or bottom (1) field. Shall be 0 if progressive_scan is 1.

six_reserved_one_bits: Reserved for future backward-compatible use by ITU-T | ISO/IEC. Shall be equal to the binary string '111111' unless and until specified otherwise by ITU-T | ISO/IEC. A decoder conforming to this Recommendation | International Standard shall ignore the value of these bits.

temporal_ref_value: This parameter indicates a number of clock ticks as a multiplier of num_units_in_tick for the current time_scale. It is used for conveying local relative timing information.

The number of bytes used by temporal_ref_value shall remain constant for the video stream and shall be equal to PayloadSize – 1 bytes. For a temporal_ref_value encoded using n bytes, the temporal_reference contains the remainder of a clock tick counter modulo 256^n .

D.3.2 Clock timestamp SEI message semantics

The contents of the clock timestamp SEI message specify a time_offset which indicates the display or capture time computed as

$$\text{equivalent_timestamp} = ((HH * 60 + MM) * 60 + SS) * \text{time_scale} + NF * \text{num_units_in_tick} + TO, \quad (\text{D-1})$$

in units of ticks of a clock with clock frequency equal to time_scale Hz.

progressive_scan: This parameter indicates whether the current picture is in progressive or interlaced scan format.

bottom_field_flag: When progressive_scan is 0, this parameter indicates whether the temporal reference is for the top (0) or bottom (1) field. Shall be 0 if progressive_scan is 1.

six_reserved_one_bits: Reserved for future use by ITU-T | ISO/IEC. Shall be equal to the binary string '111111'. A decoder conforming to this Recommendation | International Standard shall ignore the value of these bits.

counting_type: A 5-bit parameter that specifies the method of dropping values of the nframes parameter as defined in Table D-1.

Table D-1 – Definition of counting_type values

Value (binary)	Interpretation
00000	no dropping of nframes count values and no use of time_offset
00001	no dropping of nframes count values
00010	dropping of individual zero values of nframes count
00011	dropping of individual max_pps values of npictures count
00100	dropping of the two lowest (value 0 and 1) nframes counts when seconds_value is zero and minutes_value is not an integer multiple of ten
00101	dropping of unspecified individual nframes count values
00110	dropping of unspecified numbers of unspecified nframes count values
00111 - 11111	reserved

full_timestamp_flag indicates whether the nframes parameter is followed by seconds_value or seconds_flag.

discontinuity_flag indicates whether the time difference between the current value of equivalent_timestamp and the value of equivalent_timestamp computed from the last previously-transmitted clock timestamp can be interpreted as a true time difference. A value of 0 indicates that the difference represents a true time difference.

count_dropped indicates the skipping of a count using the counting method specified by counting_type.

nframes indicates the value of NF used to compute the equivalent_timestamp. Shall be less than

$$\text{max_fps} = \text{Ceil}(\text{time_scale} \div \text{num_units_in_tick}) \quad (\text{D-2})$$

If counting_type is '00010' and count_dropped is 1, nframes shall be 1 and the value of nframes for the last previous picture in display order shall not be equal to 0 unless discontinuity_flag is equal to 1.

If counting_type is '00011' and count_dropped is 1, nframes shall be 0 and the value of nframes for the last previous picture in display order shall not be equal to max_fps – 1 unless discontinuity_flag is equal to 1.

If `counting_type` is '00100' and `count_dropped` is 1, `nframes` shall be 2 and the indicated value of `SS` shall be zero and the indicated value of `MM` shall not be an integer multiple of ten and `nframes` for the last previous picture in display order shall not be equal to 0 or 1 unless `discontinuity_flag` is equal to 1.

If `counting_type` is '00101' or '110' and `count_dropped` is 1, `nframes` shall not be equal to one plus the value of `nframes` for the last previous picture in display order modulo `max_fps` unless `discontinuity_flag` is equal to 1.

`seconds_flag` indicates whether `seconds_value` is present when `full_timestamp_flag` is 0.

`seconds_value` indicates the value of `SS` used to compute the equivalent `timestamp`. Shall not exceed 59. If not present, the last previously-transmitted `seconds_value` shall be used as `SS` to compute the equivalent `timestamp`.

`minutes_flag` indicates whether `seconds_value` is present when `full_timestamp_flag` is 0 and `seconds_flag` is 1.

`minutes_value` indicates the value of `MM` used to compute the equivalent `timestamp`. Shall not exceed 59. If not present, the last previously-transmitted `minutes_value` shall be used as `MM` to compute the equivalent `timestamp`.

`hours_flag` indicates whether `seconds_value` is present when `full_timestamp_flag` is 0 and `seconds_flag` is 1 and `minutes_flag` is 1.

`hours_value` indicates the value of `HH` used to compute the equivalent `timestamp`. Shall not exceed 23. If not present, the last previously-transmitted `hours_value` shall be used as `HH` to compute the equivalent `timestamp`.

`bit_equal_to_one` is a single bit which shall be equal to 1.

`time_offset` indicates the value of `TO` used to compute the equivalent `timestamp`. The number of bytes used to represent `time_offset` shall be equal to $\text{PayloadSize} - (\text{bit_count} \gg 3)$, where `bit_count` is computed as specified in subclause D.2.2. If `time_offset` is not present, the value 0 shall be used as `TO` to compute the equivalent `timestamp`.

D.3.3 Pan-scan rectangle SEI message semantics

The pan-scan rectangle SEI message parameters define the coordinates of a rectangle relative to the cropping rectangle of the picture parameter set. Each coordinate of this rectangle is defined in units of $1/16^{\text{th}}$ sample spacing relative to the luma sampling grid.

`pan_scan_rect_id` contains an identifying number which may be used as specified externally to identify the purpose of the pan-scan rectangle (for example, to identify the rectangle as the area to be shown on a particular display device or as the area that contains a particular actor in the scene).

`pan_scan_rect_left_offset`, `pan_scan_rect_right_offset`, `pan_scan_rect_top_offset`, and `pan_scan_rect_bottom_offset` specify, as signed integer quantities in units of $1/16^{\text{th}}$ sample spacing relative to the luma sampling grid, the location of the pan-scan rectangle.

The pan-scan rectangle is defined, in units of $1/16^{\text{th}}$ sample spacing relative to the luma sampling grid, as the area of the rectangle with horizontal coordinates from $16 * \text{cropping_rect_left} + \text{pan_scan_rect_left_offset}$ to $16 * [16 * (\text{pic_width_in_mbs_minus1} + 1) - \text{cropping_rect_right}] + \text{pan_scan_rect_right_offset} - 1$ and with vertical coordinates from $16 * \text{cropping_rect_top} + \text{pan_scan_rect_top_offset}$ to $16 * [16 * (\text{pic_height_in_mbs_minus1} + 1) - \text{cropping_rect_bottom}] + \text{pan_scan_rect_bottom_offset} - 1$, inclusive. If this rectangular area includes samples outside of the cropping rectangle, the region outside of the cropping rectangle may be filled with synthesized content (such as black video content or neutral grey video content) for display.

D.3.4 Buffering period SEI message semantics

A Buffering Period is defined as the set of pictures between two instances of the Buffering Period SEI message. The `seq_parameter_set_id` indicates the sequence parameter set that contains the sequence level HRD attributes.

`seq_parameter_set_id` indicates the sequence parameter set that contains the sequence level HRD attributes.

initial_pre_dec_removal_delay: This syntax element represents the delay between the time of arrival in the pre-decoder buffer of the first bit of the coded data associated with the first picture following the Buffering Period SEI message (including all NAL data in the case that the HRD pertains to the NAL) and the time of removal of the coded data associated with the picture from the pre-decoder buffer. It is in units of a 90 kHz clock. The `initial_pre_dec_removal_delay` syntax element is used in conjunction with the pre-decoder buffers as specified in Annex C. A value of zero is forbidden.

prev_buf_period_duration: This syntax element represents the duration of the subset of the video sequence contained in the previous Buffering Period. The interpretation of the syntax element is as a number of clock ticks (see Annex D). The `prev_buf_period_duration` syntax element is used in conjunction with the pre-decoder buffers as specified in Annex C. A value of zero is forbidden.

D.3.5 HRD picture SEI message semantics

pr_dec_removal_delay: This syntax element indicates how many clock ticks (see Annex C) to wait after removal from the HRD pre-decoder buffer of the previous picture before removing from the buffer the picture data immediately following the SEI message which contains the element. This value is also used to calculate an earliest possible time of arrival of picture data into the pre-decoder buffer, as defined in Annex C.

D.3.6 Fill r payload SEI message semantics

This message contains a series of PayloadSize bytes of value 0xFF, which can be discarded.

filler_byte shall be a byte having the value 0xFF.

D.3.7 User data registered by ITU-T Recommendation T.35 SEI message semantics

This message contains registered user data as specified by ITU-T Recommendation T.35.

itu_t_t35_country_code shall be a byte having a value specified as a country code by ITU-T Recommendation T.35.

itu_t_t35_country_code_extension_byte shall be a byte having a value specified as an extended country code by ITU-T Recommendation T.35.

itu_t_t35_payload_byte shall be a byte containing user data registered as specified by ITU-T Recommendation T.35.

D.3.8 User data arbitrary SEI message semantics

This message contains arbitrary user data, the contents of which are not specified by this Recommendation | International Standard.

user_data_arbitrary_payload_byte shall be a byte having a value not specified by this Recommendation | International Standard.

NOTE - Users of this Recommendation | International Standard should exercise care in the use of the user data arbitrary SEI message to avoid the carriage of data content in a form likely to conflict with the data content format of other users (e.g., avoiding conflict by using a fixed multi-byte prefix identifier within the payload content).

D.3.9 Random access point SEI message semantics

The random access point SEI message indicates the recovery point of decoder output after starting decoding from a random access entry point. All decoded pictures at or subsequent to the recovery point in output order are indicated to be correct or approximately correct in content. Decoded pictures produced by starting the decoding process at the entry point may not be correct in content until the indicated recovery point, and the decoding process starting at the entry point and ending at the recovery point may contain references to pictures not available in the multi-picture buffer.

The entry point is indicated as a pre-roll count relative to the position of the SEI message in units of coded frame numbers prior to the frame number of the current picture. The recovery point is indicated as a post-roll count in units of coded pictures subsequent to the current picture at the position of the SEI message.

preroll_count indicates the entry point for the decoding process. Decoding should have started at or prior to the stored picture having the frame number equal to the frame number of the next slice minus the preroll_count in modulo MAX_FN arithmetic.

postroll_count indicates the recovery point of output. All decoded pictures in output order are indicated to be correct or approximately correct in content after the stored picture having the frame number equal to the frame number of the next slice incremented by postroll_count in modulo MAX_FN arithmetic.

exact_match_flag indicates whether decoded pictures at and subsequent to the recovery point in output order obtained by starting the decoding process at the specified entry point shall be an exact match to the pictures that would be produced by a decoder starting at the last prior IDR point in the NAL unit stream. The value 0 indicates that the match may not be exact and the value 1 indicates that the match shall be exact.

If decoding starts from an entry point indicated in a random access point SEI message, all references to unavailable stored pictures shall be inferred as references to sample values given by Y=Cb=Cr=128 (mid-level grey) for purposes of determining the conformance of the value of exact_match_flag.

broken_link_flag indicates the presence or absence of a splicing point in the NAL unit stream at the location of the random access point SEI message. If broken_link_flag is equal to 1, pictures produced by starting the decoding process at the last previous IDR point may contain undesirable visual artifacts due to splicing operations and should not be

displayed until the indicated random access recovery point in output order. If `broken_link_flag` is equal to 0, no indication is given regarding any potential presence of visual artifacts.

If a sub-sequence information SEI message is transmitted in conjunction with a random access point SEI message in which `broken_link_flag` is equal to 1 and if `subseq_layer_num` is 0, `subseq_id` should be different from the latest `subseq_id` for `subseq_layer_num` equal to 0 that was decoded prior to the entry point. If `broken_link_flag` is equal to 0, the `subseq_id` in sub-sequence layer 0 should remain unchanged.

A buffering period SEI message should be transmitted at the location of the random access entry point indicated in the random access point SEI message in order to establish initialisation of the HRD buffer model.

D.3.10 Reference picture buffer management Repetition SEI message semantics

The Reference picture buffer management repetition SEI message is used to repeat memory management control operation commands that were located earlier in decoding order.

`original_frame_num` identifies the picture where the repeated memory management control operation originally occurred.

`ref_pic_buffer_managment()` shall contain a copy of the reference picture buffer management syntax elements of the picture whose `frame_num` was `original_frame_num`.

D.3.11 Spare picture SEI message semantics

The spare picture SEI message indicates that certain macroblocks, called spare decoded macroblocks, in one or more decoded stored pictures resemble the co-located macroblocks in a certain decoded picture, called the target picture, so much that any of these spare decoded macroblocks can be used to replace a co-located incorrect decoded macroblock in the target picture in the multi-frame buffer and in decoder output. Decoded pictures that contain spare macroblocks are called spare pictures.

The picture that contains the next slice or data partition in decoding order is herein referred to as the current picture. The `frame_num` of the current picture is herein denoted as `CurrFrameNum`.

`delta_frame_num` identifies the target picture whose spare pictures and macroblocks are specified later in the message. Let `TargetFrameNum` be the `frame_num` of the target picture, and the target picture is the stored picture having the `TargetFrameNum`. `TargetFrameNum` is calculated as follows

$$\begin{aligned} \text{TargetFrameNum} &= \text{CurrFrameNum} - \text{delta_frame_num} \\ \text{if(TargetFrameNum} &< 0 \text{)} \\ \text{TargetFrameNum} &= \text{MAX_FN} + \text{TargetFrameNum} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{D-3})$$

`num_spare_pics_minus1` specifies the number of pictures which contain spare picture or macroblocks for the target picture.

`delta_spare_frame_num` specifies to which spare picture the following spare picture information in the current loop count belongs. For the first spare picture of the message, `CandidateSpareFrameNum` is equal to `TargetFrameNum - 1` if `TargetFrameNum` is greater than 0 and `MAX_FN - 1` otherwise. For later spare pictures, `CandidateSpareFrameNum` is the `SpareFrameNum` of the previous loop round minus 1 if `SpareFrameNum` is greater than 0 and `MAX_FN - 1` otherwise. For each loop round, `SpareFrameNum` is calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{SpareFrameNum} &= \text{CandidateSpareFrameNum} - \text{delta_spare_frame_num} \\ \text{if(SpareFrameNum} &< 0 \text{)} \\ \text{SpareFrameNum} &= \text{MAX_FN} + \text{SpareFrameNum} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{D-4})$$

`ref_area_indicator` specifies how the locations of spare macroblocks are coded. `ref_area_indicator` 0 indicates that all macroblocks of the spare picture are spare macroblocks. `ref_area_indicator` 1 indicates an uncompressed spare macroblock map. `ref_area_indicator` 2 indicates a compressed spare macroblock map. A spare macroblock map consists of flags for each macroblock location of a picture. A flag shall be 0 if the macroblock location in the spare picture is a spare macroblock and 1 otherwise.

If `ref_area_indicator` is 1, there is a `ref_mb_indicator` for each macroblock address of the spare macroblock map in raster scan order. `ref_mb_indicator` 0 indicates that the macroblock is a spare macroblock, and `ref_mb_indicator` 1 indicates that the macroblock is not a spare macroblock.

If `ref_area_indicator` is 2, a spare macroblock map between a spare picture and the target picture is compressed. The coded macroblock map for `loop_count` equal to 0 is the spare macroblock map between the target picture and the first spare picture. A coded macroblock map for `loop_count` greater than 0 is generated by applying an exclusive or operation

between the previous spare macroblock map and the current spare macroblock map. The coded macroblock map is scanned in counter-clockwise box-out order as specified in subclause 8.3.4.1. The number of consecutive zeros in the scanning order is indicated in `zero_run_length`.

D.3.12 Scene information SEI message semantics

A scene is herein defined as a set of pictures in decoding order captured with one camera. The scene information SEI message is used to label scenes with identifiers. The message concerns the next slice or data partition in decoding order.

scene_id: Pictures in a scene shall share the same value of `scene_id`. Consecutive scenes in decoding order should not have the same value of `scene_id`. If the next slice or data partition in decoding order belongs to a picture that includes contents from two scenes, `scene_id` is the scene identifier of the former scene in decoding order.

The following values of `scene_transition_type` are valid:

Table D-2 – Scene transition types.

Value	Description
0	No transition
1	Fade-out
2	Fade-in
3	Unspecified transition from or to constant color
4	Dissolve
5	Wipe
6	Unspecified mixture of two scenes
Other values	Reserved

If `scene_transition_type` is greater than 3, the next slice or data partition in decoding order belongs to a picture that includes contents from two scenes.

second_scene_id is present if the next slice or data partition in decoding order belongs to a picture that includes contents from two scenes. `second_scene_id` is the scene identifier of the latter scene in decoding order.

D.3.13 Sub-sequence information SEI message semantics

The sub-sequence information SEI message is used to indicate the position of a picture in data dependency hierarchy that consists of sub-sequence layers and sub-sequences.

A sub-sequence layer contains a subset of the coded pictures in a coded data stream. Sub-sequence layers are numbered with non-negative integers. A layer having a larger layer number is a higher layer than a layer having a smaller layer number. The layers are ordered hierarchically based on their dependency on each other so that a layer does not depend on any higher layer and may depend on lower layers. In other words, layer 0 is independently decodable, pictures in layer 1 may be predicted from layer 0, pictures in layer 2 may be predicted from layers 0 and 1, etc. The subjective quality increases along with the number of decoded layers.

A sub-sequence is a set of coded pictures within a sub-sequence layer. A picture shall reside in one sub-sequence layer and in one sub-sequence only. A sub-sequence shall not depend on any other sub-sequence in the same or in a higher sub-sequence layer. A sub-sequence in layer 0 can be decoded independently of any other sub-sequences and previous long-term reference pictures.

The sub-sequence information SEI message concerns the next slice or data partition in decoding order. The picture which the next slice or data partition belongs to is herein referred to as the target picture.

subseq_layer_num indicates the sub-sequence layer number of the target picture.

subseq_id identifies the sub-sequence within a layer. Consecutive sub-sequences within a particular layer in decoding order shall have a different `subseq_id` from each other.

last_picture_flag equal to 1 signals that the target picture is the last picture of the sub-sequence (in decoding order).

stored_frame_cnt is 0 for the first stored picture of the sub-sequence. For each coded frame belonging to the sub-sequence in decoding order, `stored_frame_cnt` shall be incremented by 1, in modulo `MAX_FN` operation, relative to the previous stored frame that belongs to the sub-sequence.

D.3.14 Sub-sequence layer characteristics SEI message semantics

The sub-sequence layer characteristics SEI message indicates the characteristics of sub-sequence layers.

A pair of average bit rate and average frame rate characterizes each sub-sequence layer. The first pair of average bit rate and average frame rate signals the characteristics of sub-sequence layer 0. The second pair, if present, signals the characteristics of sub-sequence layers 0 and 1 jointly. Each pair in decoding order signals the characteristics for a range of sub-sequence layers from layer number 0 to the layer number that is incremented by one from the previous upper limit of layer numbers. The values are in effect from the point they are decoded until an update of the values is decoded.

average_bit_rate gives the average bit rate in units of 1000 bits per second. All NAL units in the range of sub-sequence layers specified above are taken into account in the calculation. The average bit rate is calculated according to the decoding time of the NAL units. Value zero means an undefined bit rate.

average_frame_rate gives the average frame rate in frames/(256 seconds) of the sub-sequence layer. Value zero indicates an undefined frame rate.

D.3.15 Sub-sequence characteristics SEI message semantics

The sub-sequence characteristics SEI message indicates the characteristics of a sub-sequence. It also indicates inter prediction dependencies between sub-sequences.

This message applies to the next sub-sequence in decoding order having the indicated **subseq_layer_num** and **subseq_id**. This sub-sequence is herein called the target sub-sequence.

duration_flag equal to zero indicates that the duration of the target sub-sequence is not specified.

subseq_duration indicates the duration of the target sub-sequence in clock ticks of a 90-kHz clock.

average_rate_flag equal to zero indicates that the average bit rate and the average frame rate of the target sub-sequence are unspecified.

average_bit_rate gives the average bit rate in (1000 bits)/second of the target sub-sequence. All NAL units of the target sub-sequence are taken into account in the calculation. The average bit rate is calculated according to the decoding time of the NAL units.

average_frame_rate gives the average frame rate in frames/(256 seconds) of the current sub-sequence.

num_referenced_subseqs gives the number of sub-sequences which contain pictures that are used as reference pictures for inter prediction in the pictures of the target sub-sequence.

ref_subseq_layer_num and **ref_subseq_id** identify a sub-sequence that contains pictures that are used as reference pictures for inter prediction in the pictures of the target sub-sequence.

D.3.16 Reserved SEI message semantics

This message consists of data reserved for future backward-compatible use by ITU-T | ISO/IEC. Encoders conforming to this Recommendation | International Standard shall not send reserved SEI messages until and unless the use of such messages has been specified by ITU-T | ISO/IEC. Decoders conforming to this Recommendation | International Standard that encounter reserved SEI messages shall discard their content without effect on the decoding process, except as specified in future Recommendations | International Standards defined by ITU-T | ISO/IEC.

reserved_sei_message_payload_byte is a byte reserved for future use by ITU-T | ISO/IEC.

Annex E

Video usability information

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation | International Standard)

E.1 Introduction

This Annex specifies those parts of the sequence parameter set and the picture parameter set that are not required for determining the decoded values of samples. The parameters specified in this annex can be used to facilitate the use of the decoded pictures or facilitate the resource allocation of a decoder by restricting certain video parameters beyond those limits specified by Annex A. Decoders are not required to process VUI sequence parameters for conformance to this Recommendation | International Standard.

For each of the parameters of this Annex, default values are defined in the semantics subclause. The syntax includes flags that allow avoiding the signalling of groups of parameters. If a specific group of parameters is not coded, the default values for the parameters become effective.

E.2 VUI syntax

E.2.1 VUI sequence parameters syntax

vui_seq_parameters() {	Category	Descriptor
aspect_ratio_info_flag	0	u(1)
if(aspect_ratio_info_flag) {		
aspect_ratio_info	0	b(8)
if(aspect_ratio_info == "Extended SAR") {		
sar_width	0	u(8)
sar_height	0	u(8)
}		
}		
video_signal_type_flag	0	u(1)
if(video_signal_type_flag) {		
video_format	0	u(3)
video_range_flag	0	u(1)
colour_description_flag	0	u(1)
if(colour_description_flag) {		
colour_primaries	0	b(8)
transfer_characteristics	0	b(8)
matrix_coefficients	0	b(8)
}		
}		
chroma_location_flag	0	u(1)
if(chroma_location_flag) {		
chroma_location_frame	0	e(v)
chroma_location_field	0	e(v)
}		
timing_information_flag		
if(timing_information_flag) {		
num_units_in_tick	0	u(32)
time_scale	0	u(32)
fixed_frame_rate_flag	0	u(1)
}		
nal_hrd_flag	0	u(1)
if(nal_hrd_flag == 1)		
hrd_parameters()		
vcl_hrd_flag	0	u(1)
if(vcl_hrd_flag == 1)		
hrd_parameters()		
if((nal_hrd_flag == 1 (vcl_hrd_flag == 1)) {		
low_delay_hrd	0	u(1)
removal_time_tolerance	0	ue(v)
}		
bitstream_restriction_flag	0	u(1)
if(bitstream_restriction_flag) {	0	u(1)
motion_vectors_over_pic_boundaries_flag	0	u(1)
minimum_compression_per_pic_reversed	0	e(v)

minimum_compression_per_macroblock_reversed	0	e(v)
log2_maximum_mv_length_vertical	0	e(v)
log2_maximum_mv_length_horizontal	0	e(v)
}		
}		

E.2.2 HRD parameters syntax

hrd_parameters() { /* coded picture buffer parameters */		
pdb_cnt	0	ue(v)
bit_rate_scale	0	u(4)
coded_pic_buffer_size_scale	0	u(4)
for(k=1; k<=pdb_cnt; k++) {		
bit_rate_value[k]	0	ue(v)
coded_pic_buffer_size_value[k]	0	ue(v)
vbr_cbr_flag[k]	0	u(1)
}		
}		

E.2.3 VUI picture parameters syntax

vui_pic_parameters() {	Category	Descriptor
frame_cropping_flag	1	ue(v)
if(frame_cropping_flag) {		
frame_cropping_rect_left_offset	1	ue(v)
frame_cropping_rect_right_offset	1	ue(v)
frame_cropping_rect_top_offset	1	ue(v)
frame_cropping_rect_bottom_offset	1	ue(v)
}		
}		

E.3 VUI semantics

E.3.1 VUI sequence parameters semantics

aspect_ratio_info_flag: A flag that, when 1, signals the presence of the aspect_ratio_info. If the flag is 0, then the following default values shall apply: aspect_ratio_info = 0.

aspect_ratio_info is an eight-bit integer which defines the value of sample aspect ratio. Table E-1 shows the meaning of the code. If aspect_ratio_info indicates Extended SAR, sample_aspect_ratio is represented by sar_width and sar_height. The sar_width and sar_height shall be relatively prime. If aspect_ratio_info is zero or if either sar_width or sar_height are zero, the sample aspect ratio shall be considered unspecified or specified externally.

Table E-1 – Meaning of sample aspect ratio

aspect_ratio_info	Sample aspect ratio
0000 0000	Undefined or specified externally
0000 0001	1:1 ("Square")
0000 0010	12:11 (625-type for 4:3 picture)
0000 0011	10:11 (525-type for 4:3 picture)
0000 0100	16:11 (625-type stretched for 16:9 picture)
0000 0101	40:33 (525-type stretched for 16:9 picture)

0000 0110	24:11 (Half-wide 4:3 for 625)
0000 0111	20:11 (Half-wide 4:3 for 525)
0000 1000	32:11 (Half-wide 16:9 for 625)
0000 1001	80:33 (Half-wide 16:9 for 525)
0000 1010	18:11 (2/3-wide 4:3 for 625)
0000 1011	15:11 (2/3-wide 4:3 for 525)
0000 1100	24:11 (2/3-wide 16:9 for 625)
0000 1101	20:11 (2/3-wide 16:9 for 525)
0000 1110	16:11 (3/4-wide 4:3 for 625)
0000 1111	40:33 (3/4-wide 4:3 for 525)
0001 0000	64:33 (3/4-wide 16:9 for 625)
0001 0001	160:99 (3/4-wide 16:9 for 525)
0001 0010 to 1111 1110	Reserved
1111 1111	Extended SAR

sar_width is an 8-bit unsigned integer which indicates the horizontal size of sample aspect ratio. A zero value is forbidden.

sar_height is an 8-bit unsigned integer which indicates the vertical size of sample aspect ratio. A zero value is forbidden.

video_signal_type_flag: A flag that, when 1, signals the presence of video signal information. If video_signal_type_flag is 0, then the following default values shall apply: video_format = '101', video_range = 0, colour_description = 0.

video_format: This is a three bit integer indicating the representation of the pictures before being coded in accordance with this Recommendation | International Standard. Its meaning is defined in Table E-2. If the video_signal_type() is not present in the bitstream then the video format may be assumed to be "Unspecified video format".

Table E-2 – Meaning of video_format

video_format	Meaning
000	Component
001	PAL
010	NTSC
011	SECAM
100	MAC
101	Unspecified video format
110	Reserved
111	Reserved

video_range_flag indicates the nominal black level and range of the luminance and chrominance signals as derived from E'Y, E'PB, and E'PR analogue component signals as follows:

If video_range_flag=0:

$$Y = \text{round}(219 * E'Y + 16)$$

$$Cb = \text{round}(224 * E'PB + 128)$$

$$Cr = \text{round}(224 * E'PR + 128)$$

If video_range_flag=1:

$$Y = \text{round}(255 * E'Y)$$

$$Cb = \text{round}(255 * E'PB + 128)$$

$$Cr = \text{round}(255 * E'PR + 128)$$

If video_signal_type_flag is zero, video_range shall be inferred to have value 0 (a nominal range of Y from 16 to 235).

colour_description_flag which if set to '1' indicates the presence of colour primaries, transfer_characteristics and matrix_coefficients in the bitstream.

colour_primaries: This 8-bit integer describes the chromaticity coordinates of the source primaries, and is defined in Table E-3.

Table E-3 – Colour Primaries

Value	Primaries
0	Reserved
1	ITU-R Recommendation BT.709 primary x y green 0,300 0,600 blue 0,150 0,060 red 0,640 0,330 white D65 0,3127 0,3290
2	Unspecified video Image characteristics are unknown.
3	Reserved
4	ITU-R Recommendation BT.470-2 System M primary x y green 0,21 0,71 blue 0,14 0,08 red 0,67 0,33 white C 0,310 0,316
5	ITU-R Recommendation BT.470-2 System B, G primary x y green 0,29 0,60 blue 0,15 0,06 red 0,64 0,33 white D65 0,3127 0,3290
6	SMPTE 170M primary x y green 0,310 0,595 blue 0,155 0,070 red 0,630 0,340 white D65 0,3127 0,3290
7	SMPTE 240M (1987) primary x y green 0,310 0,595 blue 0,155 0,070 red 0,630 0,340 white D65 0,3127 0,3290
8	Generic film (colour filters using Illuminant C) primary x y green 0,243 0,692 (Wratten 58) blue 0,145 0,049 (Wratten 47) red 0,681 0,319 (Wratten 25)
9-255	Reserved

If video_signal_type_flag is zero or colour_description is zero, the chromaticity is unspecified or specified externally.

transfer_characteristics: This 8-bit integer describes the opto-electronic transfer characteristic of the source picture, and is defined in Table E-4.

Table E-4 – Transfer Characteristics

Value	Transfer Characteristic
0	Reserved
1	ITU-R Recommendation BT.709 $V = 1,099 L_c^{0,45} - 0,099$ for $1 \geq L_c \geq 0,018$ $V = 4,500 L_c$ for $0,018 > L_c \geq 0$
2	Unspecified video Image characteristics are unknown.
3	Reserved
4	ITU-R Recommendation BT.470-2 System M Assumed display gamma 2,2
5	ITU-R Recommendation BT.470-2 System B, G Assumed display gamma 2,8
6	SMPTE 170M $V = 1,099 L_c^{0,45} - 0,099$ for $1 \geq L_c \geq 0,018$ $V = 4,500 L_c$ for $0,018 > L_c \geq 0$
7	SMPTE 240M (1987) $V = 1,1115 L_c^{0,45} - 0,1115$ for $L_c \geq 0,0228$ $V = 4,0 L_c$ for $0,0228 > L_c$
8	Linear transfer characteristics i.e. $V = L_c$
9	Logarithmic transfer characteristic (100:1 range) $V = 1,0 - \log_{10}(L_c)/2$ for $1 = L_c = 0.01$ $V = 0.0$ for $0.01 > L_c$
10	Logarithmic transfer characteristic (316.22777:1 range) $V = 1,0 - \log_{10}(L_c)/2.5$ for $1 = L_c = 0.0031622777$ $V = 0.0$ for $0.0031622777 > L_c$
11-255	Reserved

If video_signal_type_flag is zero or colour_description is zero, the transfer characteristics are unspecified or are specified externally.

matrix_coefficients: This 8-bit integer describes the matrix coefficients used in deriving luminance and chrominance signals from the green, blue, and red primaries, as specified in Table E-5.

Using this table:

E'Y is analogue with values between 0 and 1
E'R, E'G, and E'B are analogue with values between 0 and 1
E'PB and E'PR are analogue between the values -0,5 and 0,5
White is defined as E'R = E'G = E'B = 1
White equivalently given by E'Y = 1, E'PB = 0, E'PR = 0
 $E'Y = K_R * E'R + (1 - K_R - K_B) * E'G + K_B * E'B$

$$E'_{PB} = 0.5 (E'_R - E'_Y) \div (1 - K_R)$$

$$E'_{PB} = 0.5 (E'_B - E'_Y) \div (1 - K_B)$$

Table E-5 – Matrix Coefficients

Value	Matrix
0	Reserved
1	ITU-R Recommendation BT.709 $K_G = 0,7152$; $K_R = 0,2126$
2	Unspecified video Image characteristics are unknown.
3	Reserved
4	FCC $K_G = 0,59$; $K_R = 0,30$
5	ITU-R Recommendation BT.470-2 System B, G: $K_G = 0,587$; $K_R = 0,299$
6	SMPTE 170M $K_G = 0,587$; $K_R = 0,299$
7	SMPTE 240M (1987) $K_G = 0,701$; $K_R = 0,212$
8-255	Reserved

If video_signal_type_flag is zero or colour_description is zero, the matrix coefficients are assumed to be undefined or specified externally.

chroma_location_flag: A flag that, when 1, signals the presence of the chroma location information. If the flag is 0, then the following default values shall apply: chroma_location_frame = 0, chroma_location_field = 0.

chroma_location_frame specifies the 4:2:0 sampling structure according to Table E-6 and Figure E-1.

Table E-6 – Chroma Sampling Structure Frame

Value	Sampling Structure
0	undefined
1	Frame according to Figure E-1 Chroma Sample Mode 1
2	Frame according to Figure E-1 Chroma Sample Mode 2
3	Frame according to Figure E-1 Chroma Sample Mode 3

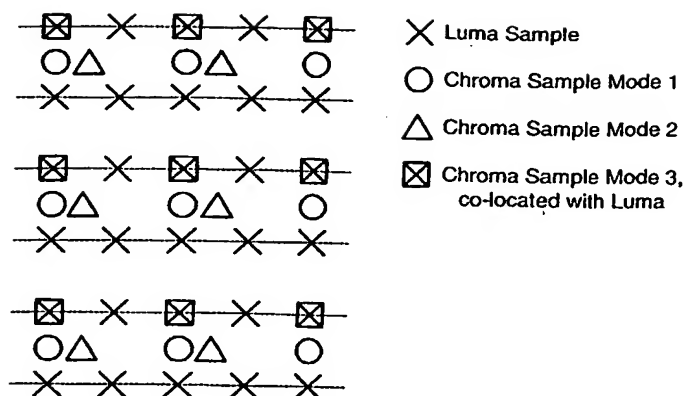


Figure E-1 – Luma and chroma sample types

chroma_location_field specifies the 4:2:0 sampling structure according to table E-7 and Figure E-2.

Table E-7 – Chroma Sampling Structure Frame

Value	Sampling Structure
0	undefined
1	Frame according to Figure E-2 Chroma Sample Mode 1
2	Frame according to Figure E-2 Chroma Sample Mode 2
3	Frame according to Figure E-2 Chroma Sample Mode 3

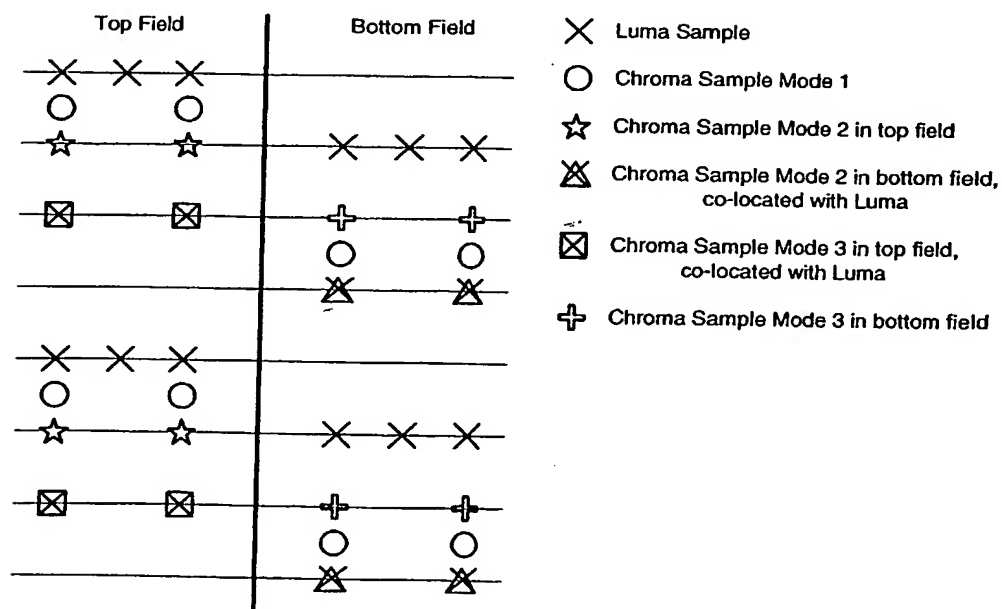


Figure E-2 – Luma and chroma association

timing_information_flag: A flag that, when 1, signals the presence of time unit information. If timing_information_flag is set to 0, then the following default values shall apply: num_units_in_tick = 0, time_scale = 0, fixed_frame_rate = 0.

num_units_in_tick is the number of time units of a clock operating at the frequency time_scale Hz that corresponds to one increment of a clock tick counter. A clock tick is the minimum interval of time that can be represented in the coded data. For example, if the clock frequency of a video signal is (30 000) + 1001 Hz, time_scale may be 30 000 and num_units_in_tick may be 1001. If num_units_in_tick is 0, the duration of the clock tick is unspecified.

time_scale is the number of time units which pass in one second. For example, a time coordinate system that measures time using a 27 MHz clock has a time_scale of 27 000 000. If time_scale is 0, the duration of the clock tick specified above is unspecified.

fixed_frame_rate_flag: A bit that, if equal to 1, indicates that the temporal distance between the HRD output times of any two consecutive frames or fields in output order as defined in Annex C is a constant. If equal to 0, the temporal distances between HRD output times of consecutive frames or fields in output order as defined in Annex C may not be constant.

nal_hrd_flag: If nal_hrd_flag = '1', the multiplexed NAL and VCL stream complies with a hypothetical reference decoder (HRD) as specified in Annex C. In this case, the HRD parameters follow the nal_hrd_flag in the sequence parameter set syntax. If nal_hrd_flag = '0', the multiplexed NAL and VCL stream is not guaranteed to comply with an HRD. No default values are specified.

NOTE - If nal_hrd_flag = 0 the maximum buffer sizes and bit rates specified in Annex A apply.

vcl_hrd_flag: If vcl_hrd_flag = '1', the VCL bitstream complies with a hypothetical reference decoder (HRD) as specified in Annex C. In this case, the HRD parameters follow the vcl_hrd_flag in the sequence parameter set syntax. If vcl_hrd_flag = '0', the VCL bitstream is not guaranteed to comply with an HRD.

NOTE - If vcl_hrd_flag = 0 the maximum buffer sizes and bit rates specified in Annex A apply.

removal_time_tolerance: This syntax element indicates the number of clock ticks (see Annex C) of deviation allowed between the pre-decoder buffer removal times (see subclauses C.2.5 and C.3.5) and the accumulated Buffering Period capture time (see subclauses C.2.4 and C.3.4). It is encoded as a universal VLC, with all values allowed. A value of '0' implies that, at each measurement point (*i.e.* each picture preceding a Buffering Period SEI message), the removal time shall exactly match the capture time.

bitstream_restriction_flag: A flag that, when 1, signals the presence of bitstream restriction information. If bitstream_restriction_flag is set to 0, then the following default values shall apply:
 motion_vectors_over_pic_boundaries_flag = 1, minimum_compression_per_pic_reversed = 4,
 minimum_compression_per_macroblock_reversed = 1, log2_maximum_mv_length_vertical = 16,
 log2_maximum_mv_length_horizontal = 16.

motion_vectors_over_pic_boundaries_flag equal to 0 indicates that no motion vector refers to samples outside the picture boundaries. **motion_vectors_over_pic_boundaries_flag** equal to 1 indicates that motion vectors may refer to samples outside the picture boundaries.

minimum_compression_per_pic_reversed and **minimum_compression_per_macroblock_reversed** advise the decoder about the minimum compression ratio (corresponding to a maximum coded picture or macroblock size respectively). A value of n for either of the two indicates a minimum compression ratio of 1:n. Annex A defines the numbering range for both values.

log2_maximum_mv_length_vertical and **log2_maximum_mv_length_horizontal** indicate the maximum value of the absolute of a non-predicted vertical or horizontal motion vector component, in units of either ¼ or 1/8 sample, depending on the value of motion_vector_resolution. A value of n asserts that no absolute value of a motion vector component is bigger than 2**n ¼ pel or 1/8th pel units. Note: the high default value is restricted in Annex A for some profile/level combinations. Furthermore, the maximum vector length is restricted by the picture size.

E.3.2 HRD parameters semantics

pdb_cnt: This syntax element indicates the number of pre-decoder buffers (PDBs) in the HRD. A value of pdb_cnt equal to '0' is not allowed.

bit_rate_scale: Together with bit_rate_value[k], this syntax element defines the maximum input bit rate of the k-th PDB in an HRD.

bit_rate_value[k]: Together with bit_rate_scale, this syntax element defines the maximum input bit rate of the k-th PDB in an HRD. The actual bit rate in bits per second is given by:

$$\text{bit_rate}[k] = \text{bit_rate_value}[k] * 2^{(6 + \text{bit_rate_scale})} \quad (\text{E-1})$$

coded_pic_buffer_size_value is used together with **coded_pic_buffer_size_scale[k]** to define the maximum input bit rate of the k-th PDB in an HRD.

coded_pic_buffer_size_scale[k] is used together with **coded_pic_buffer_size_value** to define the pre-decoder buffer size of the k-th PDB in an HRD. The actual buffer size in bits is given by

$$\text{coded_pic_buffer_size}[k] = \text{coded_pic_buffer_size_value}[k] * 2^{(4 + \text{coded_pic_buffer_size_scale})} \quad (\text{E-2})$$

vbr_cbr_flag: If equal to '0', this syntax element indicates that the pre-decoder buffer operates in variable bit rate (VBR) mode. If equal to '1', it indicates constant bit rate (CBR) operation.

low_delay_hrd: If **low_delay_hrd** is equal to '0', the HRD operates in delay-tolerant mode. If **low_delay_hrd** is equal to '1', the HRD operates in low-delay mode. In low-delay mode, only one HRD buffer may be selected and big pictures which violate the HRD removal time rules at the pre-decoder buffer are permitted. It is expected that such big pictures occur only occasionally, but not mandatory.

E.3.3 VUI picture parameters semantics

frame_cropping_flag when 1, signals the presence of bitstream restriction information. If **frame_cropping_flag** is set to 0, then the following default values shall apply **frame_cropping_rect_left** = 0, **frame_cropping_rect_right** = 0, **frame_cropping_rect_top** = 0, **frame_cropping_rect_bottom** = 0.

frame_cropping_rect_left, **frame_cropping_rect_right**, **frame_cropping_rect_top**, **frame_cropping_rect_bottom** define the area of the luma picture internal array which shall be the output of the decoding process. The decoded values of these offsets consist of non-negative integer values, and the output of the decoding process is defined as the area within the rectangle containing luma samples with horizontal coordinates from **cropping_rect_left** to $16 * (\text{pic_width_in_mbs_minus1} + 1) - (\text{cropping_rect_right} + 1)$ and with vertical coordinates from **cropping_rect_top** to $16 * (\text{pic_height_in_mbs_minus1} + 1) - (\text{cropping_rect_bottom} + 1)$, inclusive.

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)